Introduction to Optimization

Part 1: Formulations (Overview)

Outline

Optimization - Abstract Perspective

- Abstractly, we will focus on problems of the following form:
  - Given: set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and function $f : A \to \mathbb{R}$
  - Goal: find $x \in A$ that minimizes/maximizes f

Optimization - Abstract Perspective

- Abstractly, we will focus on problems of the following form:
  - Given: set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and function $f : A \to \mathbb{R}$
  - Goal: find $x \in A$ that minimizes/maximizes f

- Very general problem that is enormously useful in virtually very branch of industry.

Optimization - Abstract Perspective

- Abstractly, we will focus on problems of the following form:
  - Given: set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and function $f : A \to \mathbb{R}$
  - Goal: find $x \in A$ that minimizes/maximizes f
- Very general problem that is enormously useful in virtually very branch of industry.
- Bad news: the above problem is notoriously hard to solve (and may not even be well-defined).

Optimization - Important Special Cases

- *Abstract optimization problem (P):*
  - Given: set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and function $f : A \to \mathbb{R}$
  - Goal: find $x \in A$ that minimizes/maximizes f

Optimization - Important Special Cases

- *Abstract optimization problem (P):*
  - Given: set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and function $f : A \to \mathbb{R}$
  - Goal: find $x \in A$ that minimizes/maximizes f
- Will look at *three* special cases of (P) in this course:
  (A) Linear Programming. A is implicitly given by *linear* constraints, and f is a *linear* function.

Optimization - Important Special Cases

- *Abstract optimization problem (P):*
  - Given: set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and function $f : A \to \mathbb{R}$
  - Goal: find $x \in A$ that minimizes/maximizes f
- Will look at *three* special cases of (P) in this course:
  - (A) Linear Programming. A is implicitly given by *linear* constraints, and f is a *linear* function.
  - (B) Integer Programming. Same as before, but now we want to max/min over the *integer* points in A.

Optimization - Important Special Cases

- *Abstract optimization problem (P):*
  - Given: set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and function $f : A \to \mathbb{R}$
  - Goal: find $x \in A$ that minimizes/maximizes f

- Will look at *three* special cases of (P) in this course:
  - (A) Linear Programming. A is implicitly given by *linear* constraints, and f is a *linear* function.
  - (B) Integer Programming. Same as before, but now we want to max/min over the *integer* points in A.
  - (C) Nonlinear Programming. A is given by *non-linear* constraints, and f is a *non-linear* function.

Optimization - Typical Workflow

Typical development process has three stages.

- Starting point is English language description of practical problem

Practical Problem:
- Description in plain language
- Supporting data

Optimization - Typical Workflow

Typical development process has three stages.

- Starting point is English language description of practical problem
- We will develop a mathematical model for the problem.

Practical Problem:
- Description in plain language
- Supporting data

↓

Mathematical Model:
- Capture problem in mathematics
- here: LP, IP, NLP

Optimization - Typical Workflow

Typical development process has three stages.

- Starting point is English language description of practical problem
- We will develop a mathematical model for the problem.
- Finally, feed model and data into a solver.

Practical Problem:
- Description in plain language
- Supporting data

↓

Mathematical Model:
- Capture problem in mathematics
- here: LP, IP, NLP

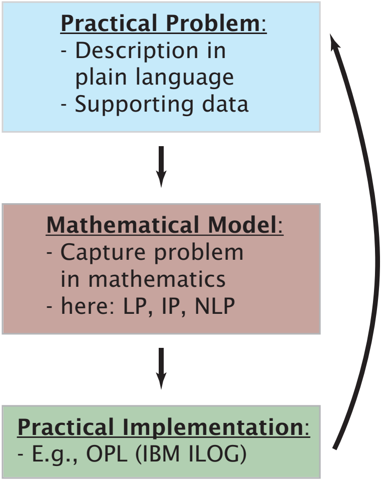
↓

Practical Implementation:
- E.g., OPL (IBM ILOG)

Optimization - Typical Workflow

Typical development process has three stages.

- Starting point is English language description of practical problem
- We will develop a mathematical model for the problem.
- Finally, feed model and data into a solver.
- Iterate!



Optimization in Practice

Optimization is everywhere! Some examples:

- Booking hotel rooms or airline tickets,
- Setting the market price of a kwh of electricity,
- Determining an “optimal” portfolio of stocks,
- Computing energy efficient circuits in chip design,
- and many more!

CSX Rail

- One of the largest transport suppliers in the United States.
- CSX operates 21000 miles of rail network
- 11 Billion in annual revenue
- Serves 23 states, Ontario and Quebec
- Operates 1200 trains per day

- Has a fleet of 3800 locomotives, and more than 100000 freight cars
- Transports 7.4 million car loads per year

Optimization @ CSX Rail

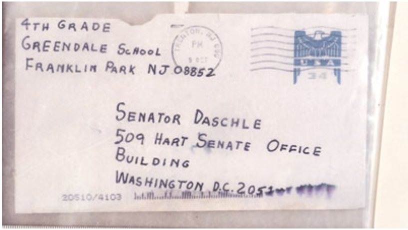
- [Acharya, Sellers, Gorman '10] use mathematical programming to optimally allocate and reposition empty railcars dynamically

  - Implementing system yields the following estimated benefits for CSX:

    Annual savings: $51 million
    Avoided rail car capital investment: $1.4 billion

Optimization in Disease Control

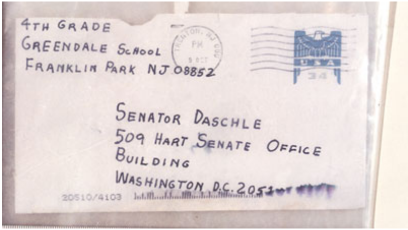
- [Lee et al. '13] Use mathematical programming to prepare for disease outbreak and medical catastrophes.
- Where should we place medical dispensing facilities, and how should we staff these in order to disseminate medication as quickly as possible to population?
- How should dispensing be scheduled?



2001 Anthrax letter sent to Senator T. Daschle

Optimization in Disease Control

- In collaboration with the Center for Disease Control, [Lee et al. '13] develop decision support suite RealOpt
- Suite is being used by $\approx$ 6500 public health and emergency directors in the USA to design, place and staff medical dispensing centers
- In tests, throughput in medical dispensing centers increases by several orders of magnitude.



2001 Anthrax letter sent to Senator T. Daschle

WaterTech Production

- WaterTech produces 4 products $\mathcal{P} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ from the following resources:
  - Time on two machines,
  - Skilled and unskilled labour

WaterTech Production

- WaterTech produces 4 products $\mathcal{P} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ from the following resources:
  - Time on two machines,
  - Skilled and unskilled labour
- The following table gives precise requirements:

Product	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Unit Sale Price
1	11	4	8	7	300
2	7	6	5	8	260
3	6	5	5	7	220
4	5	4	6	4	180

WaterTech Production

- WaterTech produces 4 products $\mathcal{P} = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ from the following resources:
  - Time on two machines,
  - Skilled and unskilled labour
- The following table gives precise requirements:

Product	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Unit Sale Price
1	11	4	8	7	300
2	7	6	5	8	260
3	6	5	5	7	220
4	5	4	6	4	180

E.g.: producing a unit of product 3 requires 6h on machine 1, 5h on machine 2, 5h of skilled, and 7h of unskilled labour. It can be sold at $220 per unit.

WaterTech Production

Restrictions:

- WaterTech has available 700h of machine 1, and 500h of machine 2 time
- Can purchase 600h of skilled labour at $8 per hour, and at most 650h of unskilled labour at $6 per hour

WaterTech Production

Restrictions:

- WaterTech has available 700h of machine 1, and 500h of machine 2 time
- Can purchase 600h of skilled labour at \$8 per hour, and at most 650h of unskilled labour at \$6 per hour

Question: How much of each product should WaterTech produce in order to maximize profit?

WaterTech Production

Restrictions:

- WaterTech has available 700h of machine 1, and 500h of machine 2 time
- Can purchase 600h of skilled labour at \$8 per hour, and at most 650h of unskilled labour at \$6 per hour

Question: How much of each product should WaterTech produce in order to maximize profit?

Formulate this as a mathematical program!

Ingredients of a Math Model

- Decision Variables. Capture unknown information

Ingredients of a Math Model

- Decision Variables. Capture unknown information
- Constraints. Describe what assignments to variables are feasible.

Ingredients of a Math Model

- Decision Variables. Capture unknown information
- Constraints. Describe what assignments to variables are feasible.
- Objective function. A function of the variables that we would like to maximize/minimize.

WaterTech Model – Variables

- WaterTech needs to decide how many units of each product to produce
  $\Longrightarrow$ introduce variable x_i for number of units of product i to produce

WaterTech Model – Variables

- WaterTech needs to decide how many units of each product to produce
  $\Longrightarrow$ introduce variable x_i for number of units of product i to produce
- For convenience, we also introduce:
  y_s, y_u : number of hours of skilled/unskilled labour to purchase

WaterTech Model – Variables

- WaterTech needs to decide how many units of each product to produce
  $\Longrightarrow$ introduce variable x_i for number of units of product i to produce
- For convenience, we also introduce:
  y_s, y_u : number of hours of skilled/unskilled labour to purchase

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- When makes an assignment to $\{x_i\}_{i \in \mathcal{P}}, y_s, y_u$ a feasible?

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- When makes an assignment to $\{x_i\}_{i \in \mathcal{P}}, y_s, y_u$ a feasible?
- E.g., production plan described by assignment may not use more than 700h of time on machine 1.

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- When makes an assignment to $\{x_i\}_{i \in \mathcal{P}}$, y_s, y_u a feasible?
- E.g., production plan described by assignment may not use more than 700h of time on machine 1.

t	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skil
	11	4	
	7	6	
	6	5	
	5	4	

$$\Longrightarrow \quad 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 700$$

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- When makes an assignment to $\{x_i\}_{i\in\mathcal{P}}$, y_s, y_u a feasible?
- E.g., production plan described by assignment may not use more than 700h of time on machine 1.

t	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skil
	11	4	
	7	6	
	6	5	
	5	4	

$$\Longrightarrow \quad 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 700$$

- Similarly, we may not use more than 500h of machine 2 time:

$$\Longrightarrow \quad 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 \leq 500$$

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- Producing x_i units of product $i \in \mathcal{P}$ requires

$$8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4$$

units of skilled labour, and this must not exceed y_s.

Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Un
8	7	
5	8	
5	7	
6	4	

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- Producing x_i units of product $i \in \mathcal{P}$ requires

  $$8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4$$

  units of skilled labour, and this must not exceed y_s.

  $$\implies 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 \leq y_s$$

Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Un
8	7	
5	8	
5	7	
6	4	

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- Producing x_i units of product $i \in \mathcal{P}$ requires

  $$8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4$$

  units of skilled labour, and this must not exceed y_s.

  $$\implies 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 \leq y_s$$

Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Un
8	7	
5	8	
5	7	
6	4	

- Similarly for unskilled labour:

$$\implies \quad 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 \leq y_u$$

WaterTech Model – Constraints

- Producing x_i units of product $i \in \mathcal{P}$ requires

$$8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4$$

units of skilled labour, and this must not exceed y_s.

$$\Longrightarrow 8x_1+5x_2+5x_3+6x_4 \leq y_s$$

Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Un
8	7	
5	8	
5	7	
6	4	

- Similarly for unskilled labour:

$$\Longrightarrow \quad 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 \leq y_u$$

- ... and $y_s \leq 600$ as well as $y_u \leq 650$ as only limited amounts of labour can be purchased.

WaterTech Model – Objective Function

- Revenue from sales:

$$300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4$$

ıbor	Unit Sale Price
	300
	260
	220
	180

WaterTech Model – Objective Function

- Revenue from sales:

$$300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4$$

- Cost of labour: $8y_s + 6y_u$

ıbor	Unit Sale Price
	300
	260
	220
	180

WaterTech Model – Objective Function

- Revenue from sales:

  $$300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4$$

- Cost of labour: $8y_s + 6y_u$

bor	Unit Sale Price
	300
	260
	220
	180

- Objective function:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{maximize} \quad & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 \\ & - 8y_s - 6y_u \end{aligned}$$

WaterTech – Entire Model

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 700 \\
& 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 \leq 500 \\
& 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 \leq y_s \\
& 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 \leq y_u \\
& y_s \leq 600 \\
& y_u \leq 650 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s \geq 0.
\end{aligned}
$$

WaterTech – Entire Model

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 700 \\
& 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 \leq 500 \\
& 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 \leq y_s \\
& 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 \leq y_u \\
& y_s \leq 600 \\
& y_u \leq 650 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s \geq 0.
\end{aligned}
$$

Solution (via CPLEX): $x = (16 + \frac{2}{3}, 50, 0, 33 + \frac{1}{3})^T$, $y_s = 583 + \frac{1}{3}$, $y_u = 650$ of profit \$$15433 + \frac{1}{3}$.

Correctness of Model

- Is our model correct?
  What does this mean?

Correctness of Model

- Is our model correct?
  What does this mean?
- Some terminology:
  (i) Word description of problem

To clarify these ideas let us consider a simple example. Suppose WaterTech manufactures four products, requiring time on two machines and two types (skilled and unskilled) of labour. The amount of machine time and labor (in hours) needed to produce a unit of each product and the sales prices in dollars per unit of each product are given in the following table:

Product	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Unit Sale Price
1	11	4	8	7	300
2	7	6	5	8	260
3	6	5	5	7	220
		4			180

Correctness of Model

- Is our model correct? What does this mean?
- Some terminology:
  - (i) Word description of problem
  - (ii) Formulation

To clarify these ideas let us consider a simple example. Suppose WaterTech manufactures four products, requiring time on two machines and two types (skilled and unskilled) of labour. The amount of machine time and labor (in hours) needed to produce a unit of each product and the sales prices in dollars per unit of each product are given in the following table:

Product	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Unit Sale Price
1	11	4	8	7	300
2	7	6	5	8	260
3	6	5	5	7	220
[illegible]	[illegible]	4	[illegible]	[illegible]	180

$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\max & \multicolumn{3}{l}{300x_1+260x_2+220x_3+180x_4-8y_s-6y_u} \\
\text{subject to} & & & \\
& 11x_1+7x_2+6x_3+5x_4 & \leq & 700 \\
& 4x_1+6x_2+5x_3+4x_4 & \leq & 500 \\
& 8x_1+5x_2+5x_3+6x_4 & \leq & y_s \\
& 7x_1+8x_2+7x_3+4x_4 & \leq & y_u \\
& y_s & \leq & 600 \\
& y_u & \leq & 650 \\
& x_1,x_2,x_3,x_4,y_u,y_s & \geq & 0.
\end{array}
$$

Correctness of Model

- Is our model correct? What does this mean?
- Some terminology:
  - (i) Word description of problem
  - (ii) Formulation
- A solution to the formulation is an assignment to all of its variables
- This is feasible if all constraints are satisfied, and optimal if no better feasible solution exists.

To clarify these ideas let us consider a simple example. Suppose WaterTech manufactures four products, requiring time on two machines and two types (skilled and unskilled) of labour. The amount of machine time and labor (in hours) needed to produce a unit of each product and the sales prices in dollars per unit of each product are given in the following table:

Product	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Unit Sale Price
1	11	4	8	7	300
2	7	6	5	8	260
3	6	5	5	7	220
		4			180

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u \\
\text{subject to} & \\
& \begin{array}{rcl}
11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 & \leq & 700 \\
4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 & \leq & 500 \\
8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 & \leq & y_s \\
7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 & \leq & y_u \\
y_s & \leq & 600 \\
y_u & \leq & 650 \\
x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s & \geq & 0.
\end{array}
\end{array}
$$

Correctness of Model

- Is our model correct? What does this mean?
- Some terminology:
  - (i) Word description of problem
  - (ii) Formulation
- A solution to the formulation is an assignment to all of its variables
- This is feasible if all constraints are satisfied, and optimal if no better feasible solution exists.
- Similar: solution to word description is an assignment to the unknowns

To clarify these ideas let us consider a simple example. Suppose WaterTech manufactures four products, requiring time on two machines and two types (skilled and unskilled) of labour. The amount of machine time and labor (in hours) needed to produce a unit of each product and the sales prices in dollars per unit of each product are given in the following table:

Product	Machine 1	Machine 2	Skilled Labor	Unskilled Labor	Unit Sale Price
1	11	4	8	7	300
2	7	6	5	8	260
3	6	5	5	7	220
		4			180

$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\max & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & \\
& 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 & \leq & 700 \\
& 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 & \leq & 500 \\
& 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 & \leq & y_s \\
& 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 & \leq & y_u \\
& y_s & \leq & 600 \\
& y_u & \leq & 650 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s & \geq & 0.
\end{array}
$$

Correctness of Model

- One way of showing correctness: define a mapping between feasible solutions to the word description, and feasible solutions to the model, and vice versa.

Correctness of Model

- One way of showing correctness: define a mapping between feasible solutions to the word description, and feasible solutions to the model, and vice versa.
- E.g., feasible solution to WaterTech word description is given by
  (i) Producing 10 units of product 1, 50 units of product 2, 0 units of product 3, and 20 units of product 4, and by
  (ii) Purchasing 600 units of skilled and unskilled labour.

Correctness of Model

- One way of showing correctness: define a mapping between feasible solutions to the word description, and feasible solutions to the model, and vice versa.
- E.g., feasible solution to WaterTech word description is given by
  (i) Producing 10 units of product 1, 50 units of product 2, 0 units of product 3, and 20 units of product 4, and by
  (ii) Purchasing 600 units of skilled and unskilled labour.
- It is easily checked that

$$x_1 = 10, x_2 = 50, x_3 = 0, x_4 = 20, y_s = y_u = 600$$

is feasible for the mathematical program we wrote.

- Your map should preserve cost.
  In example, profit of solution to word description should correspond to objective value of its image (under map), and vice versa. Check this!

- Your map should preserve cost.
  In example, profit of solution to word description should correspond to objective value of its image (under map), and vice versa. Check this!
- In the example, the map was simply the identity. This need not necessarily be the case in general!

Module 1: Formulations (LP Models)

Constrained Optimization

In this course, we consider optimization problems of the following form:

$$\min\{f(x) \,:\, g_i(x) \leq b_i,\, (1 \leq i \leq m), x \in \mathbb{R}^n\},$$

where

Constrained Optimization

In this course, we consider optimization problems of the following form:

$$\min\{f(x) \,:\, g_i(x) \leq b_i,\, (1 \leq i \leq m), x \in \mathbb{R}^n\},$$

where

- $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$,
- $b_1, \ldots, b_m \in \mathbb{R}$, and
- f, g_1, ..., g_m are functions with from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $\mathbb{R}$.

Constrained Optimization

In this course, we consider optimization problems of the following form:

$$\min\{f(x) \,:\, g_i(x) \leq b_i,\, (1 \leq i \leq m), x \in \mathbb{R}^n\},$$

where

$n, m \in \mathbb{N}$,
$b_1, \ldots, b_m \in \mathbb{R}$, and
f, g_1, ..., g_m are functions with from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $\mathbb{R}$.

Problems like the above are very hard to solve in general
$\Longrightarrow$ we focus on special cases.

Constrained Optimization

In this course, we consider optimization problems of the following form:

$$\min\{f(x) \,:\, g_i(x) \le b_i,\, (1 \le i \le m), x \in \mathbb{R}^n\},$$

where

- $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$,
- $b_1, \ldots, b_m \in \mathbb{R}$, and
- f, g_1, ..., g_m are functions with from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $\mathbb{R}$.

Problems like the above are very hard to solve in general
$\Longrightarrow$ we focus on special cases.

This class: all functions are affine.

Modeling: Linear Programs

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Example

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Example

(i) $f(x) = 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 7$

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Example

(i) $f(x) = 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 7$ (affine, but not linear)

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Example

(i) $f(x) = 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 7$ (affine, but not linear)

(ii) $f(x) = -3x_1 + 5x_3$

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Example

(i) $f(x) = 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 7$ (affine, but not linear)

(ii) $f(x) = -3x_1 + 5x_3$ (linear)

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Example

(i) $f(x) = 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 7$ (affine, but not linear)

(ii) $f(x) = -3x_1 + 5x_3$ (linear)

(iii) $f(x) = 5x - 3\cos(x) + \sqrt{x}$

Affine Functions

Definition

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$ is affine if $f(x) = a^T x + \beta$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$.
It is linear if in addition $\beta = 0$.

Example

(i) $f(x) = 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 + 7$ (affine, but not linear)
(ii) $f(x) = -3x_1 + 5x_3$ (linear)
(iii) $f(x) = 5x - 3\cos(x) + \sqrt{x}$ (not affine and not linear)

Definition

The optimization problem

$$\min\{f(x) : g_i(x) \leq b_i, \quad \forall 1 \leq i \leq m, x \in \mathbb{R}^n\} \tag{P}$$

is called a linear program if f is affine and $g_1, \ldots, g_m$ is finite number of linear functions.

Definition

The optimization problem

$$\min\{f(x) : g_i(x) \le b_i,\ \forall 1 \le i \le m,\ x \in \mathbb{R}^n\} \tag{P}$$

is called a linear program if f is affine and $g_1, \ldots, g_m$ is finite number of linear functions.

Comments:

Instead of set notation, we often write LPs more verbosely

$$\begin{array}{rl} \max & -2x_1 + 7x_3 \\ \text{subject to} & x_1 + 7x_2 \le 3 \\ & 3x_2 + 4x_3 \le 2 \\ & x_1, x_3 \ge 0 \end{array}$$

Definition

The optimization problem

$$\min\{f(x) : g_i(x) \leq b_i, \quad \forall 1 \leq i \leq m,\ x \in \mathbb{R}^n\} \tag{P}$$

is called a linear program if f is affine and $g_1, \ldots, g_m$ is finite number of linear functions.

Comments:

- Instead of set notation, we often write LPs more verbosely
- May use $\max$ instead of $\min$

$$\begin{array}{rl} \max & -2x_1 + 7x_3 \\ \text{subject to} & x_1 + 7x_2 \leq 3 \\ & 3x_2 + 4x_3 \leq 2 \\ & x_1, x_3 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

Definition

The optimization problem

$$\min\{f(x) : g_i(x) \le b_i, \quad \forall 1 \le i \le m, \; x \in \mathbb{R}^n\} \tag{P}$$

is called a linear program if f is affine and $g_1, \ldots, g_m$ is finite number of linear functions.

Comments:

Instead of set notation, we often write LPs more verbosely

May use $\max$ instead of $\min$

Often give non-negativity constraints separately

$$\begin{array}{rl} \max & -2x_1 + 7x_3 \\ \text{subject to} & x_1 + 7x_2 \le 3 \\ & 3x_2 + 4x_3 \le 2 \\ & x_1, x_3 \ge 0 \end{array}$$

Definition

The optimization problem

$$\min\{f(x) : g_i(x) \le b_i, \\ \forall 1 \le i \le m,\ x \in \mathbb{R}^n\} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

is called a linear program if f is affine and $g_1, \dots, g_m$ is finite number of linear functions.

Comments:

- Instead of set notation, we often write LPs more verbosely
- May use $\max$ instead of $\min$
- Often give non-negativity constraints separately
- Sometimes replace subject

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & -2x_1 + 7x_3 \\ \text{subject to} \quad & x_1 + 7x_2 \le 3 \\ & 3x_2 + 4x_3 \le 2 \\ & x_1, x_3 \ge 0 \end{aligned}$$

We often write $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ as a short for all variables are non-negative.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & -x_1 - 2x_2 - x_3 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 \geq 3 \\ & x_1 + 2x_2 = 2 \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

We often write $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ as a short for all variables are non-negative.

Second mathematical program is not an LP. Three reasons:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & -x_1 - 2x_2 - x_3 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 \geq 3 \\
& x_1 + 2x_2 = 2 \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & -1/x_1 - x_3 \\
\text{subject to} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 < 3 \\
& x_1 + \alpha\, x_2 = 2 \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{R}
\end{aligned}
$$

$(\alpha \in \mathbb{R})$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & -x_1 - 2x_2 - x_3 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 \geq 3 \\ & x_1 + 2x_2 = 2 \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

We often write $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ as a short for all variables are non-negative.

Second mathematical program is not an LP. Three reasons:

> Dividing by variables is not allowed

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & -1/x_1 - x_3 \\ \text{subject to} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 < 3 \\ & x_1 + \alpha\, x_2 = 2 \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{R} \end{aligned}$$

$(\alpha \in \mathbb{R})$

We often write $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ as a short for all variables are non-negative.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & -x_1 - 2x_2 - x_3 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 \geq 3 \\ & x_1 + 2x_2 = 2 \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Second mathematical program is not an LP. Three reasons:

- Dividing by variables is not allowed
- Cannot have strict inequalities

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & -1/x_1 - x_3 \\ \text{subject to} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 < 3 \\ & x_1 + \alpha\, x_2 = 2 \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{R} \end{aligned}$$

$(\alpha \in \mathbb{R})$

We often write $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ as a short for all variables are non-negative.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & -x_1 - 2x_2 - x_3 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 \geq 3 \\ & x_1 + 2x_2 = 2 \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Second mathematical program is not an LP. Three reasons:

- Dividing by variables is not allowed
- Cannot have strict inequalities
- Must have finite number of constraints

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & -1/x_1 - x_3 \\ \text{subject to} \quad & 2x_1 + x_3 < 3 \\ & x_1 + \alpha\, x_2 = 2 \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{R} \end{aligned}$$

$(\alpha \in \mathbb{R})$

Production revisited

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u \\
\text{s.t.} & \begin{array}{rcr}
11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 & \leq & 700 \\
4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 & \leq & 500 \\
8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 & \leq & y_s \\
7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 & \leq & y_u \\
y_s & \leq & 600 \\
y_u & \leq & 650 \\
x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s & \geq & 0.
\end{array}
\end{array}
$$

The mathematical program for WaterTech example from last class is in fact an LP!

Example: Multiperiod Models

Main feature of WaterTech production model:
Decisions about production levels have to be made once and for all.

Main feature of WaterTech production model:
Decisions about production levels have to be made once and for all.

In practice, we often have to make a sequence of decision that influence each other.

Main feature of WaterTech production model:
Decisions about production levels have to be made once and for all.

In practice, we often have to make a sequence of decision that influence each other.

One such example: Multiperiod Models:

- Time is split into periods,
- We have to make a decision in each period, and
- All decisions influence the final outcome.

KW Oil

KW Oil is local supplier of heating oil

Needs to decide on how much oil to purchase in order to satisfy demand of its customers

KW Oil

KW Oil is local supplier of heating oil

Needs to decide on how much oil to purchase in order to satisfy demand of its customers

Years of experience give the following demand forecast for the next 4 months:

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

KW Oil

KW Oil is local supplier of heating oil

Needs to decide on how much oil to purchase in order to satisfy demand of its customers

Years of experience give the following demand forecast for the next 4 months:

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

The projected price of oil fluctuates from month to month:

Month	1	2	3	4
Price ($\$/\ell$)	0.75	0.72	0.92	0.90

KW Oil

KW Oil is local supplier of heating oil

Needs to decide on how much oil to purchase in order to satisfy demand of its customers

Years of experience give the following demand forecast for the next 4 months:

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

The projected price of oil fluctuates from month to month:

Month	1	2	3	4
Price ($\$/\ell$)	0.75	0.72	0.92	0.90

Question: When should we purchase how much oil?

KW Oil

Question: When should we purchase how much oil when the goal is to minimize overall total cost?

KW Oil

Question: When should we purchase how much oil when the goal is to minimize overall total cost?

Additional complication: Company has storage tank that

- Currently (beginning of month 1) contains 2000 litres of oil, and
- Has a capacity of 4000 litres of oil.

KW Oil

Question: When should we purchase how much oil when the goal is to minimize overall total cost?

Additional complication: Company has storage tank that

- Currently (beginning of month 1) contains 2000 litres of oil, and
- Has a capacity of 4000 litres of oil.

Assumption: Oil is delivered at beginning of month, and consumption occurs mid month

KW Oil Model – Variables

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Month	1	2	3	4
Price (\$/ℓ)	0.75	0.72	0.92	0.90

KW Oil Model – Variables

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Month	1	2	3	4
Price ($\$/\ell$)	0.75	0.72	0.92	0.90

(i) Need to decide how many litres of oil to purchase in each month i.

KW Oil Model – Variables

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Month	1	2	3	4
Price ($\$/\ell$)	0.75	0.72	0.92	0.90

(i) Need to decide how many litres of oil to purchase in each month i.
$\longrightarrow$ variable p_i for $i \in [4]$

KW Oil Model – Variables

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Month	1	2	3	4
Price ($\$/\ell$)	0.75	0.72	0.92	0.90

(i) Need to decide how many litres of oil to purchase in each month i.
$\longrightarrow$ variable p_i for $i \in [4]$

(ii) How much oil is stored in the tank at beginning of month i?

KW Oil Model – Variables

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Month	1	2	3	4
Price ($\$/\ell$)	0.75	0.72	0.92	0.90

(i) Need to decide how many litres of oil to purchase in each month i.
$\longrightarrow$ variable p_i for $i \in [4]$

(ii) How much oil is stored in the tank at beginning of month i?
$\longrightarrow$ variable t_i for $i \in [4]$

Objective function

Minimize cost of oil procurement.

Variables:

p_i : oil purchase in month i
t_i : tank level in month i

Objective function

Minimize cost of oil procurement.

$$\min \quad 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4$$

Variables:

p_i : oil purchase in month i
t_i : tank level in month i

Objective function

Minimize cost of oil procurement.

$$\min \quad 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4$$

Constraints: when do

$$t_1, \ldots, t_4, p_1, \ldots, p_4$$

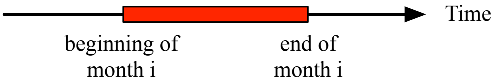
correspond to a feasible purchasing scheme?

Variables:

p_i : oil purchase in month i
t_i : tank level in month i

Constraints

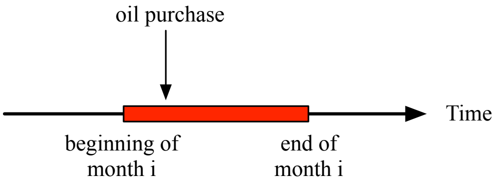
Assumptions:



Constraints

Assumptions:

(i) Oil is purchased at beginning of month

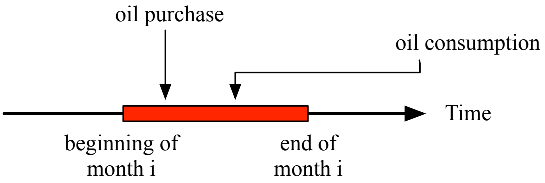


Constraints

Assumptions:

(i) Oil is purchased at beginning of month

(ii) Oil is consumed afterwards

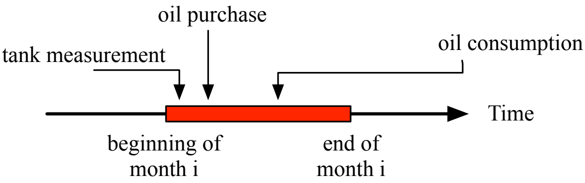


Constraints

Assumptions:

(i) Oil is purchased at beginning of month

(ii) Oil is consumed afterwards



Variables:

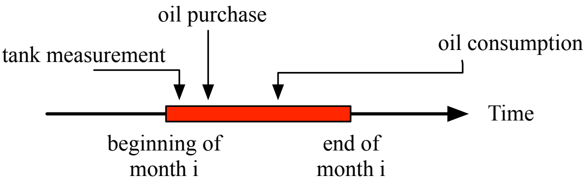
p_i : oil purchase in month i
t_i : tank level in month i

Constraints

Assumptions:

(i) Oil is purchased at beginning of month

(ii) Oil is consumed afterwards



Variables:

p_i : oil purchase in month i
t_i : tank level in month i

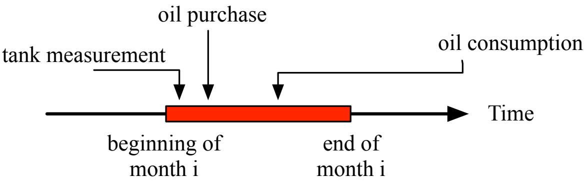
We need: $p_i + t_i \geq \{\text{demand in month } i\}$

Constraints

Assumptions:

(i) Oil is purchased at beginning of month

(ii) Oil is consumed afterwards



Variables:

p_i : oil purchase in month i
t_i : tank level in month i

[Balance Equation] $\quad p_i + t_i = \{\text{demand in month } i\} + t_{i+1}$

Constraints

[Balance Equation] $p_i + t_i = \{\text{demand in month } i\} + t_{i+1}$

Tank content in month 1: 2000 litres

Constraints

[Balance Equation] $p_i + t_i =$ {demand in month i} $+ t_{i+1}$

Month 1:
$p_1 + 2000 = 5000 + t_2$

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Tank content in month 1: 2000 litres

Constraints

[Balance Equation] $p_i + t_i =$ {demand in month i} $+t_{i+1}$

Month 1:
$p_1 + 2000 = 5000 + t_2$

Month 2:
$p_2 + t_2 = 8000 + t_3$

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Tank content in month 1: 2000 litres

Constraints

[Balance Equation] $p_i + t_i =$ {demand in month i} $+t_{i+1}$

Month 1:

$p_1 + 2000 = 5000 + t_2$

Month 2:

$p_2 + t_2 = 8000 + t_3$

Month 3:

$p_3 + t_3 = 9000 + t_4$

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Tank content in month 1: 2000 litres

Constraints

[Balance Equation] $p_i + t_i = \{\text{demand in month } i\} + t_{i+1}$

Month	1	2	3	4
Demand (ℓ)	5000	8000	9000	6000

Tank content in month 1: 2000 litres

Month 1:
$p_1 + 2000 = 5000 + t_2$

Month 2:
$p_2 + t_2 = 8000 + t_3$

Month 3:
$p_3 + t_3 = 9000 + t_4$

Month 4:
$p_4 + t_4 \geq 6000$

KW Oil: Entire LP

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\min & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 \\
\text{subject to} &
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{rcll}
p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Entire LP

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\min & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 \\
\text{subject to} & \\
& \begin{array}{rcll}
p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
\end{array}
$$

Solution: $p = (3000, 12000, 5000, 6000)^T$, and
$t = (2000, 0, 4000, 0)^T$

KW Oil: Add-Ons

Can easily capture additional features. E.g. ...

> Storage comes at a cost: storage cost is \$.15 per litre/month.

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & 0.75p_1+0.72p_2+0.92p_3+0.90p_4 & & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
& p_1+t_1 & = & 5000+t_2 & \\
& p_2+t_2 & = & 8000+t_3 & \\
& p_3+t_3 & = & 9000+t_4 & \\
& p_4+t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i=2,3,4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i=1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Add-Ons

Can easily capture additional features. E.g. ...

> Storage comes at a cost: storage cost is \$.15 per litre/month.
>
> Add $\sum_{i=1}^{4} .15t_i$ to objective.

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\text{min} & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 & & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Add-Ons

Can easily capture additional features. E.g. ...

Storage comes at a cost: storage cost is \$.15 per litre/month.

Add $\sum_{i=1}^{4} .15 t_i$ to objective.

Minimize maximum #l of oil purchased over all months

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 & & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Add-Ons

Can easily capture additional features. E.g. ...

Storage comes at a cost: storage cost is \$.15 per litre/month.

Add $\sum_{i=1}^{4} .15t_i$ to objective.

Minimize maximum #l of oil purchased over all months

(i) We will need a new variable M for maximum #l purchased

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & 0.75p_1+0.72p_2+0.92p_3+0.90p_4 & & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
 & p_1+t_1 & = & 5000+t_2 & \\
 & p_2+t_2 & = & 8000+t_3 & \\
 & p_3+t_3 & = & 9000+t_4 & \\
 & p_4+t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
 & t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
 & t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i=2,3,4) \\
 & t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i=1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Add-Ons

Can easily capture additional features. E.g. ...

Storage comes at a cost: storage cost is \$.15 per litre/month.

Add $\sum_{i=1}^{4} .15t_i$ to objective.

Minimize maximum #l of oil purchased over all months

(i) We will need a new variable M for maximum #l purchased

(ii) Will have to add constraints

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 & & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Add-Ons

(i) Add variable M for maximum #l purchased over all months.

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

Goal: Minimize maximum #l of oil purchased over all months.

KW Oil: Add-Ons

(i) Add variable M for maximum #l purchased over all months.

(ii) Add constraints

$$p_i \leq M$$

for all $i \in [4]$.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{min} & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 \\
\text{subject to} & \\
& \begin{array}{lcll}
p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
\end{array}
$$

Goal: Minimize maximum #l of oil purchased over all months.

KW Oil: Add-Ons

(i) Add variable M for maximum #l purchased over all months.

(ii) Add constraints

$$p_i \leq M$$

for all $i \in [4]$.

(iii) Done?

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\text{min} & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 & & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2,3,4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1,2,3,4)
\end{array}
$$

Goal: Minimize maximum #l of oil purchased over all months.

KW Oil: Add-Ons

(i) Add variable M for maximum #l purchased over all months.

(ii) Add constraints

$$p_i \leq M$$

for all $i \in [4]$.

(iii) Done? No! Need to replace objective function by

$$\min \quad M$$

$$\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & 0.75p_1 + 0.72p_2 + 0.92p_3 + 0.90p_4 & & & \\
\text{subject to} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2, 3, 4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4)
\end{array}$$

Goal: Minimize maximum #l of oil purchased over all months.

Minimizing the Maximum Purchase: LP

$$\min \quad M$$

s.t.

$$\begin{array}{lcll}
p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2, 3, 4) \\
p_i & \leq & M & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4) \\
t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4)
\end{array}$$

KW Oil: Correctness

Why is this a correct model?

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & M & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2, 3, 4) \\
& p_i & \leq & M & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Correctness

Why is this a correct model?

Suppose that $M, p_1, \ldots, p_4, t_1, \ldots, t_4$ is an optimal solution to the LP

$$\min \quad M$$

s.t.

$$\begin{array}{rcll}
p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2, 3, 4) \\
p_i & \leq & M & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4) \\
t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4)
\end{array}$$

KW Oil: Correctness

Why is this a correct model?

Suppose that $M, p_1, \ldots, p_4, t_1, \ldots, t_4$ is an optimal solution to the LP

Clearly: $M \geq \max_i p_i$

$$
\begin{array}{lllll}
\min & M & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
& p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
& p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
& p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
& t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
& t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2, 3, 4) \\
& p_i & \leq & M & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4) \\
& t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4)
\end{array}
$$

KW Oil: Correctness

Why is this a correct model?

Suppose that $M, p_1, \ldots, p_4, t_1, \ldots, t_4$ is an optimal solution to the LP

Clearly: $M \geq \max_i p_i$

Since M, p, t is optimal we must have $M = \max_i p_i$. Why?

$$\min \quad M$$

s.t.

$$\begin{array}{rcll}
p_1 + t_1 & = & 5000 + t_2 & \\
p_2 + t_2 & = & 8000 + t_3 & \\
p_3 + t_3 & = & 9000 + t_4 & \\
p_4 + t_4 & \geq & 6000 & \\
t_1 & = & 2000 & \\
t_i & \leq & 4000 & (i = 2, 3, 4) \\
p_i & \leq & M & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4) \\
t_i, p_i & \geq & 0 & (i = 1, 2, 3, 4)
\end{array}$$

Module 1: Formulations (IP Models)

Recap: WaterTech

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 700 \\
& 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 \leq 500 \\
& 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 \leq y_s \\
& 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 \leq y_u \\
& y_s \leq 600 \\
& y_u \leq 650 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s \geq 0.
\end{aligned}
$$

Recap: WaterTech

$$\begin{array}{rl} \max & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u \\ \text{s.t.} & 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 700 \\ & 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 \leq 500 \\ & 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 \leq y_s \\ & 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 \leq y_u \\ & y_s \leq 600 \\ & y_u \leq 650 \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Optimal solution: $x = (16 + \frac{2}{3}, 50, 0, 33 + \frac{1}{3})^T$, $y_s = 583 + \frac{1}{3}$, $y_u = 650$

Recap: WaterTech

$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 300x_1 + 260x_2 + 220x_3 + 180x_4 - 8y_s - 6y_u \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 11x_1 + 7x_2 + 6x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 700 \\
& 4x_1 + 6x_2 + 5x_3 + 4x_4 \leq 500 \\
& 8x_1 + 5x_2 + 5x_3 + 6x_4 \leq y_s \\
& 7x_1 + 8x_2 + 7x_3 + 4x_4 \leq y_u \\
& y_s \leq 600 \\
& y_u \leq 650 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, y_u, y_s \geq 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Optimal solution: $x = (16 + \frac{2}{3}, 50, 0, 33 + \frac{1}{3})^T$, $y_s = 583 + \frac{1}{3}$, $y_u = 650$

Fractional solutions are often not desirable! Can we force solution to take on only integer values?

- Yes!

  An integer program is a linear program with added integrality constraints for some/all variables.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & x_1 + x_2 + 2x_4 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_1 + x_2 \leq 1 \\
& -x_2 - x_3 \geq -1 \\
& x_1 + x_3 = 1 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3 \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

- Yes!

  An integer program is a linear program with added integrality constraints for some/all variables.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & x_1 + x_2 + 2x_4 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_1 + x_2 \leq 1 \\
& -x_2 - x_3 \geq -1 \\
& x_1 + x_3 = 1 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3 \geq 0 \\
& x_1, x_3 \text{ integer.}
\end{aligned}
$$

- Yes!

  An integer program is a linear program with added integrality constraints for some/all variables.

- We call an IP mixed if there are integer and fractional variables, and pure otherwise.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & x_1 + x_2 + 2x_4 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_1 + x_2 \le 1 \\
& -x_2 - x_3 \ge -1 \\
& x_1 + x_3 = 1 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3 \ge 0 \\
& x_1, x_3 \text{ integer.}
\end{aligned}
$$

- Yes!

  An integer program is a linear program with added integrality constraints for some/all variables.

- We call an IP mixed if there are integer and fractional variables, and pure otherwise.

- Difference between LPs and IPs is subtle. Yet: LPs are easy to solve, IPs are not!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & x_1 + x_2 + 2x_4 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_1 + x_2 \leq 1 \\
& -x_2 - x_3 \geq -1 \\
& x_1 + x_3 = 1 \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3 \geq 0 \\
& x_1, x_3 \text{ integer.}
\end{aligned}
$$

Can we solve IPs?

- Integer programs are provably difficult to solve!

Can we solve IPs?

- Integer programs are provably difficult to solve!
- Every problem instance has a size which we normally denote by n.

.

Can we solve IPs?

- Integer programs are provably difficult to solve!
- Every problem instance has a size which we normally denote by n.
  Think: $n \sim$ number of variables/constraints of IP.

Can we solve IPs?

- Integer programs are provably difficult to solve!
- Every problem instance has a size which we normally denote by n.
  Think: $n \sim$ number of variables/constraints of IP.
- The running time of an algorithm is then the number of steps that an algorithm takes.

Can we solve IPs?

- Integer programs are provably difficult to solve!
- Every problem instance has a size which we normally denote by n.
  Think: $n \sim$ number of variables/constraints of IP.
- The running time of an algorithm is then the number of steps that an algorithm takes.
- It is stated as a function of n: $f(n)$ measures the largest number of steps an algorithm takes on an instance of size n.

Can we solve IPs?

- An algorithm is efficient if its running time $f(n)$ is a polynomial of n.

Can we solve IPs?

- An algorithm is efficient if its running time $f(n)$ is a polynomial of n.
- LPs can be solved efficiently.


The New York Times U.S.

WORLD | U.S. | N.Y. / REGION | BUSINESS | TECHNOLOGY | SCIENCE | HEALTH | SPORTS | OPINION

POLITICS EDUCATION TEXAS

BREAKTHROUGH IN PROBLEM SOLVING

By JAMES GLEICK
Published: November 19, 1984

A 28-year-old mathematician at A.T.&T. Bell Laboratories has made a startling theoretical breakthrough in the solving of systems of equations that often grow too vast and complex for the most powerful computers.

The discovery, which is to be formally published next month, is already circulating rapidly through the mathematical world. It has also set off a deluge of inquiries from brokerage houses, oil companies and airlines, industries with millions of dollars at stake in problems known as linear programming.

These problems are fiendishly complicated systems, often with

FACEBOOK
TWITTER
GOOGLE+
EMAIL
SHARE
PRINT
SINGLE PAGE
REPRINTS

Can we solve IPs?

- An algorithm is efficient if its running time $f(n)$ is a polynomial of n.
- LPs can be solved efficiently.
- IPs are very unlikely to admit efficient algorithms!

The New York Times   U.S.

WORLD | U.S. | N.Y. / REGION | BUSINESS | TECHNOLOGY | SCIENCE | HEALTH | SPORTS | OPINION

POLITICS EDUCATION TEXAS

BREAKTHROUGH IN PROBLEM SOLVING

By JAMES GLEICK
Published: November 19, 1984

A 28-year-old mathematician at A.T.&T. Bell Laboratories has made a startling theoretical breakthrough in the solving of systems of equations that often grow too vast and complex for the most powerful computers.

The discovery, which is to be formally published next month, is already circulating rapidly through the mathematical world. It has also set off a deluge of inquiries from brokerage houses, oil companies and airlines, industries with millions of dollars at stake in problems known as linear programming.

These problems are fiendishly complicated systems, often with

FACEBOOK
TWITTER
GOOGLE+
EMAIL
SHARE
PRINT
SINGLE PAGE
REPRINTS

Can we solve IPs?

- An algorithm is efficient if its running time $f(n)$ is a polynomial of n.
- LPs can be solved efficiently.
- IPs are very unlikely to admit efficient algorithms!
- It is very important to look for an efficient algorithm for a problem. The table states actual running times of a computer that can execute 1 million operations per second on an instance of size $n = 100$:

The New York Times

U.S.

WORLD | U.S. | N.Y. / REGION | BUSINESS | TECHNOLOGY | SCIENCE | HEALTH | SPORTS | OPINION

POLITICS EDUCATION TEXAS

BREAKTHROUGH IN PROBLEM SOLVING

By JAMES GLEICK
Published: November 19, 1984

A 28-year-old mathematician at A.T.&T. Bell Laboratories has made a startling theoretical breakthrough in the solving of systems of equations that often grow too vast and complex for the most powerful computers.

The discovery, which is to be formally published next month, is already circulating rapidly through the mathematical world. It has also set off a deluge of inquiries from brokerage houses, oil companies and airlines, industries with millions of dollars at stake in problems known as linear programming.

These problems are fiendishly complicated systems, often with

FACEBOOK
TWITTER
GOOGLE+
EMAIL
SHARE
PRINT
SINGLE PAGE
REPRINTS

$f(n)$	n	$n\log_2(n)$	n^3	1.5^n	2^n

IP Models: Knapsack

KitchTech Shipping

- Company wishes to ship crates from Toronto to Kitchener.

KitchTech Shipping

- Company wishes to ship crates from Toronto to Kitchener.
- Each crate type has weight and value:

Type	1	2	3	4	5	6
weight (lbs)	30	20	30	90	30	70
value ($)	60	70	40	70	20	90

KitchTech Shipping

- Company wishes to ship crates from Toronto to Kitchener.
- Each crate type has weight and value:

Type	1	2	3	4	5	6
weight (lbs)	30	20	30	90	30	70
value ($)	60	70	40	70	20	90

- Total weight of crates shipped must not exceed 10,000 lbs.

KitchTech Shipping

- Company wishes to ship crates from Toronto to Kitchener.
- Each crate type has weight and value:

Type	1	2	3	4	5	6
weight (lbs)	30	20	30	90	30	70
value ($)	60	70	40	70	20	90

- Total weight of crates shipped must not exceed 10,000 lbs.
- Goal: Maximize total value of shipped goods.

IP Model

- Variables.

IP Model

- Variables. One variable x_i for number of crates of type i to pack.

IP Model

- Variables. One variable x_i for number of crates of type i to pack.
- Constraints.

IP Model

- Variables. One variable x_i for number of crates of type i to pack.
- Constraints. The total weight of a crates picked must not exceed 10000 lbs.

IP Model

- Variables. One variable x_i for number of crates of type i to pack.
- Constraints. The total weight of a crates picked must not exceed 10000 lbs.

$$30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000$$

IP Model

- Variables. One variable x_i for number of crates of type i to pack.
- Constraints. The total weight of a crates picked must not exceed 10000 lbs.

$$30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000$$

- Objective function: Maximize total value.

IP Model

- Variables. One variable x_i for number of crates of type i to pack.
- Constraints. The total weight of a crates picked must not exceed 10000 lbs.

$$30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000$$

- Objective function: Maximize total value.

$$\max \quad 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6$$

IP Model

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\ & x_i \geq 0 \quad (i \in [6]) \\ & x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6]) \end{aligned}$$

IP Model

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_i \geq 0 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

Let's make this model a bit more interesting...

KitchTech: Added Conditions

Suppose that ...

- We must not send more than 10 crates of the same type.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_i \geq 0 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: Added Conditions

Suppose that ...

- We must not send more than 10 crates of the same type.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: Added Conditions

Suppose that ...

- We must not send more than 10 crates of the same type.
- Can only send crates of type 3, if we send at least 1 crate of type 4.

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\ & 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\ & 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\ & 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\ & x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6]) \end{aligned}$$

KitchTech: Added Conditions

Suppose that ...

- We must not send more than 10 crates of the same type.
- Can only send crates of type 3, if we send at least 1 crate of type 4.

  Note: Can send at most 10 crates of type 3 by previous constraint!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: Added Conditions

Suppose that ...

- We must not send more than 10 crates of the same type.
- Can only send crates of type 3, if we send at least 1 crate of type 4.

  Note: Can send at most 10 crates of type 3 by previous constraint!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: Added Conditions

Correctness:

- $x_4 \geq 1 \longrightarrow$ new constraint is redundant!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: Added Conditions

Correctness:

- $x_4 \geq 1 \longrightarrow$ new constraint is redundant!
- $x_4 = 0 \longrightarrow$ new constraint becomes

$$x_3 \leq 0.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Suppose that we must

1. take a total of at least 4 crates of type 1 or 2, or
2. take at least 4 crates of type 5 or 6.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Suppose that we must

1. take a total of at least 4 crates of type 1 or 2, or
2. take at least 4 crates of type 5 or 6.

Ideas?

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Suppose that we must

1. take a total of at least 4 crates of type 1 or 2, or
2. take at least 4 crates of type 5 or 6.

Ideas?

Create a new variable y s.t.

1. $y = 1 \longrightarrow x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$,
2. $y = 0 \longrightarrow$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Create a new variable y s.t.

1. $y = 1 \longrightarrow x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$,
2. $y = 0 \longrightarrow x_5 + x_6 \geq 4$.

Force y to take on values 0 or 1.

Add constraints:

$$
\begin{array}{rl}
\max & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
 & 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
 & 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
 & x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
 & 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
 & x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{array}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Create a new variable y s.t.

1. $y = 1 \longrightarrow x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$,
2. $y = 0 \longrightarrow x_5 + x_6 \geq 4$.

Force y to take on values 0 or 1.

Add constraints:

1. $x_1 + x_2 \geq 4y$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Create a new variable y s.t.

1. $y = 1 \longrightarrow x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$,
2. $y = 0 \longrightarrow x_5 + x_6 \geq 4$.

Force y to take on values 0 or 1.

Add constraints:

1. $x_1 + x_2 \geq 4y$
2. $x_5 + x_6 \geq 4(1 - y)$

$$
\begin{array}{rl}
\max & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
 & 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
 & 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
 & x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
 & 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
 & x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{array}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Create a new variable y s.t.

1. $y = 1 \longrightarrow x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$,
2. $y = 0 \longrightarrow x_5 + x_6 \geq 4$.

Force y to take on values 0 or 1.

Add constraints:

1. $x_1 + x_2 \geq 4y$
2. $x_5 + x_6 \geq 4(1 - y)$
3. $0 \leq y \leq 1$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Create a new variable y s.t.

1. $y = 1 \longrightarrow x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$,
2. $y = 0 \longrightarrow x_5 + x_6 \geq 4$.

Force y to take on values 0 or 1.

Add constraints:

1. $x_1 + x_2 \geq 4y$
2. $x_5 + x_6 \geq 4(1 - y)$
3. $0 < y < 1$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

KitchTech: One More Tricky Case

Create a new variable y s.t.

1. $y = 1 \longrightarrow$ $x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$,
2. $y = 0 \longrightarrow$ $x_5 + x_6 \geq 4$.

Force y to take on values 0 or 1.

Add constraints:

1. $x_1 + x_2 \geq 4y$
2. $x_5 + x_6 \geq 4(1 - y)$
3. $0 \leq y \leq 1$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& x_1 + x_2 \geq 4y \\
& x_5 + x_6 \geq 4(1 - y) \\
& 0 \leq y \leq 1 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& y \text{ integer} \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}
$$

Binary Variables

Variable y is called a binary variable.

These are very useful for modeling logical constraints of the form:

[Condition (A or B) and C] $\longrightarrow$ D

Will see more examples ...

$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & 60x_1 + 70x_2 + 40x_3 + \\
& 70x_4 + 20x_5 + 90x_6 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & 30x_1 + 20x_2 + 30x_3 + \\
& 90x_4 + 30x_5 + 70x_6 \leq 10000 \\
& x_3 \leq 10x_4 \\
& x_1 + x_2 \geq 4y \\
& x_5 + x_6 \geq 4(1-y) \\
& 0 \leq y \leq 1 \\
& 0 \leq x_i \leq 10 \quad (i \in [6]) \\
& y \text{ integer} \\
& x_i \text{ integer} \quad (i \in [6])
\end{aligned}$$

IP Models: Scheduling

- The neighbourhood coffee shop is open on workdays.

- The neighbourhood coffee shop is open on workdays.
- Daily demand for workers:

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

- The neighbourhood coffee shop is open on workdays.
- Daily demand for workers:

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

- Each worker works for 4 consecutive days and has one day off.

- The neighbourhood coffee shop is open on workdays.
- Daily demand for workers:

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

- Each worker works for 4 consecutive days and has one day off.
  e.g.: work: Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu; off: Fri
  or work: Wed, Thu, Fri, Mon; off: Tue

- The neighbourhood coffee shop is open on workdays.
- Daily demand for workers:

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

- Each worker works for 4 consecutive days and has one day off.
  e.g.: work: Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu; off: Fri
  or work: Wed, Thu, Fri, Mon; off: Tue
- Goal: hire the smallest number of workers so that the demand can be met!

- The neighbourhood coffee shop is open on workdays.
- Daily demand for workers:

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

- Each worker works for 4 consecutive days and has one day off.
  e.g.: work: Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu; off: Fri
  or work: Wed, Thu, Fri, Mon; off: Tue
- Goal: hire the smallest number of workers so that the demand can be met!

Can we solve this using IP?

1. Variables. What do we need to decide on?

1. Variables. What do we need to decide on?
$\rightarrow$ introduce variable x_d for every $d \in \{M, T, W, Th, F\}$ counting the number of people to hire with starting day d.

1. Variables. What do we need to decide on?
   $\rightarrow$ introduce variable x_d for every $d \in \{M, T, W, Th, F\}$ counting the number of people to hire with starting day d.
2. Objective function. What do we want to minimize?

1. Variables. What do we need to decide on?
   $\rightarrow$ introduce variable x_d for every $d \in \{M, T, W, Th, F\}$ counting the number of people to hire with starting day d.
2. Objective function. What do we want to minimize?
   $\rightarrow$ the total number of people hired:

$$\min x_M + x_T + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F.$$

1. Variables. What do we need to decide on?
   $\rightarrow$ introduce variable x_d for every $d \in \{M, T, W, Th, F\}$ counting the number of people to hire with starting day d.

2. Objective function. What do we want to minimize?
   $\rightarrow$ the total number of people hired:

$$\min x_M + x_T + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F.$$

3. Constraints. Need to ensure that enough people work on each of the days.

1. Variables. What do we need to decide on?
   $\rightarrow$ introduce variable x_d for every $d \in \{M, T, W, Th, F\}$ counting the number of people to hire with starting day d.

2. Objective function. What do we want to minimize?
   $\rightarrow$ the total number of people hired:

$$\min x_M + x_T + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F.$$

3. Constraints. Need to ensure that enough people work on each of the days.

   Question: Given a solution $(x_M, x_T, x_W, x_{Th}, x_F)$, how many people work on Monday?

1. Variables. What do we need to decide on?
   $\rightarrow$ introduce variable x_d for every $d \in \{M, T, W, Th, F\}$ counting the number of people to hire with starting day d.

2. Objective function. What do we want to minimize?
   $\rightarrow$ the total number of people hired:

$$\min x_M + x_T + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F.$$

3. Constraints. Need to ensure that enough people work on each of the days.

   Question: Given a solution $(x_M, x_T, x_W, x_{Th}, x_F)$, how many people work on Monday?
   All but those that start on Tuesday; i.e.,

$$x_M + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F.$$

Constraints

[Daily Demand]

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

Monday:

$$x_M + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 3$$

Constraints

[Daily Demand]

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

Monday: $x_M + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 3$

Tuesday: $x_M + x_T + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 5$

Constraints

[Daily Demand]

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

Monday: $x_M + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 3$

Tuesday: $x_M + x_T + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 5$

Wednesday: $x_M + x_T + x_W + x_F \geq 9$

Constraints

[Daily Demand]

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

Monday: $x_M + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 3$

Tuesday: $x_M + x_T + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 5$

Wednesday: $x_M + x_T + x_W + x_F \geq 9$

Thursday: $x_M + x_T + x_W + x_T \geq 2$

Constraints

[Daily Demand]

Mon	Tues	Wed	Thurs	Fri
3	5	9	2	7

Monday: $x_M + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 3$

Tuesday: $x_M + x_T + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 5$

Wednesday: $x_M + x_T + x_W + x_F \geq 9$

Thursday: $x_M + x_T + x_W + x_T \geq 2$

Friday: $x_T + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 7$

Scheduling LP

$$
\begin{array}{rl}
\min & x_M + x_T + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \\
\text{s.t.} & x_M + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 3 \\
& x_M + x_T + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 5 \\
& x_M + x_T + x_W + x_F \geq 9 \\
& x_M + x_T + x_W + x_T \geq 2 \\
& x_T + x_W + x_{Th} + x_F \geq 7 \\
& x \geq \nvdash, x \text{ integer}
\end{array}
$$

Quiz

Given an integer program with integer variables $x_1, \ldots, x_6$. Let

$$\mathcal{S} := \{127, 289, 1310, 2754\}.$$

We want to add constraints and/or variables to the IP that enforce that the $x_1 + \ldots + x_6$ is in $\mathcal{S}$. How?

Quiz

Given an integer program with integer variables $x_1, \ldots, x_6$. Let

$$\mathcal{S} := \{127, 289, 1310, 2754\}.$$

We want to add constraints and/or variables to the IP that enforce that the $x_1 + \ldots + x_6$ is in $\mathcal{S}$. How?

- Add binary variables $y_{127}, y_{289}, y_{1310}, y_{2754}$, one for each $i \in \mathcal{S}$.

Quiz

Given an integer program with integer variables $x_1, \ldots, x_6$. Let

$$\mathcal{S} := \{127, 289, 1310, 2754\}.$$

We want to add constraints and/or variables to the IP that enforce that the $x_1 + \ldots + x_6$ is in $\mathcal{S}$. How?

- Add binary variables $y_{127}, y_{289}, y_{1310}, y_{2754}$, one for each $i \in \mathcal{S}$.
- Want: Exactly one of these variables is 1 in a feasible solution.

Quiz

Given an integer program with integer variables $x_1, \ldots, x_6$. Let

$$\mathcal{S} := \{127, 289, 1310, 2754\}.$$

We want to add constraints and/or variables to the IP that enforce that the $x_1 + \ldots + x_6$ is in $\mathcal{S}$. How?

- Add binary variables $y_{127}, y_{289}, y_{1310}, y_{2754}$, one for each $i \in \mathcal{S}$.
- Want: Exactly one of these variables is 1 in a feasible solution.
- If $y_n = 1$ for $n \in \mathcal{S}$ then $\sum_{i=1}^{6} x_i = n$

Quiz

Add the following constraints:

$$y_{127} + y_{289} + y_{1310} + y_{2754} = 1$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^{6} x_i = \sum_{i \in \mathcal{S}} i y_i$$

$$0 \leq y_i \leq 1, \quad y_i \text{ integer} \quad \forall i \in \mathcal{S}$$

Quiz

Add the following constraints:

$$y_{127} + y_{289} + y_{1310} + y_{2754} = 1$$
$$\sum_{i=1}^{6} x_i = \sum_{i \in \mathcal{S}} i y_i$$
$$0 \leq y_i \leq 1, \quad y_i \text{ integer} \quad \forall i \in \mathcal{S}$$

Why is the resulting IP correct?

Recap:

- An integer program is obtained by adding integrality constraints for some/all of the variables to an LP.

Recap:

- An integer program is obtained by adding integrality constraints for some/all of the variables to an LP.
- An algorithm is efficient if its running time can be bounded by a polynomial of the input size of the instance.

Recap:

- An integer program is obtained by adding integrality constraints for some/all of the variables to an LP.
- An algorithm is efficient if its running time can be bounded by a polynomial of the input size of the instance.
- While LPs admit efficient algorithms, IPs are unlikely to have efficient algorithms. Thus, whenever possible, formulate a problem as an LP!

Recap:

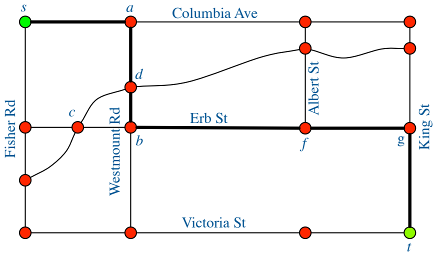
- An integer program is obtained by adding integrality constraints for some/all of the variables to an LP.
- An algorithm is efficient if its running time can be bounded by a polynomial of the input size of the instance.
- While LPs admit efficient algorithms, IPs are unlikely to have efficient algorithms. Thus, whenever possible, formulate a problem as an LP!
- Variables that can take value 0 or 1 only are called binary.

Recap:

- An integer program is obtained by adding integrality constraints for some/all of the variables to an LP.
- An algorithm is efficient if its running time can be bounded by a polynomial of the input size of the instance.
- While LPs admit efficient algorithms, IPs are unlikely to have efficient algorithms. Thus, whenever possible, formulate a problem as an LP!
- Variables that can take value 0 or 1 only are called binary.
- Binary variables are useful for expressing logical conditions.

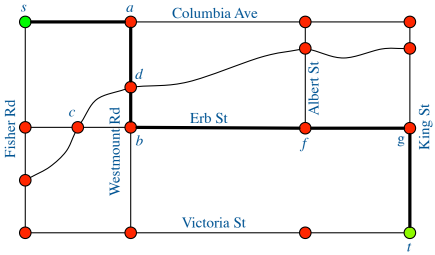
Module 1: Formulations (Optimization on Graphs)

Shortest Paths



- Familiar problem: Starting at location s, we wish to travel to t.
  What is the best (i.e., shortest) route?

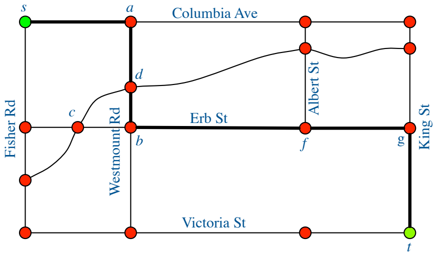
Shortest Paths



- Familiar problem: Starting at location s, we wish to travel to t.
  What is the best (i.e., shortest) route?

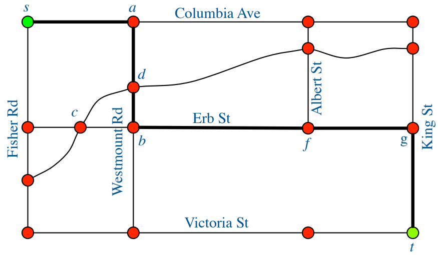
- In the figure above, such a route is indicated in bold.

Shortest Paths



- Goal: Write the problem of finding the shortest route between s and t as an integer program!

Shortest Paths



- Goal: Write the problem of finding the shortest route between s and t as an integer program!
  ... How?

Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

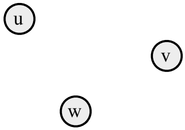
A graph G consists of ...

Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

A graph G consists of ...

- vertices $u, w, \ldots \in V$

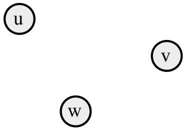


Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

A graph G consists of ...

- vertices $u, w, \ldots \in V$
  (drawn as filled circles)

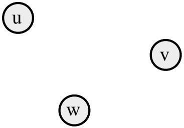


Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

A graph G consists of ...

- vertices $u, w, \ldots \in V$
  (drawn as filled circles)
- edges $uw, wz, \ldots \in E$



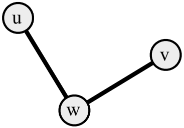
Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

A graph G consists of ...

- vertices $u, w, \ldots \in V$
  (drawn as filled circles)

- edges $uw, wz, \ldots \in E$
  (drawn as lines connecting circles)



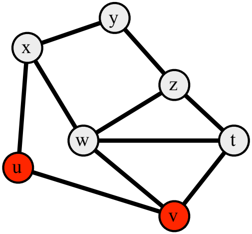
Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

A graph G consists of ...

- vertices $u, w, \ldots \in V$
  (drawn as filled circles)
- edges $uw, wz, \ldots \in E$
  (drawn as lines connecting circles)

Two vertices u and v are adjacent if $uv \in E$.



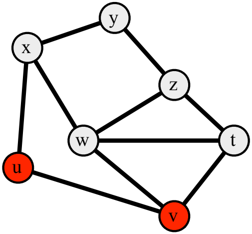
Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

A graph G consists of ...

- vertices $u, w, \ldots \in V$
  (drawn as filled circles)

- edges $uw, wz, \ldots \in E$
  (drawn as lines connecting circles)



Two vertices u and v are adjacent if $uv \in E$. Vertices u and v are the endpoints of edge $uv \in E$,

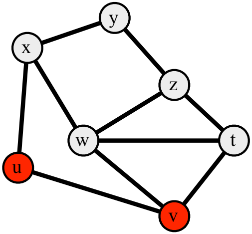
Graph Theory 101

Rephrasing this problem in the language of graph theory helps!

A graph G consists of ...

- vertices $u, w, \ldots \in V$
  (drawn as filled circles)
- edges $uw, wz, \ldots \in E$
  (drawn as lines connecting circles)

Two vertices u and v are adjacent if $uv \in E$. Vertices u and v are the endpoints of edge $uv \in E$, and edge $e \in E$ is incident to $u \in V$ if u is an endpoint of e.



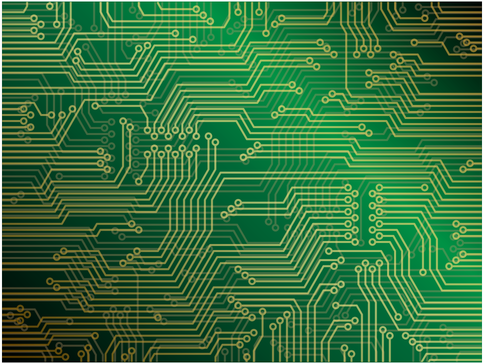
Graphs – Why do we care?

Graphs are useful to compactly model many real-world entities.

Graphs – Why do we care?

Graphs are useful to compactly model many real-world entities. For example:

- Modeling circuits in chip design

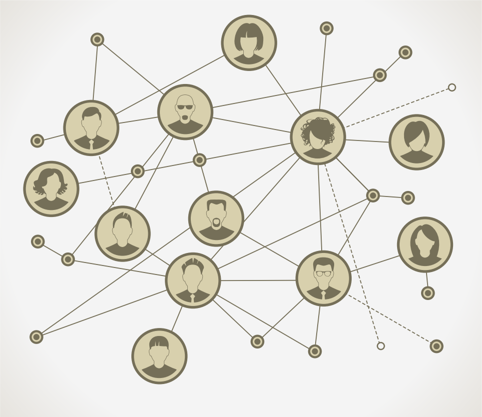


Eyematrix/iStock/Thinkstock

Graphs – Why do we care?

Graphs are useful to compactly model many real-world entities. For example:

- Modeling circuits in chip design
- Social networks

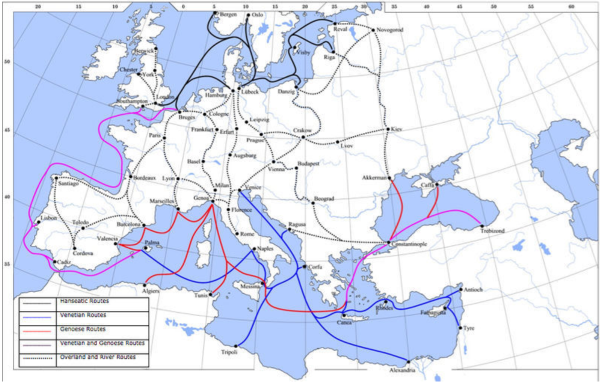


VLADGRIN/iStock/Thinkstock

Graphs – Why do we care?

Graphs are useful to compactly model many real-world entities. For example:

- Modeling circuits in chip design
- Social networks
- Trade networks

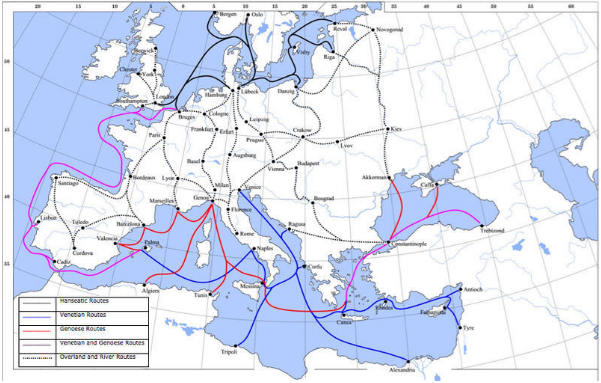


Lampman, 2008 [Online Image]. Late Medieval Trade Routes. Wikimedia Commons.
http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Late_Medieval_Trade_Routes.jpg

Graphs – Why do we care?

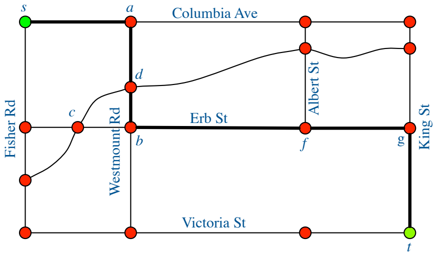
Graphs are useful to compactly model many real-world entities. For example:

- Modeling circuits in chip design
- Social networks
- Trade networks
- .... and many more!



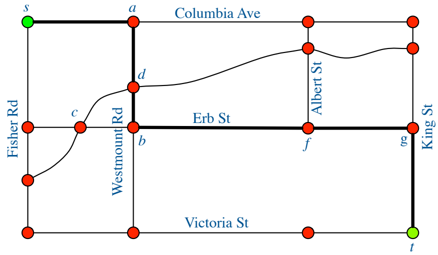
Lampman, 2008 [Online Image]. Late Medieval Trade Routes. Wikimedia Commons. http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Late_Medieval_Trade_Routes.jpg

The Map of Water Town



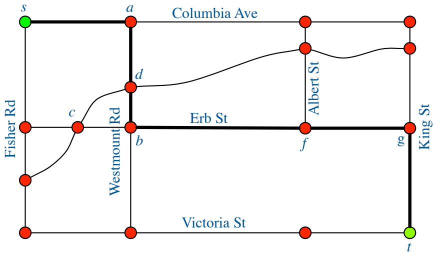
- We can think of the street map as a graph, G.

The Map of Water Town



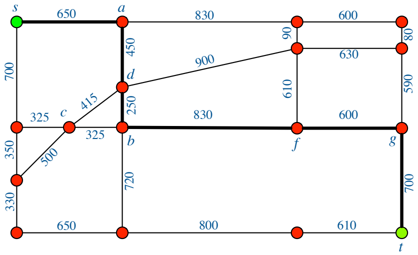
- We can think of the street map as a graph, G.
- Vertices: Road intersections

The Map of Water Town



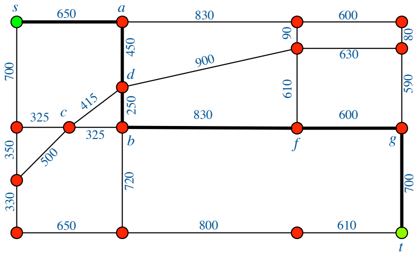
- We can think of the street map as a graph, G.
- Vertices: Road intersections
- Edges: Road segments connecting adjacent intersections

The Map of Water Town



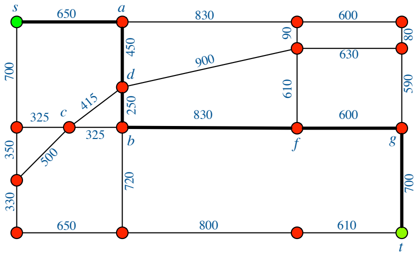
- Each edge $e \in E$ is labelled by its length $c_e \geq 0$.

The Map of Water Town



- Each edge $e \in E$ is labelled by its length $c_e \geq 0$.
- We are looking for a path connecting s and t of smallest total length!

Paths



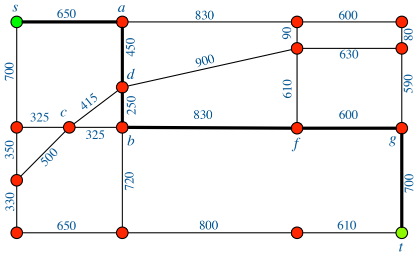
An s, t-path in $G = (V, E)$ is a sequence

$$v_1v_2, v_2v_3, v_3v_4, \ldots, v_{k-2}v_{k-1}, v_{k-1}v_k$$

where

- $v_i \in V$ and $v_iv_{i+1} \in E$ for all i, and

Paths



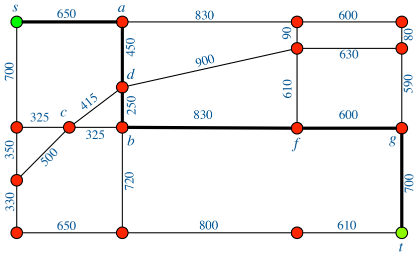
An s, t-path in $G = (V, E)$ is a sequence

$$v_1v_2, v_2v_3, v_3v_4, \dots, v_{k-2}v_{k-1}, v_{k-1}v_k$$

where

- $v_i \in V$ and $v_iv_{i+1} \in E$ for all i, and
- $v_1 = s$, $v_k = t$, and $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$.

Paths



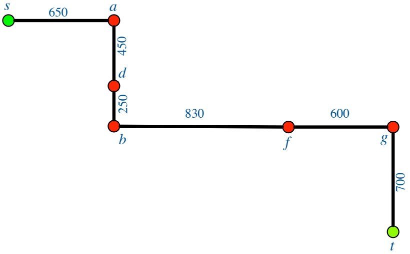
An s, t-path in $G = (V, E)$ is a sequence

$$v_1v_2, v_2v_3, v_3v_4, \ldots, v_{k-2}v_{k-1}, v_{k-1}v_k$$

where

- $v_i \in V$ and $v_iv_{i+1} \in E$ for all i, and
- $v_1 = s$, $v_k = t$, and $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$.
  (Without this, it is called an s, t-walk)

Paths



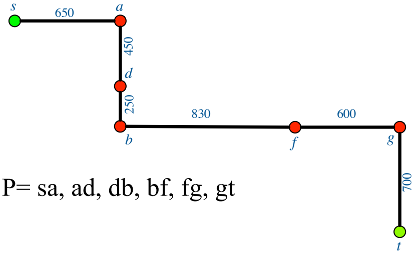
An s, t-path in $G = (V, E)$ is a sequence

$$v_1 v_2, v_2 v_3, v_3 v_4, \ldots, v_{k-2} v_{k-1}, v_{k-1} v_k$$

where

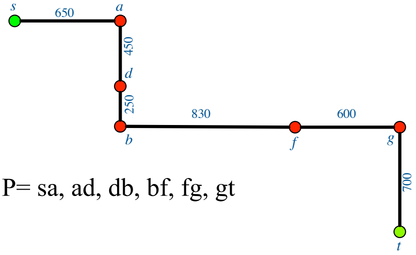
- $v_i \in V$ and $v_i v_{i+1} \in E$ for all i, and
- $v_1 = s$, $v_k = t$, and $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$.
  (Without this, it is called an s, t-walk)

Paths



P= sa, ad, db, bf, fg, gt

Paths

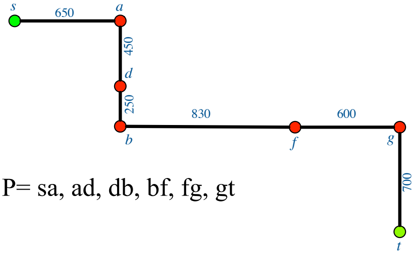


P= sa, ad, db, bf, fg, gt

The length of a path $P = v_1v_2, \ldots, v_{k-1}v_k$ is the sum of the lengths of the edges on P:

$$c(P) := \sum (c_e \; : \; e \in P).$$

Paths

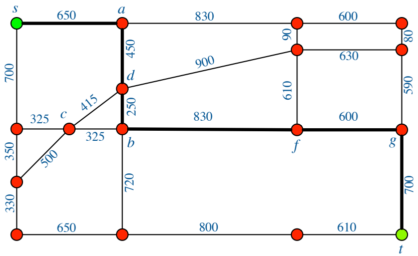


P= sa, ad, db, bf, fg, gt

$$\begin{aligned} c(P) &= c_{sa} + c_{ad} + c_{db} + c_{bf} + c_{fg} + c_{gt} \\ &= 650 + 490 + 250 + 830 + 600 + 700 \\ &= 3520 \end{aligned}$$

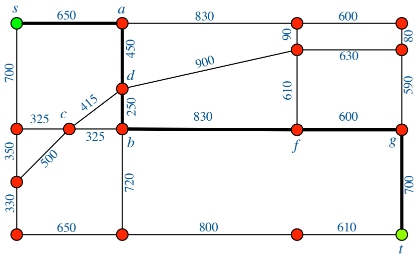
The length of a path $P = v_1v_2, \dots, v_{k-1}v_k$ is the sum of the lengths of the edges on P:

$$c(P) := \sum (c_e \ : \ e \in P).$$



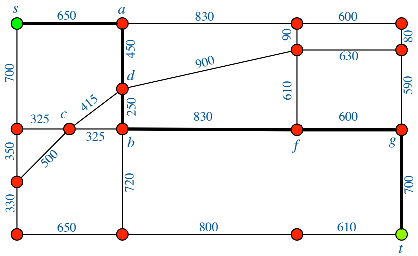
Shortest Path Problem

- Given: Graph $G = (V, E)$, lengths $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$



Shortest Path Problem

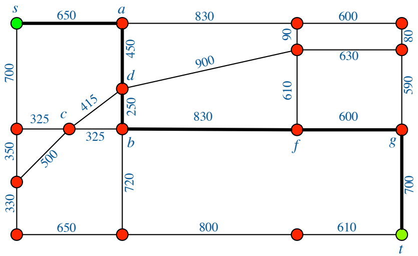
- Given: Graph $G = (V, E)$, lengths $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$
- Find: Minimum-length s, t-path P



Shortest Path Problem

- Given: Graph $G = (V, E)$, lengths $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$
- Find: Minimum-length s, t-path P

Goal: Write an IP whose solutions are the shortest s, t-paths!



Shortest Path Problem

- Given: Graph $G = (V, E)$, lengths $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$
- Find: Minimum-length s, t-path P

Goal: Write an IP whose solutions are the shortest s, t-paths!

$\longrightarrow$ Later!

Example: Matchings

WaterTech - Job Assignment

WaterTech has a collection of
important jobs:

$$J = \{1', 2', 3', 4'\}$$

that it needs to handle urgently.

WaterTech - Job Assignment

WaterTech has a collection of important jobs:

$$J = \{1', 2', 3', 4'\}$$

that it needs to handle urgently.

It also has 4 employees:

$$E = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

that need to handle these jobs.

WaterTech - Job Assignment

WaterTech has a collection of important jobs:

$$J = \{1', 2', 3', 4'\}$$

that it needs to handle urgently.

It also has 4 employees:

$$E = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

that need to handle these jobs.

Employees have different skill-sets and may take different amounts of time to execute a job.

WaterTech - Job Assignment

WaterTech has a collection of important jobs:

$$J = \{1', 2', 3', 4'\}$$

that it needs to handle urgently.

It also has 4 employees:

$$E = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

that need to handle these jobs.

Employees have different skill-sets and may take different amounts of time to execute a job.

Employees	Jobs			
	$1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	2	-
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

WaterTech - Job Assignment

WaterTech has a collection of important jobs:

$$J = \{1', 2', 3', 4'\}$$

that it needs to handle urgently.

It also has 4 employees:

$$E = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

that need to handle these jobs.

Employees have different skill-sets and may take different amounts of time to execute a job.

Employees	Jobs			
	$1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	2	-
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

Note: Some workers are not able to handle certain jobs!

WaterTech - Job Assignment

WaterTech has a collection of important jobs:

$$J = \{1', 2', 3', 4'\}$$

that it needs to handle urgently.

It also has 4 employees:

$$E = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

that need to handle these jobs.

Employees have different skill-sets and may take different amounts of time to execute a job.

Employees	Jobs			
	$1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	2	-
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

Note: Some workers are not able to handle certain jobs!

Goal: Assign each worker to exactly one task so that the total execution time is smallest!

WaterTech - Job Assignment

WaterTech has a collection of important jobs:

$$J = \{1', 2', 3', 4'\}$$

that it needs to handle urgently.

It also has 4 employees:

$$E = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$$

that need to handle these jobs.

Employees have different skill-sets and may take different amounts of time to execute a job.

Employees	Jobs			
	$1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	2	-
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

Note: Some workers are not able to handle certain jobs!

Goal: Assign each worker to exactly one task so that the total execution time is smallest!

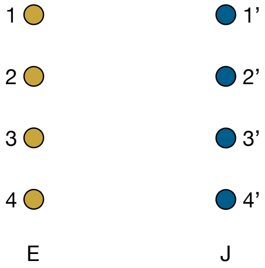
$\longrightarrow$ We will rephrase this in the language of graphs

Matchings

Create a graph with one vertex for each employee and job.

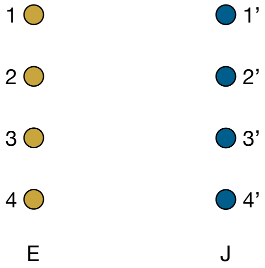
Matchings

Create a graph with one vertex for each employee and job.



Matchings

Create a graph with one vertex for each employee and job.

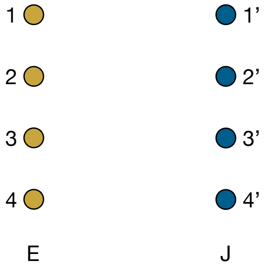


Employees	Jobs			
	$1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	-	4
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

Matchings

Create a graph with one vertex for each employee and job.

Add an edge ij for $i \in E$ and $j \in J$ if employee i can handle job j.

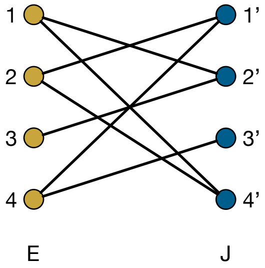


Employees	Jobs			
	$1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	-	4
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

Matchings

Create a graph with one vertex for each employee and job.

Add an edge ij for $i \in E$ and $j \in J$ if employee i can handle job j.



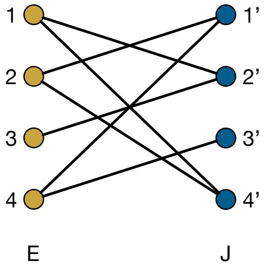
Employees	Jobs $1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	-	4
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

Matchings

Create a graph with one vertex for each employee and job.

Add an edge ij for $i \in E$ and $j \in J$ if employee i can handle job j.

Let the cost c_{ij} of edge ij be the amount of time needed by i to complete j.



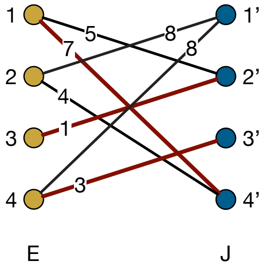
Employees	Jobs $1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	-	4
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

Matchings

Create a graph with one vertex for each employee and job.

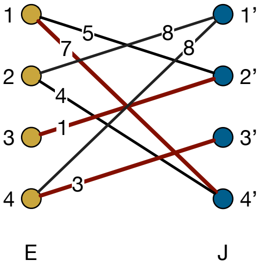
Add an edge ij for $i \in E$ and $j \in J$ if employee i can handle job j.

Let the cost c_{ij} of edge ij be the amount of time needed by i to complete j.



Employees	Jobs			
	$1'$	$2'$	$3'$	$4'$
1	-	5	-	7
2	8	-	-	4
3	-	1	-	-
4	8	-	3	-

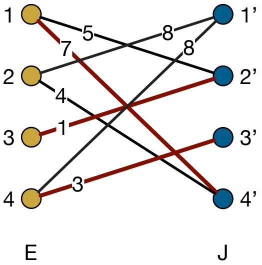
Matchings



Definition

A collection $M \subseteq E$ is a matching if no two edges $ij, i'j' \in M$ $(ij \neq i'j')$ share an endpoint;

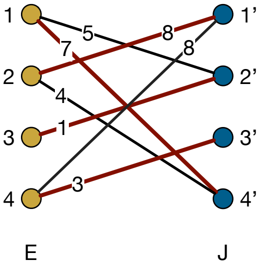
Matchings



Definition

A collection $M \subseteq E$ is a matching if no two edges $ij, i'j' \in M$ $(ij \neq i'j')$ share an endpoint; i.e., $\{i, j\} \cap \{i', j'\} = \emptyset$.

Matchings



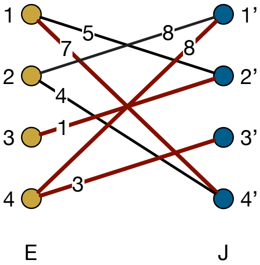
Definition

A collection $M \subseteq E$ is a matching if no two edges $ij, i'j' \in M$ $(ij \neq i'j')$ share an endpoint; i.e., $\{i,j\} \cap \{i',j'\} = \emptyset$.

Examples

1. $M = \{14', 21', 32', 43'\}$ is a matching.

Matchings



Definition

A collection $M \subseteq E$ is a matching if no two edges $ij, i'j' \in M$ $(ij \neq i'j')$ share an endpoint; i.e., $\{i, j\} \cap \{i', j'\} = \emptyset$.

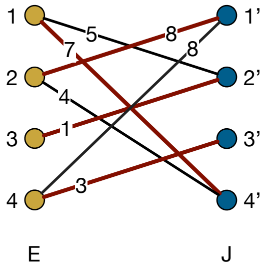
Examples

1. $M = \{14', 21', 32', 43'\}$ is a matching.
2. $M = \{14', 32', 41', 43'\}$ is not a matching.

Matchings

The cost of a matching M is the sum of costs of its edges:

$$c(M) = \sum (c_e \,:\, e \in M)$$

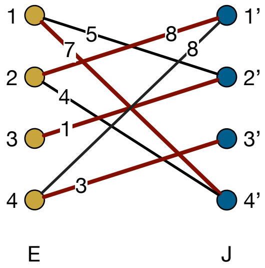


Matchings

The cost of a matching M is the sum of costs of its edges:

$$c(M) = \sum (c_e \,:\, e \in M)$$

e.g., $M = \{14', 21', 32', 43'\}$
$\longrightarrow c(M) = 19$

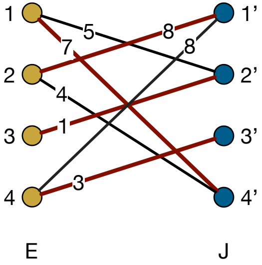


Matchings

The cost of a matching M is the sum of costs of its edges:

$$c(M) = \sum (c_e \,:\, e \in M)$$

e.g., $M = \{14', 21', 32', 43'\}$
$\longrightarrow c(M) = 19$



Definition

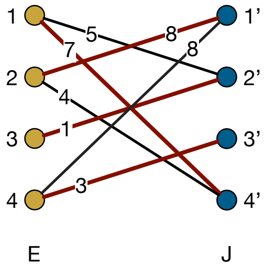
A matching M is perfect if every vertex v in the graph is incident to an edge in M.

Matchings

The cost of a matching M is the sum of costs of its edges:

$$c(M) = \sum (c_e \,:\, e \in M)$$

e.g., $M = \{14', 21', 32', 43'\}$
$\longrightarrow c(M) = 19$



Definition

A matching M is perfect if every vertex v in the graph is incident to an edge in M.

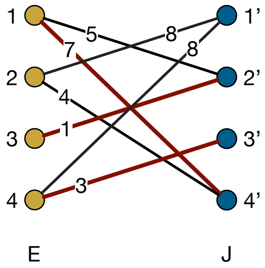
E.g., matching in figure is perfect,

Matchings

The cost of a matching M is the sum of costs of its edges:

$$c(M) = \sum (c_e \,:\, e \in M)$$

e.g., $M = \{14', 21', 32', 43'\}$
$\longrightarrow c(M) = 19$



Definition

A matching M is perfect if every vertex v in the graph is incident to an edge in M.

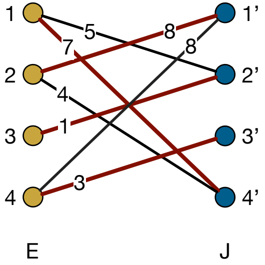
E.g., matching in figure is perfect, and this one is not!

Restating the Assignment Problem

Definition

A matching M is perfect if every vertex v in the graph is incident to an edge in M.

Note: Perfect matchings correspond to feasible assignments of workers to jobs!



Restating the Assignment Problem

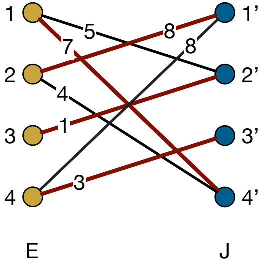
Definition

A matching M is perfect if every vertex v in the graph is incident to an edge in M.

Note: Perfect matchings correspond to feasible assignments of workers to jobs!

E.g., the matching shown corresponds to the following assignment:

$$1 \to 4',\ 2 \to 1',\ 3 \to 2',\ \text{and } 4 \to 3'$$



Restating the Assignment Problem

Definition

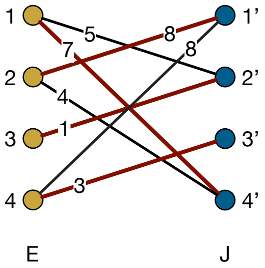
A matching M is perfect if every vertex v in the graph is incident to an edge in M.

Note: Perfect matchings correspond to feasible assignments of workers to jobs!

E.g., the matching shown corresponds to the following assignment:

$$1 \to 4',\, 2 \to 1',\, 3 \to 2',\ \text{and}\ 4 \to 3'$$

whose execution time equals $c(M) = 19$!



Restating the Assignment Problem

Definition

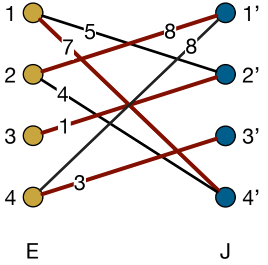
A matching M is perfect if every vertex v in the graph is incident to an edge in M.

Note: Perfect matchings correspond to feasible assignments of workers to jobs!

E.g., the matching shown corresponds to the following assignment:

$$1 \to 4',\ 2 \to 1',\ 3 \to 2',\ \text{and}\ 4 \to 3'$$

whose execution time equals $c(M) = 19$!



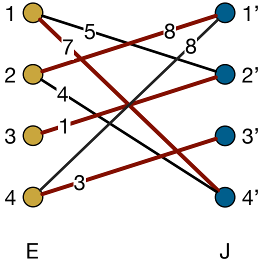
Restatement of original question:

Find a perfect matching M in our graph of smallest cost.

A Little More Notation...

Notation: Use $\delta(v)$ to denote the set of edges incident to v; i.e.,

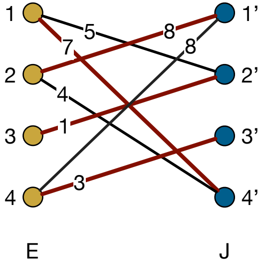
$$\delta(v) = \{e \in E \,:\, e = vu \text{ for some } u \in V\}.$$



A Little More Notation...

Notation: Use $\delta(v)$ to denote the set of edges incident to v; i.e.,

$$\delta(v) = \{e \in E \,:\, e = vu \text{ for some } u \in V\}.$$



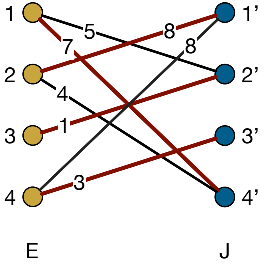
Examples

- $\delta(2) = \{21', 24'\}$

A Little More Notation...

Notation: Use $\delta(v)$ to denote the set of edges incident to v; i.e.,

$$\delta(v) = \{e \in E \,:\, e = vu \text{ for some } u \in V\}.$$



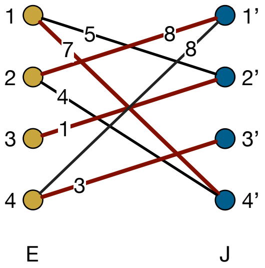
Examples

- $\delta(2) = \{21', 24'\}$
- $\delta(3') = \{43'\}$

A Little More Notation...

Notation: Use $\delta(v)$ to denote the set of edges incident to v; i.e.,

$$\delta(v) = \{e \in E \,:\, e = vu \text{ for some } u \in V\}.$$



Definition

Given $G = (V, E)$, $M \subseteq E$ is a perfect matching iff $M \cap \delta(v)$ contains a single edge for all $v \in V$.

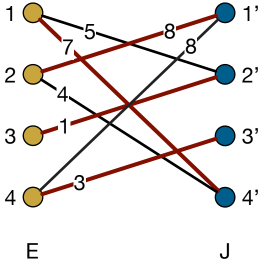
Examples

- $\delta(2) = \{21', 24'\}$
- $\delta(3') = \{43'\}$

An IP for Perfect Matchings

Definition

Given $G = (V, E)$, $M \subseteq E$ is a perfect matching iff $M \cap \delta(v)$ contains a single edge for all $v \in V$.

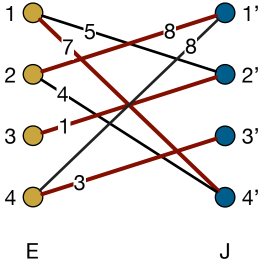


An IP for Perfect Matchings

Definition

Given $G = (V, E)$, $M \subseteq E$ is a perfect matching iff $M \cap \delta(v)$ contains a single edge for all $v \in V$.

The IP will have a binary variable x_e for every edge $e \in E$.



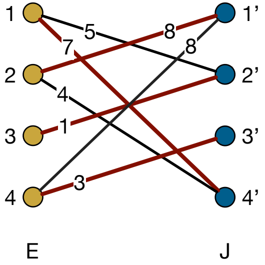
An IP for Perfect Matchings

Definition

Given $G = (V, E)$, $M \subseteq E$ is a perfect matching iff $M \cap \delta(v)$ contains a single edge for all $v \in V$.

The IP will have a binary variable x_e for every edge $e \in E$. Idea:

$$x_e = 1 \quad \leftrightarrow \quad e \in M$$



An IP for Perfect Matchings

Definition

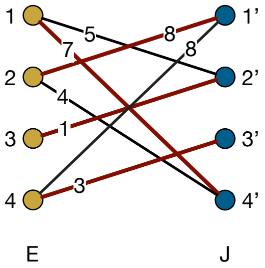
Given $G = (V, E)$, $M \subseteq E$ is a perfect matching iff $M \cap \delta(v)$ contains a single edge for all $v \in V$.

The IP will have a binary variable x_e for every edge $e \in E$. Idea:

$$x_e = 1 \quad \leftrightarrow \quad e \in M$$

Constraints: For all $v \in V$, need

$$\sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(v)) = 1$$



An IP for Perfect Matchings

Definition

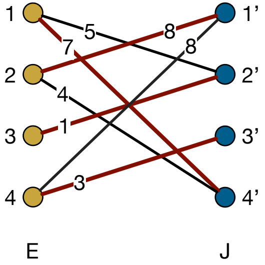
Given $G = (V, E)$, $M \subseteq E$ is a perfect matching iff $M \cap \delta(v)$ contains a single edge for all $v \in V$.

The IP will have a binary variable x_e for every edge $e \in E$. Idea:

$$x_e = 1 \quad \leftrightarrow \quad e \in M$$

Constraints: For all $v \in V$, need

$$\sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(v)) = 1$$

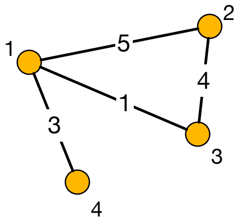


Objective:

$$\sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E)$$

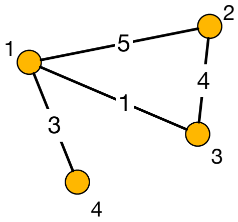
An IP for Perfect Matchings

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.}\ & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(v)) = 1 \ (v \in V) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0},\ x \text{ integer} \end{aligned}$$



An IP for Perfect Matchings

$$\begin{aligned} \min \ & \sum (c_e x_e \ : \ e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \ & \sum (x_e \ : \ e \in \delta(v)) = 1 \ (v \in V) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0}, \ x \text{ integer} \end{aligned}$$



$$\min \quad (5,1,3,4)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} 12 & 13 & 14 & 23 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} x = \mathbb{1}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0} \quad \text{integer}$$

Recap

- Graphs consist of vertices V and edges E ... and are very useful in modeling many practical problems.

Recap

- Graphs consist of vertices V and edges E ... and are very useful in modeling many practical problems.
- In particular, graphs can be used to model road networks, where roads are edges and street intersections are vertices.

Recap

- Graphs consist of vertices V and edges E ... and are very useful in modeling many practical problems.
- In particular, graphs can be used to model road networks, where roads are edges and street intersections are vertices.
- In the shortest path problem, each edge $e \in E$ has an associated weight c_e, and we are looking for a path connecting two specific vertices of smallest total weight.

Recap

- Graphs consist of vertices V and edges E ... and are very useful in modeling many practical problems.
- In particular, graphs can be used to model road networks, where roads are edges and street intersections are vertices.
- In the shortest path problem, each edge $e \in E$ has an associated weight c_e, and we are looking for a path connecting two specific vertices of smallest total weight.
- A matching is a collection of edges, no two of which share an endpoint.

Recap

- Graphs consist of vertices V and edges E ... and are very useful in modeling many practical problems.
- In particular, graphs can be used to model road networks, where roads are edges and street intersections are vertices.
- In the shortest path problem, each edge $e \in E$ has an associated weight c_e, and we are looking for a path connecting two specific vertices of smallest total weight.
- A matching is a collection of edges, no two of which share an endpoint. A perfect matching is a matching that *covers* all vertices in V.

Module 1: Formulations (Shortest Paths)

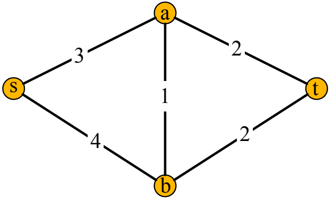
Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

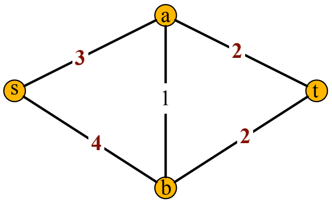
- Graph $G = (V, E)$



Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

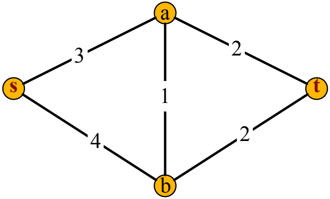
- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$



Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$
- Vertices $s, t \in V$

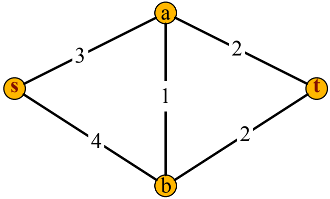


Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$
- Vertices $s, t \in V$

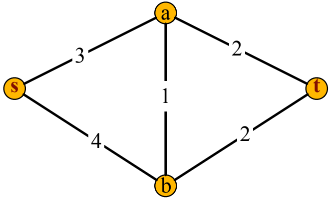
Goal: Compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.



Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$
- Vertices $s, t \in V$



Goal: Compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.

Recall: P is an s, t-path if it is of the form

$$v_1v_2,\ v_2v_3,\ \ldots,\ v_{k-1}v_k$$

and

Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

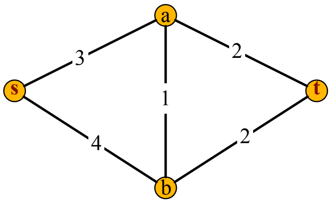
- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$
- Vertices $s, t \in V$

Goal: Compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.

Recall: P is an s, t-path if it is of the form

$$v_1 v_2,\ v_2 v_3,\ \ldots,\ v_{k-1} v_k$$

and

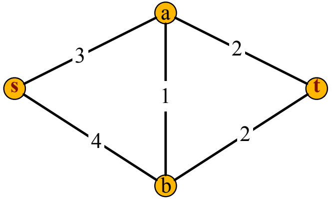


1. $v_i v_{i+1} \in E$ for all $i \in \{1, \ldots, k-1\}$,

Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$
- Vertices $s, t \in V$



Goal: Compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.

Recall: P is an s, t-path if it is of the form

$$v_1v_2,\ v_2v_3,\ \ldots,\ v_{k-1}v_k$$

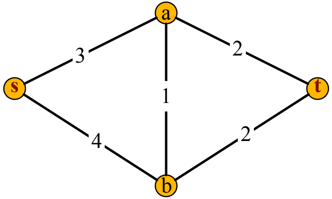
and

1. $v_iv_{i+1} \in E$ for all $i \in \{1, \ldots, k-1\}$,
2. $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$, and

Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$
- Vertices $s, t \in V$



Goal: Compute an s,t-path of smallest total length.

Recall: P is an s,t-path if it is of the form

$$v_1v_2,\ v_2v_3,\ \ldots,\ v_{k-1}v_k$$

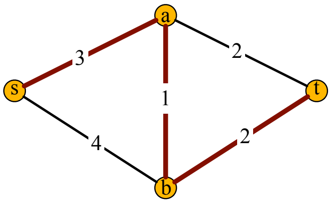
and

1. $v_iv_{i+1} \in E$ for all $i \in \{1, \ldots, k-1\}$,
2. $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$, and
3. $v_1 = s$ and $v_k = t$.

Recap: Shortest Paths

Input:

- Graph $G = (V, E)$
- Non-negative edge lengths c_e for all $e \in E$
- Vertices $s, t \in V$



Goal: Compute an s,t-path of smallest total length.

Recall: P is an s,t-path if it is of the form

$$v_1v_2,\ v_2v_3,\ \ldots,\ v_{k-1}v_k$$

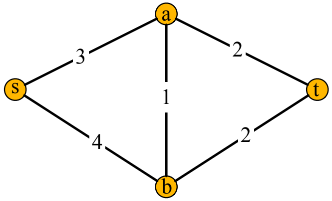
and

1. $v_iv_{i+1} \in E$ for all $i \in \{1, \ldots, k-1\}$,
2. $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$, and
3. $v_1 = s$ and $v_k = t$.

E.g., $P = sa,\ ab,\ bt$

Recap: Shortest Paths

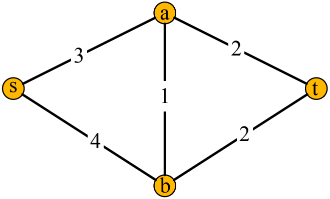
Shortest Path Problem: Given $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, and $s, t \in V$, compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.



Recap: Shortest Paths

Shortest Path Problem: Given $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, and $s, t \in V$, compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.

Now: Formulate the problem as an IP!

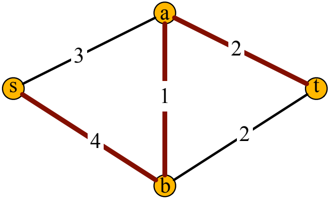


Recap: Shortest Paths

Shortest Path Problem: Given $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, and $s, t \in V$, compute an s,t-path of smallest total length.

Now: Formulate the problem as an IP!

Useful Observation: Let $C \subseteq E$ be a set of edges whose removal disconnects s and t.

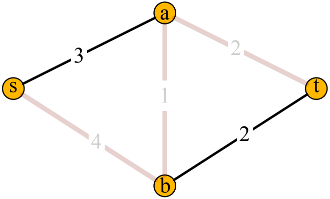


Recap: Shortest Paths

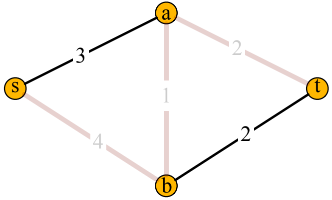
Shortest Path Problem: Given $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, and $s, t \in V$, compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.

Now: Formulate the problem as an IP!

Useful Observation: Let $C \subseteq E$ be a set of edges whose removal disconnects s and t.



Recap: Shortest Paths



Shortest Path Problem: Given $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, and $s, t \in V$, compute an s,t-path of smallest total length.

Now: Formulate the problem as an IP!

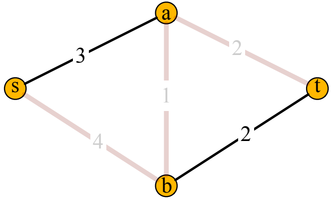
Useful Observation: Let $C \subseteq E$ be a set of edges whose removal disconnects s and t.

$\longrightarrow$ Every s,t-path P must have at least one edge in C.

Recap: Shortest Paths

Shortest Path Problem: Given $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, and $s, t \in V$, compute an s, t-path of smallest total length.

Now: Formulate the problem as an IP!



Useful Observation: Let $C \subseteq E$ be a set of edges whose removal disconnects s and t.

$\longrightarrow$ Every s, t-path P must have at least

one edge in C.

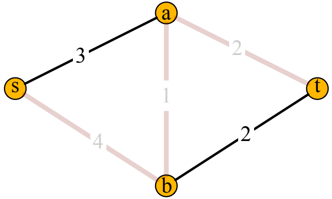
Definition

For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

Recap: Shortest Paths

Shortest Path Problem: Given $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, and $s, t \in V$, compute an s,t-path of smallest total length.

Now: Formulate the problem as an IP!



Useful Observation: Let $C \subseteq E$ be a set of edges whose removal disconnects s and t.

$\longrightarrow$ Every s,t-path P must have at least one edge in C.

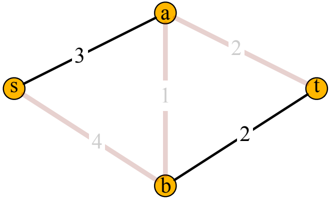
Definition

For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

Cuts

Examples:



Definition

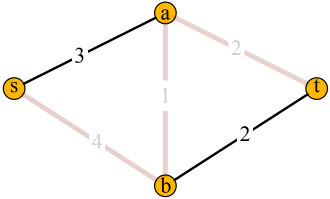
For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\}$



Definition

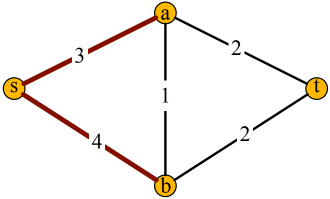
For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\} \rightarrow \delta(S) = \{sa, sb\}$



Definition

For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

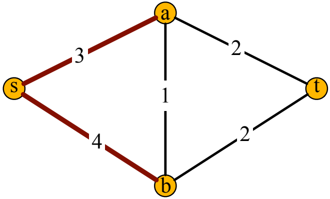
$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\} \to \delta(S) = \{sa, sb\}$

2. $S = \{s, a\}$



Definition

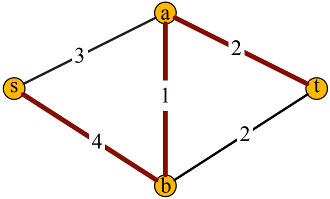
For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$

Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\} \to \delta(S) = \{sa, sb\}$
2. $S = \{s, a\} \to \delta(S) = \{ab, at, sb\}$



Definition

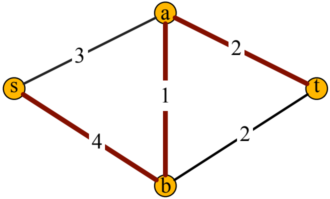
For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\} \to \delta(S) = \{sa, sb\}$
2. $S = \{s, a\} \to \delta(S) = \{ab, at, sb\}$
3. $S = \{a, b\}$



Definition

For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

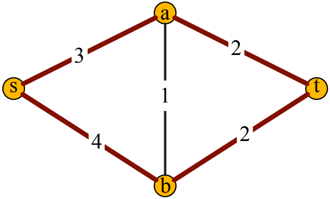
Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\} \rightarrow \delta(S) = \{sa, sb\}$

2. $S = \{s, a\} \rightarrow \delta(S) = \{ab, at, sb\}$

3. $S = \{a, b\} \rightarrow \delta(S) = \{sa, sb, at, bt\}$



Definition

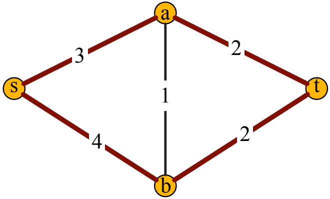
For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E : u \in S, v \notin S\}$

Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\} \rightarrow \delta(S) = \{sa, sb\}$
2. $S = \{s, a\} \rightarrow \delta(S) = \{ab, at, sb\}$
3. $S = \{a, b\} \rightarrow \delta(S) = \{sa, sb, at, bt\}$



Definition

$\delta(S)$ is an s, t-cut if $s \in S$ and $t \notin S$.

Definition

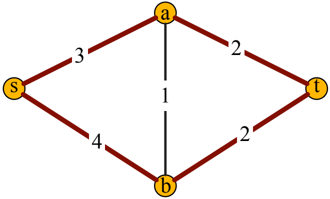
For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

Cuts

Examples:

1. $S = \{s\} \to \delta(S) = \{sa, sb\}$
2. $S = \{s, a\} \to \delta(S) = \{ab, at, sb\}$
3. $S = \{a, b\} \to \delta(S) = \{sa, sb, at, bt\}$



Definition

$\delta(S)$ is an s, t-cut if $s \in S$ and $t \notin S$.

E.g., 1 and 2 are s, t-cuts, 3 is not.

Definition

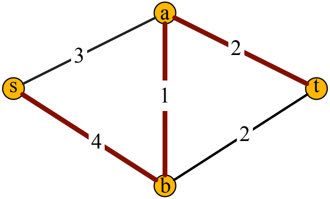
For $S \subseteq V$, we let $\delta(S)$ be the set of edges with exactly one endpoint in S.

$$\delta(S) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in S, v \notin S\}$$

Cuts

Definition

$\delta(S)$ is an s, t-cut if $s \in S$ and $t \notin S$.

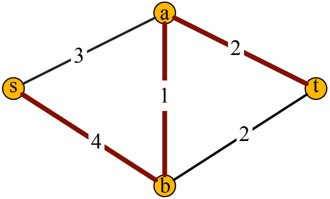


Cuts

Definition

$\delta(S)$ is an s,t-cut if $s \in S$ and $t \notin S$.

E.g., $\delta(\{s,a\}) = \{sb, ab, at\}$ is an s,t-cut.



Cuts

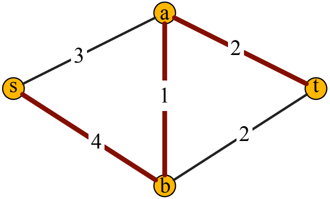
Definition

$\delta(S)$ is an s, t-cut if $s \in S$ and $t \notin S$.

E.g., $\delta(\{s, a\}) = \{sb, ab, at\}$ is an s, t-cut.

Remark

If P is an s, t-path and $\delta(S)$ is an s, t-cut, then P must have an edge from $\delta(S)$.



Cuts

Definition

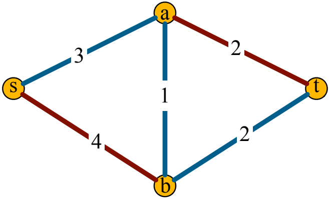
$\delta(S)$ is an s, t-cut if $s \in S$ and $t \notin S$.

E.g., $\delta(\{s,a\}) = \{sb, ab, at\}$ is an s,t-cut.

Remark

If P is an s,t-path and $\delta(S)$ is an s,t-cut, then P must have an edge from $\delta(S)$.

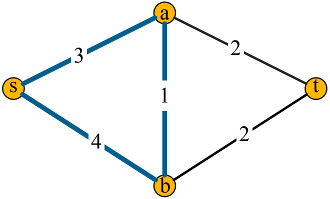
E.g., $P = sa,\ ab,\ bt$.



Cuts

Remark

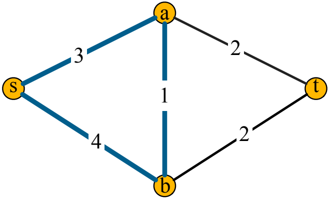
If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.



Cuts

Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s, t-cut, then S contains an s, t-path.

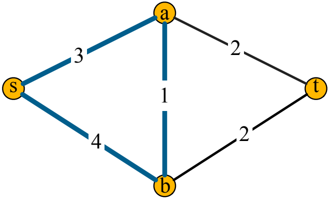


Proof: (by contradiction)

Cuts

Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s, t-cut, then S contains an s, t-path.



Proof: (by contradiction)

- Suppose S has an edge from every s, t-cut, but S has no s, t-path.

Cuts

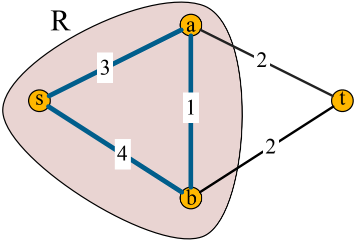
Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s, t-cut, then S contains an s, t-path.

Proof: (by contradiction)

- Suppose S has an edge from every s, t-cut, but S has no s, t-path.
- Let R be the set of vertices reachable from s in S:

$$R = \{u \in V \ : \ S \text{ has an } s, u\text{–path}\}.$$



Cuts

Remark

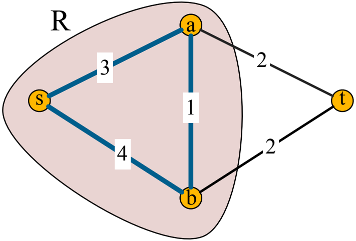
If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

Proof: (by contradiction)

- Suppose S has an edge from every s,t-cut, but S has no s,t-path.
- Let R be the set of vertices reachable from s in S:

$$R = \{u \in V \ : \ S \text{ has an } s,u\text{–path}\}.$$

- $\delta(R)$ is an s,t-cut since $s \in R$ and $t \notin R$.



Cuts

Remark

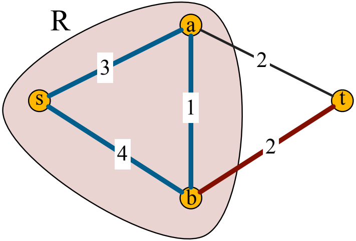
If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

Proof: (by contradiction)

- Suppose S has an edge from every s,t-cut, but S has no s,t-path.
- Let R be the set of vertices reachable from s in S:

  $$R = \{u \in V \ : \ S \text{ has an } s,u\text{–path}\}.$$

- $\delta(R)$ is an s,t-cut since $s \in R$ and $t \notin R$.



- Note: There cannot be an edge $uv \in S$ with $u \in R$ and $v \notin R$.

Cuts

Remark

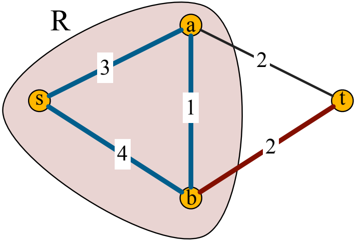
If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

Proof: (by contradiction)

- Suppose S has an edge from every s,t-cut, but S has no s,t-path.
- Let R be the set of vertices reachable from s in S:

  $$R = \{u \in V \ : \ S \text{ has an } s,u\text{−path}\}.$$

- $\delta(R)$ is an s,t-cut since $s \in R$ and $t \notin R$.

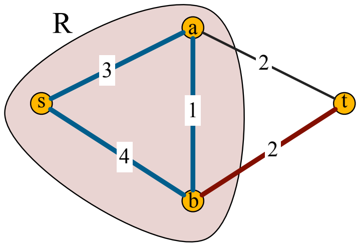


- Note: There cannot be an edge $uv \in S$ with $u \in R$ and $v \notin R$. Otherwise: v should have been in R!

Cuts

Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.



Proof: (by contradiction)

- Suppose S has an edge from every s,t-cut, but S has no s,t-path.
- Let R be the set of vertices reachable from s in S:

  $R = \{u \in V \ : \ S$ has an s,u–path$\}$.

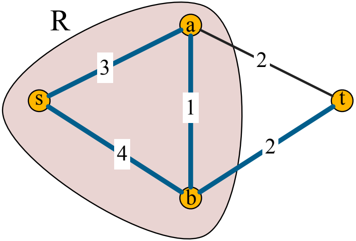
- $\delta(R)$ is an s,t-cut since $s \in R$ and $t \notin R$.

- Note: There cannot be an edge $uv \in S$ with $u \in R$ and $v \notin R$. Otherwise: v should have been in R!

$\longrightarrow \delta(R) \cap S = \emptyset$.
Contradiction!

An IP for Shortest Paths

Variables: We have one binary variable x_e for each edge $e \in E$.



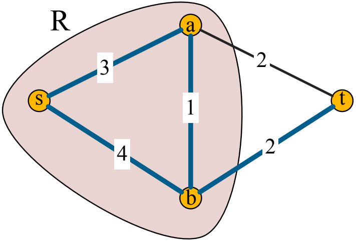
Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s, t-cut, then S contains an s, t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

Variables: We have one binary variable x_e for each edge $e \in E$. We want:

$$x_e = \begin{cases} 1 : e \in P \\ 0 : \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$



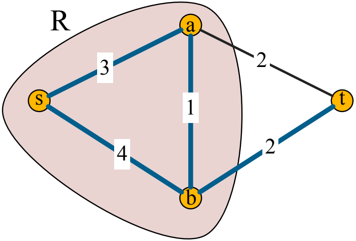
Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

Variables: We have one binary variable x_e for each edge $e \in E$. We want:

$$x_e = \begin{cases} 1 : e \in P \\ 0 : \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$



Constraints: We have one constraint for each s, t-cut $\delta(U)$, forcing P to have an edge from $\delta(S)$.

Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s, t-cut, then S contains an s, t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

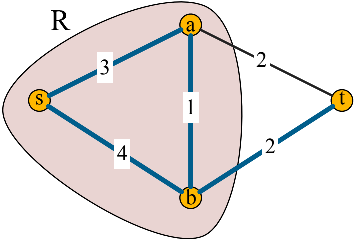
Variables: We have one binary variable x_e for each edge $e \in E$. We want:

$$x_e = \begin{cases} 1 : e \in P \\ 0 : \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Constraints: We have one constraint for each s, t-cut $\delta(U)$, forcing P to have an edge from $\delta(S)$.

$$\sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \qquad (1)$$

for all s, t-cuts $\delta(U)$.



Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s, t-cut, then S contains an s, t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

Variables: We have one binary variable x_e for each edge $e \in E$. We want:

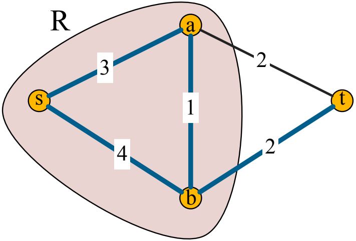
$$x_e = \begin{cases} 1 : e \in P \\ 0 : \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Constraints: We have one constraint for each s,t-cut $\delta(U)$, forcing P to have an edge from $\delta(S)$.

$$\sum (x_e : e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \qquad (1)$$

for all s,t-cuts $\delta(U)$.

Objective: $\sum (c_e x_e : e \in E)$



Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

$$\begin{aligned} \min \ & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t. } & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \ (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E) \end{aligned}$$

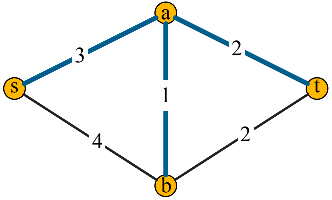
An IP for Shortest Paths

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \;\; (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E) \end{aligned}$$

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} x \geq \mathbb{1}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0} \quad x \text{ integer}$$



An IP for Shortest Paths

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min\ & \sum(c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\
\text{s.t.}\ & \sum(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \ (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\
& x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E)
\end{aligned}
$$

An IP for Shortest Paths

$$\begin{aligned} \min \ & \sum (c_e x_e \ : \ e \in E) \\ \text{s.t. } & \sum (x_e \ : \ e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \ (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E) \end{aligned}$$

Suppose: $c_e > 0$ for all $e \in E$

An IP for Shortest Paths

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & \sum(c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.}\ & \sum(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \ (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E) \end{aligned}$$

Suppose: $c_e > 0$ for all $e \in E$

Then: In an optimal solution, $x_e \leq 1$ for all $e \in E$. Why?

An IP for Shortest Paths

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min\ & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\
\text{s.t.}\ & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \ (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\
& x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E)
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose: $c_e > 0$ for all $e \in E$

Then: In an optimal solution, $x_e \leq 1$ for all $e \in E$. Why?

Suppose $x_e > 1$.

An IP for Shortest Paths

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.}\ & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \ (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E) \end{aligned}$$

Suppose: $c_e > 0$ for all $e \in E$

Then: In an optimal solution, $x_e \leq 1$ for all $e \in E$. Why?

Suppose $x_e > 1$.
Then let $x_e = 1$. This is cheaper and maintains feasibility!

An IP for Shortest Paths

$$\min \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E)$$
$$\text{s.t.} \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \;(U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U)$$
$$x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E)$$

Suppose: $c_e > 0$ for all $e \in E$

Then: In an optimal solution, $x_e \leq 1$ for all $e \in E$. Why?

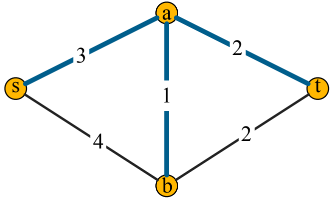
Suppose $x_e > 1$.
Then let $x_e = 1$. This is cheaper and maintains feasibility!

For a binary solution x, define

$$S_x = \{e \in E \,:\, x_e = 1\}.$$

An IP for Shortest Paths

Note: If x is feasible for an IP, then S_x satisfies the remark, but S_x may contain more than just an s,t-path!



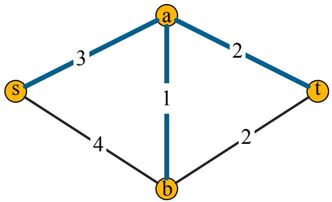
Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

Note: If x is feasible for an IP, then S_x satisfies the remark, but S_x may contain more than just an s,t-path!

E.g., $x_e = 1$ for all blue edges in the figure and $x_e = 0$ otherwise.



Remark

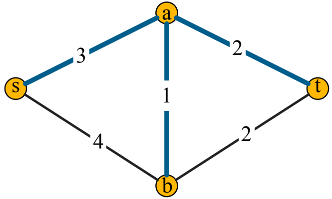
If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

Note: If x is feasible for an IP, then S_x satisfies the remark, but S_x may contain more than just an s,t-path!

E.g., $x_e = 1$ for all blue edges in the figure and $x_e = 0$ otherwise. Then,

$$S_x = \{sa, ab, at\}$$



Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

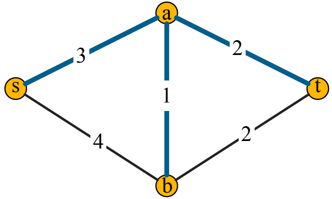
An IP for Shortest Paths

Note: If x is feasible for an IP, then S_x satisfies the remark, but S_x may contain more than just an s,t-path!

E.g., $x_e = 1$ for all blue edges in the figure and $x_e = 0$ otherwise. Then,

$$S_x = \{sa, ab, at\}$$

Note: x cannot be optimal for the IP!



Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

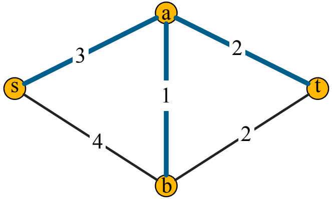
Note: If x is feasible for an IP, then S_x satisfies the remark, but S_x may contain more than just an s,t-path!

E.g., $x_e = 1$ for all blue edges in the figure and $x_e = 0$ otherwise. Then,

$$S_x = \{sa, ab, at\}$$

Note: x cannot be optimal for the IP!

Why?



Remark

If $S \subseteq E$ contains at least one edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

An IP for Shortest Paths

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & \sum(c_e x_e : e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.}\ & \sum(x_e : e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \ (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x_e \geq 0, x_e \text{ integer} \quad (e \in E) \end{aligned}$$

Remark

If x is an optimal solution for the above IP and $c_e > 0$ for all $e \in E$, then S_x contains the edges of a shortest s,t-path.

Recap

- Given $G = (V, E)$ and $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in U, v \notin U\}.$$

Recap

- Given $G = (V, E)$ and $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E \, : \, u \in U, v \notin U\}.$$

- $\delta(U)$ is an s, t-cut if $s \in U$ and $t \notin U$.

Recap

- Given $G = (V, E)$ and $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in U, v \notin U\}.$$

- $\delta(U)$ is an s,t-cut if $s \in U$ and $t \notin U$.
- If $S \subseteq E$ intersects every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$, then S contains an s,t-path.

Recap

- Given $G = (V, E)$ and $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in U, v \notin U\}.$$

- $\delta(U)$ is an s,t-cut if $s \in U$ and $t \notin U$.
- If $S \subseteq E$ intersects every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$, then S contains an s,t-path.
- Feasible solutions to the shortest path LP correspond to edge-sets that intersect every s,t-cut;

Recap

- Given $G = (V, E)$ and $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in U, v \notin U\}.$$

- $\delta(U)$ is an s, t-cut if $s \in U$ and $t \notin U$.
- If $S \subseteq E$ intersects every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$, then S contains an s, t-path.
- Feasible solutions to the shortest path LP correspond to edge-sets that intersect every s, t-cut; optimal solutions are minimal in this respect if $c_e > 0$ for all $e \in E$.

Module 1: Formulations (Nonlinear Models)

So far ...

- Linear programs, and

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

So far ...

- Linear programs, and
- Integer linear programs.

Both have linear/affine constraints.

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \\ & x \text{ integer} \end{aligned}$$

So far ...

- Linear programs, and
- Integer linear programs.

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \\ & x \text{ integer} \end{aligned}$$

Both have linear/affine constraints.

Now: Nonlinear generalization!

Nonlinear Programs

A non-linear program (NLP) is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \le 0 \\ & g_2(x) \le 0 \\ & \dots \\ & g_m(x) \le 0, \end{aligned}$$

Nonlinear Programs

A non-linear program (NLP) is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \leq 0 \\ & g_2(x) \leq 0 \\ & \dots \\ & g_m(x) \leq 0, \end{aligned}$$

where

- $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$,

Nonlinear Programs

A non-linear program (NLP) is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \leq 0 \\ & g_2(x) \leq 0 \\ & \dots \\ & g_m(x) \leq 0, \end{aligned}$$

where

- $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$,
- $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$, and

Nonlinear Programs

A non-linear program (NLP) is of the form

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & f(x) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \leq 0 \\
& g_2(x) \leq 0 \\
& \dots \\
& g_m(x) \leq 0,
\end{aligned}
$$

where

- $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$,
- $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$, and
- $g_i : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$.

Nonlinear Programs

A non-linear program (NLP) is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \leq 0 \\ & g_2(x) \leq 0 \\ & \dots \\ & g_m(x) \leq 0, \end{aligned}$$

where

- $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$,
- $f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$, and
- $g_i : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}$.

Note: Linear programs are NLPs!

Example 1: Finding Close Points in an LP

Finding Close Points in an LP

Problem: we are given an LP (P), and an infeasible point $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x \in P \end{aligned}$$

$$P = \{x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

Finding Close Points in an LP

Problem: we are given an LP (P), and an infeasible point $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x \in P \end{aligned}$$

Goal: find a point $x \in P$ that is as close as possible to $\bar{x}$.

$$P = \{x : Ax \le b\}$$

Finding Close Points in an LP

Problem: we are given an LP (P), and an infeasible point $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x \in P \end{aligned}$$

Goal: find a point $x \in P$ that is as close as possible to $\bar{x}$.

$$P = \{x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

e.g.: find a point $x \in P$ that minimizes the Euclidean distance to $\bar{x}$:

$$\|x - \bar{x}\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - \bar{x}_i)^2}$$

Finding Close Points in an LP

Problem: we are given an LP (P), and an infeasible point $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x \in P \end{aligned}$$

Goal: find a point $x \in P$ that is as close as possible to $\bar{x}$.

$$P = \{x : Ax \le b\}$$

e.g.: find a point $x \in P$ that minimizes the Euclidean distance to $\bar{x}$:

$$\|x - \bar{x}\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - \bar{x}_i)^2}$$

Remark: $\|p\|_2$ is called the L^2-norm of p

Finding Close Points in an LP

Problem: we are given an LP (P), and an infeasible point $\bar{x}$.

Goal: find a point $x \in P$ that is as close as possible to $\bar{x}$.

e.g.: find a point $x \in P$ that minimizes the Euclidean distance to $\bar{x}$:

$$\|x - \bar{x}\|_2 = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - \bar{x}_i)^2}$$

Remark: $\|p\|_2$ is called the L^2-norm of p

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x \in P \end{aligned}$$

$$P = \{x \;:\; Ax \le b\}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \|x - \bar{x}\|_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x \in P \end{aligned}$$

Example 2: Binary IP via NLP

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \le b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j \in \{1,\ldots,n\}) \end{aligned}$$

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

Recall: (binary) IPs are generally hard to solve!

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \le b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j \in \{1,\dots,n\}) \end{aligned}$$

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

Recall: (binary) IPs are generally hard to solve!

Now: can write any binary IP as an NLP!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & c^T x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \leq b \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0} \\
& x_j \in \{0, 1\} \quad (j \in \{1, \dots, n\})
\end{aligned}
$$

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \le b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j \in \{1,\ldots,n\}) \end{aligned}$$

Recall: (binary) IPs are generally hard to solve!

Now: can write any binary IP as an NLP!

Ideas?

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

Recall: (binary) IPs are generally hard to solve!

Now: can write any binary IP as an NLP!

Ideas?

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \leq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \\ & x_j(1 - x_j) = 0 \quad (j \in [n]) \qquad (\star) \end{aligned}$$

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

Recall: (binary) IPs are generally hard to solve!

Now: can write any binary IP as an NLP!

Ideas?

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \le b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \\ & x_j(1 - x_j) = 0 \quad (j \in [n]) \qquad (\star) \end{aligned}$$

Correctness: For $j \in [n]$, $(\star)$ is holds iff $x_j = 0$ or $x_j = 1$.

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

Recall: (binary) IPs are generally hard to solve!

Now: can write any binary IP as an NLP!

Ideas?

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & c^T x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \leq b \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0} \\
& x_j(1 - x_j) = 0 \quad (j \in [n]) \qquad (\star)
\end{aligned}
$$

Correctness: For $j \in [n]$, $(\star)$ is holds iff $x_j = 0$ or $x_j = 1$.

Q: Can you change the NLP to express the fact that x_j is any non-negative integer instead of binary?

NLPs and Binary IPs

Suppose we are given a binary IP (i.e., an integer program all of whose variables are binary).

Recall: (binary) IPs are generally hard to solve!

Now: can write any binary IP as an NLP!

Ideas?

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \le b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \\ & \sin(\pi\, x_j) = 0 \quad (j \in [n]) \qquad (*) \end{aligned}$$

Correctness: For $j \in [n]$, ($\star$) is holds iff $x_j = 0$ or $x_j = 1$.

Q: Can you change the NLP to express the fact that x_j is any non-negative integer instead of binary?

Correctness: note that $\sin(\pi\, x_j) = 0$ only if x_j is an integer.

Example 3: Fermat's Last Theorem

Fermat's Last Theorem

Conjecture [Fermat, 1637]

There are no integers $x, y, z \geq 1$ and $n \geq 3$ such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

Fermat's Last Theorem

Conjecture **[Fermat, 1637]**

There are no integers $x,\ y,\ z \geq 1$ and $n \geq 3$ such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

Arithmeticorum Liber II.

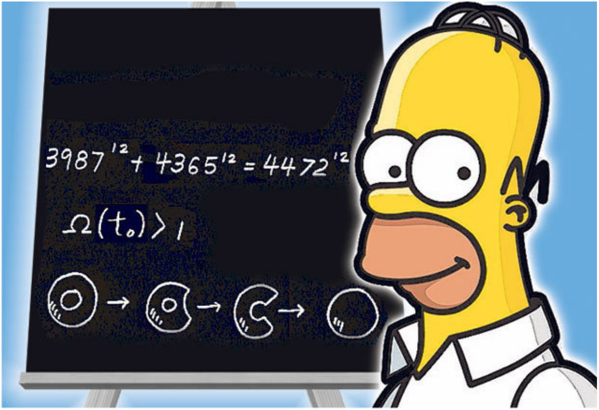
OBSERVATIO DOMINI PETRI DE FERMAT.

Cubum autem in duos cubos, aut quadratoquadratum in duos quadratoquadratos & generaliter nullam in infinitum vltra quadratum potestatem in duos eiusdem nominis fas est diuidere cuius rei demonstrationem mirabilem sane detexi. Hanc marginis exiguitas non caperet.

QVÆSTIO IX.

This is false ...

This is false ...



... doh!

Fermat's Last Theorem

Conjecture **[Fermat, 1637]**

There are no integers x, y, $z \geq 1$ and $n \geq 3$ such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

Fermat’s Last Theorem

Conjecture [Fermat, 1637]

There are no integers $x,\ y,\ z \geq 1$ and $n \geq 3$ such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

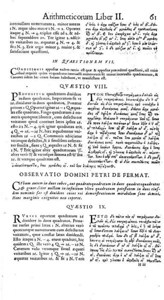
In the margins of a copy of a 1670 article of Diophantus Arithmetica he wrote that he had a proof that was a bit too large to fit.

Conjecture [Fermat, 1637]

There are no integers $x,\ y,\ z \geq 1$ and $n \geq 3$ such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

In the margins of a copy of a 1670 article of Diophantus Arithmetica he wrote that he had a proof that was a bit too large to fit.



Arithmeticorum Liber II. 61

IN QVÆSTIONEM VII.

QVÆSTIO VIII.

OBSERVATIO DOMINI PETRI DE FERMAT.

Cubum autem in duos cubos, aut quadratoquadratum in duos quadratoquadratos & generaliter nullam in infinitum vltra quadratum potestatem in duos eiusdem nominis fas est diuidere cuius rei demonstrationem mirabilem sane detexi. Hanc marginis exiguitas non caperet.

QVÆSTIO IX.

Some 358 years later, Sir Andrew Wiles gave the first accepted proof of the theorem.

Fermat's Last Theorem

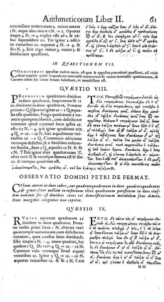
Conjecture [Fermat, 1637]

There are no integers $x, y, z \geq 1$ and $n \geq 3$ such that

$$x^n + y^n = z^n.$$

In the margins of a copy of a 1670 article of Diophantus Arithmetica he wrote that he had a proof that was a bit too large to fit.

Some 358 years later, Sir Andrew Wiles gave the first accepted proof of the theorem. The proof is over 150 pages long!



Arithmeticorum Liber II. 61

IN QVAESTIONEM VII.

QVÆSTIO VIII.

OBSERVATIO DOMINI PETRI DE FERMAT.

Cubum autem in duos cubos, aut quadratoquadratum in duos quadratoquadratos & generaliter nullam in infinitum ultra quadratum potestatem in duos eiusdem nominis fas est diuidere cuius rei demonstrationem mirabilem sane detexi. Hanc marginis exiguitas non caperet.

QVÆSTIO IX.

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\ & + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\ & x_4 \geq 3 \end{aligned}$$

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\
& + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\
& x_4 \geq 3
\end{aligned}$$

- The NLP is trivially feasible, and

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\
& + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \dots 3) \\
& x_4 \geq 3
\end{aligned}
$$

- The NLP is trivially feasible, and
- the value of any feasible solution is non-negative as its objective is the sum of squares.

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\
& + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\
& x_4 \geq 3
\end{aligned}$$

- The NLP is trivially feasible, and
- the value of any feasible solution is non-negative as its objective is the sum of squares.
- In fact, the value of a solution (x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) is 0 iff

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\
& + (\sin \pi \, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi \, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi \, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi \, x_4)^2
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\
& x_4 \geq 3
\end{aligned}
$$

- The NLP is trivially feasible, and
- the value of any feasible solution is non-negative as its objective is the sum of squares.
- In fact, the value of a solution (x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) is 0 iff
  - $x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} = x_3^{x_4}$, and

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\ & + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\ & x_4 \geq 3 \end{aligned}$$

- The NLP is trivially feasible, and
- the value of any feasible solution is non-negative as its objective is the sum of squares.
- In fact, the value of a solution (x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) is 0 iff
  - $x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} = x_3^{x_4}$, and
  - $\sin \pi\, x_i = 0$, for all $i = 1 \ldots 3$.

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\
& + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\
& x_4 \geq 3
\end{aligned}
$$

Remark

Fermat's Last Theorem is true iff the NLP has optimal value greater than 0.

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\ & + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\ & x_4 \geq 3 \end{aligned}$$

Remark

Fermat's Last Theorem is true iff the NLP has optimal value greater than 0.

Note: well known that there is an infinite sequence of feasible solutions whose objective value converges to 0!

NLP for Fermat's Last Theorem

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (x_1^{x_4} + x_2^{x_4} - x_3^{x_4})^2 \\ & + (\sin \pi\, x_1)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_2)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_3)^2 + (\sin \pi\, x_4)^2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & x_i \geq 1 \quad (i = 1 \ldots 3) \\ & x_4 \geq 3 \end{aligned}$$

Remark

Fermat's Last Theorem is true iff the NLP has optimal value greater than 0.

Note: well known that there is an infinite sequence of feasible solutions whose objective value converges to 0!

Proving Fermat's Last Theorem amounts to showing that the value 0 can not be attained!

Recap

- Non-linear programs are of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \leq 0 \\ & g_2(x) \leq 0 \\ & \dots \\ & g_m(x) \leq 0, \end{aligned}$$

  where $f, g_1, \dots, g_m$ are non-linear functions.

Recap

- Non-linear programs are of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \leq 0 \\ & g_2(x) \leq 0 \\ & \dots \\ & g_m(x) \leq 0, \end{aligned}$$

  where $f, g_1, \dots, g_m$ are non-linear functions.

- Non-linear programs are strictly more general than integer programs, and thus likely difficult to solve.

Recap

- Non-linear programs are of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & g_1(x) \le 0 \\ & g_2(x) \le 0 \\ & \dots \\ & g_m(x) \le 0, \end{aligned}$$

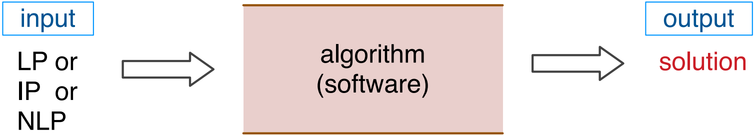
  where $f, g_1, \dots, g_m$ are non-linear functions.

- Non-linear programs are strictly more general than integer programs, and thus likely difficult to solve.

- Some famous questions in Math can easily be reduced to solving certain NLPs

Module 2: Linear programs (Possible outcomes)

What does solving an optimization problem mean?



What does solving an optimization problem mean?

input		algorithm (software)		output
LP or IP or NLP	$\Rightarrow$		$\Rightarrow$	solution

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & 2x_1 - 3x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_1 + x_2 \le 1 \\
& x_1, x_2 \ge 0
\end{array}
$$

What does solving an optimization problem mean?

input

LP or
IP or
NLP

algorithm
(software)

output

solution

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & 2x_1 - 3x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_1 + x_2 \leq 1 \\
& x_1, x_2 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

$x_1 = 1,$
$x_2 = 0$

Optimal
Solution

What does solving an optimization problem mean?

input

LP or
IP or
NLP

algorithm
(software)

output

solution

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & 2x_1 - 3x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 + x_2 \leq 1 \\ & x_1, x_2 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$$x_1 = 1, \quad x_2 = 0$$

Optimal Solution

Remark

Sometimes the answer is not so straightforward!!!

Definition

An assignment of values to each of the variables is a feasible solution if all the constraints are satisfied.

Definition

An assignment of values to each of the variables is a feasible solution if all the constraints are satisfied.

Definition

An optimization problem is feasible if it has at least one feasible solution. It is infeasible otherwise.

Definition

An assignment of values to each of the variables is a feasible solution if all the constraints are satisfied.

Definition

An optimization problem is feasible if it has at least one feasible solution. It is infeasible otherwise.

$$\max \quad x_1 - x_2$$

s.t.

$$\begin{array}{rcrcr} 4x_1 & + & x_2 & \geq & 2 \\ 2x_1 & - & 3x_2 & \leq & 4 \end{array}$$

$$x_1,\ x_2 \geq 0$$

Definition

An assignment of values to each of the variables is a feasible solution if all the constraints are satisfied.

Definition

An optimization problem is feasible if it has at least one feasible solution. It is infeasible otherwise.

$$
\boxed{
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & x_1 - x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{array}{rcrcr} 4x_1 & + & x_2 & \geq & 2 \\ 2x_1 & - & 3x_2 & \leq & 4 \end{array} \\
& x_1,\ x_2 \geq 0
\end{array}
}
$$

$$x_1 = 1$$

$$x_2 = 3$$

Definition

An assignment of values to each of the variables is a feasible solution if all the constraints are satisfied.

Definition

An optimization problem is feasible if it has at least one feasible solution. It is infeasible otherwise.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & x_1 - x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{array}{rcrcr} 4x_1 & + & x_2 & \geq & 2 \\ 2x_1 & - & 3x_2 & \leq & 4 \end{array} \\
& x_1,\ x_2 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

$x_1 = 1$

$x_2 = 3$

Feasible solution

$\Downarrow$

Problem is feasible

Definition

An assignment of values to each of the variables is a feasible solution if all the constraints are satisfied.

Definition

An optimization problem is feasible if it has at least one feasible solution. It is infeasible otherwise.

$$\max \quad x_1 - x_2$$

s.t.

$$\begin{array}{rcrcr} 4x_1 & + & x_2 & \geq & 2 \\ 2x_1 & - & 3x_2 & \leq & 4 \end{array}$$

$$x_1,\ x_2 \geq 0$$

$x_1 = 3$

$x_2 = 0$

NOT
feasible solution

But problem is
feasible.

Definition

- For a maximization problem, an optimal solution is a feasible solution that maximizes the objective function.

Definition

- For a maximization problem, an optimal solution is a feasible solution that maximizes the objective function.
- For a minimization problem, an optimal solution is a feasible solution that minimizes the objective function.

Definition

- For a maximization problem, an optimal solution is a feasible solution that maximizes the objective function.
- For a minimization problem, an optimal solution is a feasible solution that minimizes the objective function.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 \leq 1 \\ & x_2 \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

$x_1 = 1, x_2 = \alpha$ optimal for all $\alpha \geq 1$.

Definition

- For a maximization problem, an optimal solution is a feasible solution that maximizes the objective function.
- For a minimization problem, an optimal solution is a feasible solution that minimizes the objective function.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 \leq 1 \\ & x_2 \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

$x_1 = 1, x_2 = \alpha$ optimal for all $\alpha \geq 1$.

Remark

An optimization problem can have several optimal solutions.

Question

Does the following linear program have an optimal solution?

$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\max & x_1 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& x_1 & \geq & 2 \\
& x_1 & \leq & 1
\end{array}
$$

Question

Does the following linear program have an optimal solution?

$$
\boxed{
\begin{array}{lll}
\max & x_1 & \\
\text{s.t.} & & \\
& x_1 & \geq & 2 \\
& x_1 & \leq & 1
\end{array}
}
$$

Infeasible problem, so no optimal solution

Question

Does the following linear program have an optimal solution?

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{llll} \max & x_1 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & x_1 & \geq & 2 \\ & x_1 & \leq & 1 \end{array}}$$

Infeasible problem, so no optimal solution

Question

Does every feasible optimization problem have an optimal solution?

Question

Does the following linear program have an optimal solution?

$$\begin{array}{lrcl} \max & x_1 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & x_1 & \geq & 2 \\ & x_1 & \leq & 1 \end{array}$$

Infeasible problem, so no optimal solution

Question

Does every feasible optimization problem have an optimal solution? NO

$$\begin{array}{lr} \max & x_1 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 \geq 1 \end{array}$$

Question

Does the following linear program have an optimal solution?

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcl} \max & x_1 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & x_1 & \geq & 2 \\ & x_1 & \leq & 1 \end{array}}$$

Infeasible problem, so
no optimal solution

Question

Does every feasible optimization problem have an optimal solution? NO

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

Feasible ($x_1 = 1$),
but still no optimal solution!!!

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.
- A minimization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value smaller than M.

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.
- A minimization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value smaller than M.

$\Longrightarrow$

We have seen three possible outcomes for an optimization problem:

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.
- A minimization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value smaller than M.

We have seen three possible outcomes for an optimization problem:

- It has an optimal solution

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.
- A minimization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value smaller than M.

We have seen three possible outcomes for an optimization problem:

- It has an optimal solution
- It is infeasible

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.
- A minimization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value smaller than M.

We have seen three possible outcomes for an optimization problem:

- It has an optimal solution
- It is infeasible
- It is unbounded

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.
- A minimization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value smaller than M.

We have seen three possible outcomes for an optimization problem:

- It has an optimal solution
- It is infeasible
- It is unbounded

Question

Can anything else happen?

Definition

- A maximization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value greater than M.
- A minimization problem is unbounded if for every value M there exists a feasible solution with objective value smaller than M.

We have seen three possible outcomes for an optimization problem:

- It has an optimal solution
- It is infeasible
- It is unbounded

Question

Can anything else happen? YES

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction x is optimal solution.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction x is optimal solution. Let

$$x' := \frac{x+1}{2}.$$

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction x is optimal solution. Let

$$x' := \frac{x+1}{2}.$$

Then $x' < 1$ feasible.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction x is optimal solution. Let

$$x' := \frac{x+1}{2}.$$

Then $x' < 1$ feasible. Moreover, $x' > x$.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction x is optimal solution. Let

$$x' := \frac{x+1}{2}.$$

Then $x' < 1$ feasible. Moreover, $x' > x$.

Thus x not optimal, contradiction.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction x is optimal solution. Let

$$x' := \frac{x+1}{2}.$$

Then $x' < 1$ feasible. Moreover, $x' > x$.

Thus x not optimal, contradiction.

Question

Any other example without strict inequalities?

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x < 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 0$.
- Not unbounded: 1 is an upper bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction x is optimal solution. Let

$$x' := \frac{x+1}{2}.$$

Then $x' < 1$ feasible. Moreover, $x' > x$.

Thus x not optimal, contradiction.

Question

Any other example without strict inequalities? YES

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 1$.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 1$.
- Not unbounded: 0 is a lower bound.

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 1$.
- Not unbounded: 0 is a lower bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Consider,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

- Feasible: set $x = 1$.
- Not unbounded: 0 is a lower bound.
- But no optimal solution!

Exercise

Check this optimization problem has no optimal solution.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & x < 1 \end{aligned}}$$

Not a linear program

Strict inequality

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

Not a linear program

Objective function non-linear

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

Not a linear program

Objective function non-linear

Remark

Linear programs are nicer than general optimization problems.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \frac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{aligned}}$$

Not a linear program
Objective function non-linear

Remark

Linear programs are nicer than general optimization problems.

Fundamental theorem of linear programming

For any linear program one of the following holds:

- It has an optimal solution
- It is infeasible
- It is unbounded

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \frac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{aligned}}$$

Not a linear program
Objective function non-linear

Remark

Linear programs are nicer than general optimization problems.

Fundamental theorem of linear programming

For any linear program exactly one of the following holds:

- It has an optimal solution
- It is infeasible
- It is unbounded

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & \dfrac{1}{x} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \geq 1 \end{array}}$$

Not a linear program
Objective function non-linear

Remark

Linear programs are nicer than general optimization problems.

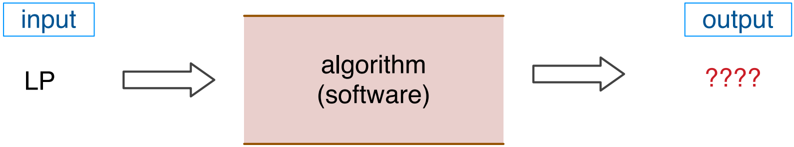
Fundamental theorem of linear programming

For any linear program exactly one of the following holds:

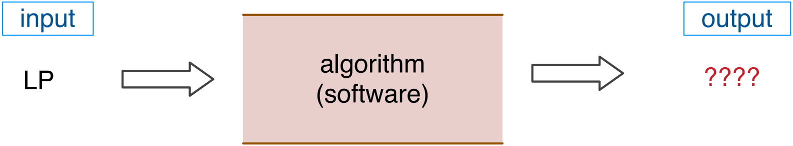
- It has an optimal solution
- It is infeasible
- It is unbounded

We will prove it later in the course.

We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,

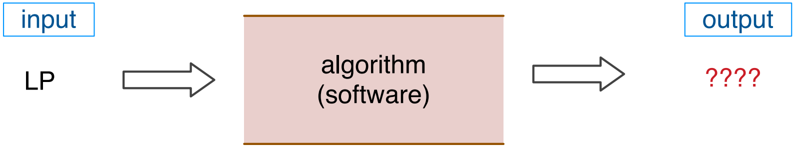


We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,



LP has an optimal solution

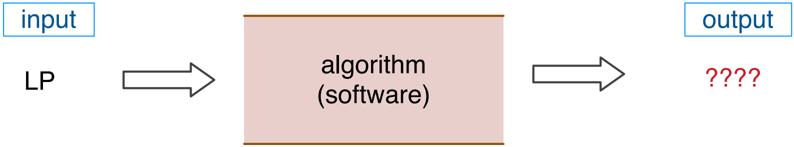
We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,



$\boxed{\text{LP has an optimal solution}}$

Return an optimal solution $\bar{x}$

We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,

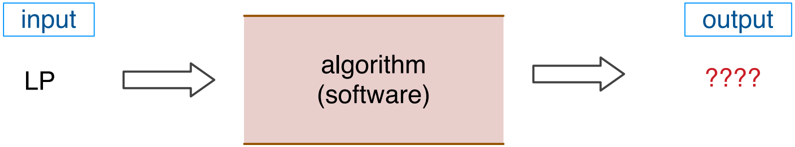


LP has an optimal solution

Return an optimal solution $\bar{x}$

LP is infeasible.

We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,



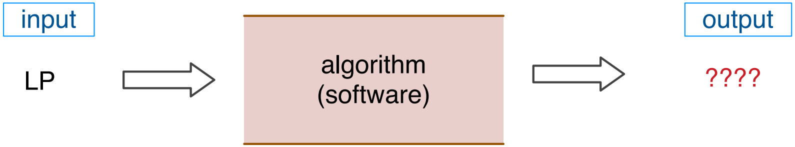
LP has an optimal solution

Return an optimal solution $\bar{x}$

LP is infeasible.

Say the LP is infeasible

We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,



$\boxed{\text{LP has an optimal solution}}$

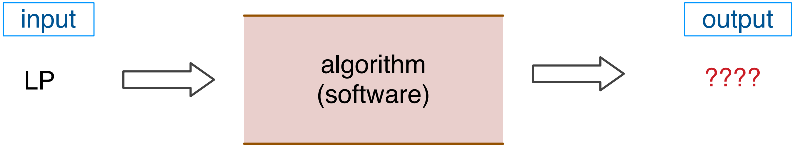
Return an optimal solution $\bar{x}$

$\boxed{\text{LP is infeasible.}}$

Say the LP is infeasible

$\boxed{\text{LP is unbounded.}}$

We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,



$\boxed{\text{LP has an optimal solution}}$

Return an optimal solution $\bar{x}$

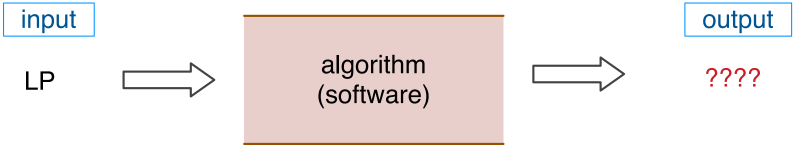
$\boxed{\text{LP is infeasible.}}$

Say the LP is infeasible

$\boxed{\text{LP is unbounded.}}$

Say the LP is unbounded

We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,



$\boxed{\text{LP has an optimal solution}}$

Return an optimal solution $\bar{x}$

$\boxed{\text{LP is infeasible.}}$

Say the LP is infeasible

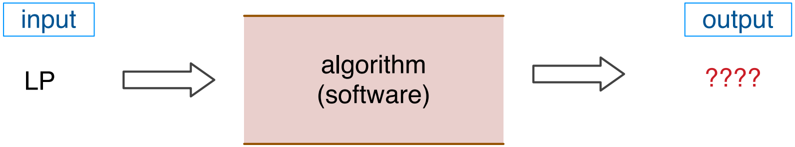
$\boxed{\text{LP is unbounded.}}$

Say the LP is unbounded

Remark

Algorithms should justify their answers !!!

We can now describe what we mean by solving a linear program,



$\boxed{\text{LP has an optimal solution}}$

Return an optimal solution $\bar{x}$ + proof that $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

$\boxed{\text{LP is infeasible.}}$

Return a proof the LP is infeasible.

$\boxed{\text{LP is unbounded.}}$

Return a proof the LP is unbounded.

Remark

Algorithms always need to justify their answers !!!

Recap

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) have an optimal solution.

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) have an optimal solution.

2. There are optimization where none of (A), (B), (C) hold,

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) have an optimal solution.

2. There are optimization where none of (A), (B), (C) hold,

3. For LPs exactly one of (A), (B), (C) holds,

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) have an optimal solution.

2. There are optimization where none of (A), (B), (C) hold,

3. For LPs exactly one of (A), (B), (C) holds,

4. By solving an LP we mean

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) have an optimal solution.

2. There are optimization where none of (A), (B), (C) hold,

3. For LPs exactly one of (A), (B), (C) holds,

4. By solving an LP we mean
   - indicating which of (A), (B), (C) holds,

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) have an optimal solution.

2. There are optimization where none of (A), (B), (C) hold,

3. For LPs exactly one of (A), (B), (C) holds,

4. By solving an LP we mean
   - indicating which of (A), (B), (C) holds,
   - if (C) holds give an optimal solution,

Recap

1. Optimization problems can be:
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) have an optimal solution.

2. There are optimization where none of (A), (B), (C) hold,

3. For LPs exactly one of (A), (B), (C) holds,

4. By solving an LP we mean
   - indicating which of (A), (B), (C) holds,
   - if (C) holds give an optimal solution,
   - give a proof the answer is correct.

Module 2: Linear Programs (Certificates)

Recap and a Question

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

For any linear program, exactly one of the following holds:

- It is infeasible.
- It has an optimal solution.
- It is unbounded.

Recap and a Question

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

For any linear program, exactly one of the following holds:

- It is infeasible.
- It has an optimal solution.
- It is unbounded.

Questions

Consider a linear program.

Recap and a Question

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

For any linear program, exactly one of the following holds:

- It is infeasible.
- It has an optimal solution.
- It is unbounded.

Questions

Consider a linear program.

- If it is infeasible, how can we prove it?

Recap and a Question

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

For any linear program, exactly one of the following holds:

- It is infeasible.
- It has an optimal solution.
- It is unbounded.

Questions

Consider a linear program.

- If it is infeasible, how can we prove it?
- If we have an optimal solution, how can we prove it is optimal?

Recap and a Question

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

For any linear program, exactly one of the following holds:

- It is infeasible.
- It has an optimal solution.
- It is unbounded.

Questions

Consider a linear program.

- If it is infeasible, how can we prove it?
- If we have an optimal solution, how can we prove it is optimal?
- If it is unbounded, how can we prove it?

Recap and a Question

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

For any linear program, exactly one of the following holds:

- It is infeasible.
- It has an optimal solution.
- It is unbounded.

Questions

Consider a linear program.

- If it is infeasible, how can we prove it?
- If we have an optimal solution, how can we prove it is optimal?
- If it is unbounded, how can we prove it?

This can be always be done!

Proving Infeasibility

Proving Infeasibility

The following linear program is infeasible:

$$\max \quad (3, 4, -1, 2)^T x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Proving Infeasibility

The following linear program is infeasible:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (3,4,-1,2)^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Question

How can we prove this problem is, in fact, infeasible?

Proving Infeasibility

The following linear program is infeasible:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (3,4,-1,2)^T x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Question

How can we prove this problem is, in fact, infeasible?

We cannot try all possible assignments of values to x_1, x_2, x_3, and x_4.

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrrrrrrrr} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 & 2 & 6 & -7)x & = & -6 & \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 & -2 & -4 & 8)x & = & 4 & \\ \hline & & (1 & 0 & 2 & 1)x & = & -2 & (\star) \end{array}$$

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrrrrrrrl} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 & 2 & 6 & -7)x & = & -6 & \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 & -2 & -4 & 8)x & = & 4 & \\ \hline & & (1 & 0 & 2 & 1)x & = & -2 & \quad (\star) \end{array}$$

Suppose there exists $\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}$ satisfying (1), (2).

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrcrrrrcr} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 & 2 & 6 & -7)x & = & -6 \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 & -2 & -4 & 8)x & = & 4 \\ \hline & & (1 & 0 & 2 & 1)x & = & -2 & \quad (\star) \end{array}$$

Suppose there exists $\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}$ satisfying (1), (2). Then $\bar{x}$ satisfies $(\star)$:

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrcrrrrcr} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 & 2 & 6 & -7)x & = & -6 & \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 & -2 & -4 & 8)x & = & 4 & \\ \hline & & (1 & 0 & 2 & 1)x & = & -2 & \quad (\star) \end{array}$$

Suppose there exists $\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}$ satisfying (1), (2). Then $\bar{x}$ satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \bar{x} = -2.$$

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrcrrrrcr} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 & 2 & 6 & -7)x & = & -6 & \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 & -2 & -4 & 8)x & = & 4 & \\ \hline & & (1 & 0 & 2 & 1)x & = & -2 & \quad (\star) \end{array}$$

Suppose there exists $\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}$ satisfying (1), (2). Then $\bar{x}$ satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = -2.$$

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrrrrrrrl} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 & 2 & 6 & -7)x & = & -6 & \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 & -2 & -4 & 8)x & = & 4 & \\ \hline & & (1 & 0 & 2 & 1)x & = & -2 & \quad (\star) \end{array}$$

Suppose there exists $\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}$ satisfying (1), (2). Then $\bar{x}$ satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \bar{x}}_{\geq 0} = -2.$$

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrl} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 \quad 2 \quad 6 \quad -7)x = -6 \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 \quad -2 \quad -4 \quad 8)x = 4 \\ \hline & & (1 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 1)x = -2 \qquad (\star) \end{array}$$

Suppose there exists $\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}$ satisfying (1), (2). Then $\bar{x}$ satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \bar{x}}_{\geq 0} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}.$$

Claim

There is no solution to (1), (2) and $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ where

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

Proof

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{array}{rrcrrrrcr} & -1 \times (1): & (-3 & 2 & 6 & -7)x & = & -6 & \\ + & 2 \times (2): & (4 & -2 & -4 & 8)x & = & 4 & \\ \hline & & (1 & 0 & 2 & 1)x & = & -2 & \quad (\star) \end{array}$$

Suppose there exists $\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}$ satisfying (1), (2). Then $\bar{x}$ satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \bar{x}}_{\geq 0} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}.$$

Contradiction!

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Construct a new equation:

$$(-1 \;\; 2) \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = (-1 \;\; 2) \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(1 \;\; 0 \;\; 2 \;\; 1) x = -2 \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Construct a new equation:

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = -2 \qquad (\star)$$

Since $\bar{x}$ satisfies the equations it satisfies $(\star)$:

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Construct a new equation:

$$(-1 \;\; 2) \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = (-1 \;\; 2) \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(1 \;\; 0 \;\; 2 \;\; 1)x = -2 \qquad (\star)$$

Since $\bar{x}$ satisfies the equations it satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}.$$

Contradiction.

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Construct a new equation:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = -2 \qquad (\star)$$

Since $\bar{x}$ satisfies the equations it satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}.$$

Contradiction.

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \qquad\qquad Ax = b$$

Construct a new equation:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = -2 \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

Since $\bar{x}$ satisfies the equations it satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}.$$

Contradiction.

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \qquad Ax = b$$

Construct a new equation:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = -2 \qquad (\star) \qquad y^T A x = y^T b$$

Since $\bar{x}$ satisfies the equations it satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}.$$

Contradiction.

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \qquad Ax = b$$

Construct a new equation:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = -2 \qquad (\star) \qquad y^T Ax = y^T b$$

Since $\bar{x}$ satisfies the equations it satisfies ($\star$):

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}. \qquad \underbrace{y^T A}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{y^T b}_{<0}$$

Contradiction.

Repeat using matrix formulations.

Proof

Suppose for a contradiction there is a solution $\bar{x}$ to $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ and

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \qquad Ax = b$$

Construct a new equation:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & -6 & 7 \\ 2 & -1 & -2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{y^T} \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = -2 \qquad (\star) \qquad y^T A x = y^T b$$

Since $\bar{x}$ satisfies the equations it satisfies $(\star)$:

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{-2}_{<0}. \qquad \underbrace{y^T A}_{\geq \mathbb{0}^\top} \underbrace{\bar{x}}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} = \underbrace{y^T b}_{<0}$$

Contradiction.

This suggests the following result...

Proposition

There is no solution to $Ax = b,\ x \geq \mathbb{0}$, if there exists y where

$$y^T A \geq \mathbb{0}^\top \qquad \text{and} \qquad y^T b < 0.$$

Proposition

There is no solution to $Ax = b,\ x \geq \mathbb{0}$, if there exists y where

$$y^T A \geq \mathbb{0}^\top \qquad \text{and} \qquad y^T b < 0.$$

Exercise

Give a proof of this proposition.

Proposition

There is no solution to $Ax = b,\ x \geq \mathbb{0}$, if there exists y where

$$y^T A \geq \mathbb{0}^\top \qquad \text{and} \qquad y^T b < 0.$$

Exercise

Give a proof of this proposition.

Question

If no solution to $Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}$ can we always prove it in that way?

Proposition

There is no solution to $Ax = b,\ x \geq \mathbb{0}$, if there exists y where

$$y^T A \geq \mathbb{0}^\top \qquad \text{and} \qquad y^T b < 0.$$

Exercise

Give a proof of this proposition.

Question

If no solution to $Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}$ can we always prove it in that way?

YES!!!!!

Proposition

There is no solution to $Ax = b,\ x \geq \mathbb{0}$, if there exists y where

$$y^T A \geq \mathbb{0}^\top \qquad \text{and} \qquad y^T b < 0.$$

Exercise

Give a proof of this proposition.

Question

If no solution to $Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}$ can we always prove it in that way?

YES!!!!!

Farkas' Lemma

If there is no solution to $Ax = b,\ x \geq \mathbb{0}$, then there exists y where

$$y^T A \geq \mathbb{0}^\top \qquad \text{and} \qquad y^T b < 0.$$

Proving Optimality

$$\max \quad z(x) := (-1 \; -4 \;\; 0 \;\; 0)x + 4$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Proving Optimality

$$\max \quad z(x) := (-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x + 4$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$

$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$

$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$

$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Proving Optimality

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & z(x) := (-1 \; -4 \;\; 0 \;\; 0)x + 4 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Question

How can we prove this solution is, in fact, optimal?

Proving Optimality

$$\max \quad z(x) := (-1 - 4 \;\; 0 \;\; 0)x + 4$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Question

How can we prove this solution is, in fact, optimal?

We cannot try all possible feasible solutions.

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \max & z(x) := (-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x + 4 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Optimal solution:

$\bar{x}_1 = 0$

$\bar{x}_2 = 0$

$\bar{x}_3 = 4$

$\bar{x}_4 = 5$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z(x) := (-1 - 4 \;\; 0 \;\; 0)x + 4 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Optimal solution:

$\bar{x}_1 = 0$

$\bar{x}_2 = 0$

$\bar{x}_3 = 4$

$\bar{x}_4 = 5$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4. (easy)

$$\max \quad z(x) := (-1 - 4 \;\; 0 \;\; 0)x + 4$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4. (easy)
- 4 is an upper bound.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z(x) := (-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x + 4 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4. (easy)
- 4 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x' be an arbitrary feasible solution.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z(x) := (-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x + 4 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{array}
$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4. (easy)
- 4 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x' be an arbitrary feasible solution. Then

$$z(x') = (-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x' + 4$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z(x) := (-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x + 4 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4. (easy)
- 4 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x' be an arbitrary feasible solution. Then

$$z(x') = \underbrace{(-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)}_{\leq \mathbb{0}} \underbrace{x'}_{\geq \mathbb{0}} + 4$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & z(x) := (-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x + 4 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4. (easy)
- 4 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x' be an arbitrary feasible solution. Then

$$z(x') = \underbrace{(-1\ -4\ \ 0\ \ 0)x'}_{\leq 0} + 4$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & z(x) := (-1 \; -4 \;\; 0 \;\; 0)x + 4 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Optimal solution:

$$\bar{x}_1 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_2 = 0$$
$$\bar{x}_3 = 4$$
$$\bar{x}_4 = 5$$

Claim

- $\bar{x}$ is feasible solution of value 4. (easy)
- 4 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x' be an arbitrary feasible solution. Then

$$z(x') = \underbrace{(-1 \; -4 \;\; 0 \;\; 0)x'}_{\leq 0} + 4 \leq 4.$$

Proving Unboudedness

$$\max \quad z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Proving Unboudedness

$$\max \quad z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Problem
is unbounded

Question

How can we prove that this problem is unbounded?

Proving Unboudedness

$$\max \quad z := (-1 \ \ 0 \ \ 0 \ \ 1)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Problem
is unbounded

Question

How can we prove that this problem is unbounded?

Idea

Construct a family of feasible solutions $x(t)$ for all $t \geq 0$ and show that as t goes to infinity, the value of the objective function goes to infinity.

$$\max \quad z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z := (-1\ \ 0\ \ 0\ \ 1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

$$x(t) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

$$x(t) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z := \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}
$$

$$
x(t) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}
$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Claim 2

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z := (-1\ \ 0\ \ 0\ \ 1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof

$$x(t) = \bar{x} + tr \geq \mathbb{0} \quad \text{for all} \quad t \geq 0$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z := (-1\ \ 0\ \ 0\ \ 1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof

$$x(t) = \bar{x} + tr \geq \mathbb{0} \quad \text{for all} \quad t \geq 0 \quad \text{as} \quad \bar{x}, r \geq \mathbb{0}.$$

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{array}}
$$

$$
x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}
$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof

$$x(t) = \bar{x} + tr \geq \mathbb{0} \quad \text{for all} \quad t \geq 0 \quad \text{as} \quad \bar{x}, r \geq \mathbb{0}.$$

$$Ax(t) =$$

$$\max \quad z := (-1\ \ 0\ \ 0\ \ 1)x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof

$$x(t) = \bar{x} + tr \geq \mathbb{0} \quad \text{for all} \quad t \geq 0 \quad \text{as} \quad \bar{x}, r \geq \mathbb{0}.$$

$$Ax(t) = A\left[\bar{x} + tr\right] =$$

$$\max \quad z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof

$$x(t) = \bar{x} + tr \geq \mathbb{0} \quad \text{for all} \quad t \geq 0 \quad \text{as} \quad \bar{x}, r \geq \mathbb{0}.$$

$$Ax(t) = A\,[\bar{x} + tr] = \underbrace{A\bar{x}}_{b} + t \underbrace{Ar}_{\mathbb{0}} =$$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z := (-1 \;\; 0 \;\; 0 \;\; 1)x \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{array}
$$

$$
x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}
$$

Claim 1

$x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof

$$
x(t) = \bar{x} + tr \geq \mathbb{0} \quad \text{for all} \quad t \geq 0 \quad \text{as} \quad \bar{x}, r \geq \mathbb{0}.
$$

$$
Ax(t) = A\,[\bar{x} + tr] = \underbrace{A\bar{x}}_{b} + t \underbrace{Ar}_{\mathbb{0}} = b.
$$

$$\max \quad z := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^T} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 2

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$.

$$\max \quad z := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{c^T} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1 & -1 & 1 & 0\\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\ 1\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\2\\1\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\1\\2\end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 2

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$.

Proof

$$z = c^T x(t)$$

$$\max \quad z := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^T} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 2

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$.

Proof

$$z = c^T x(t) = c^T [\bar{x} + tr]$$

$$\max \quad z := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^T} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$x(t) := \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{r}$$

Claim 2

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$.

Proof

$$z = c^T x(t) = c^T[\bar{x} + tr] = c^T \bar{x} + t \underbrace{c^T r}_{=1>0} .$$

Exercise

Generalize and prove the following proposition.

Exercise

Generalize and prove the following proposition.

Proposition

The linear program,

$$\max\{c^T x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\}$$

is unbounded if we can find $\bar{x}$ and r such that

$$\bar{x} \geq \mathbb{0}, \quad r \geq \mathbb{0}, \quad A\bar{x} = b, \quad Ar = \mathbb{0} \quad \text{and} \quad c^T r > 0.$$

Recap

1. For linear programs, exactly one of the following holds. It is
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) has an optimal solution.

Recap

1. For linear programs, exactly one of the following holds. It is
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) has an optimal solution.

2. If (A) occurs, there is a short proof of that fact.

Recap

1. For linear programs, exactly one of the following holds. It is
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) has an optimal solution.

2. If (A) occurs, there is a short proof of that fact.

3. If (B) occurs, there is a short proof of that fact.

Recap

1. For linear programs, exactly one of the following holds. It is
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) has an optimal solution.

2. If (A) occurs, there is a short proof of that fact.

3. If (B) occurs, there is a short proof of that fact.

4. For an optimal solution, there is a short proof that it is optimal.

Recap

1. For linear programs, exactly one of the following holds. It is
   (A) infeasible,
   (B) unbounded, or
   (C) has an optimal solution.

2. If (A) occurs, there is a short proof of that fact.

3. If (B) occurs, there is a short proof of that fact.

4. For an optimal solution, there is a short proof that it is optimal.

Remark

We have not yet shown you how to find such proofs.

Module 2: Linear Programs (Standard Equality Forms)

The Key Definition

The Key Definition

Definition

A Linear Program (LP) is in Standard Equality Form (SEF) if

The Key Definition

Definition

A Linear Program (LP) is in Standard Equality Form (SEF) if

1. it is a maximization problem,

The Key Definition

Definition

A Linear Program (LP) is in Standard Equality Form (SEF) if

1. it is a maximization problem,
2. for every variable x_j we have the constraint $x_j \geq 0$, and

The Key Definition

Definition

A Linear Program (LP) is in Standard Equality Form (SEF) if

1. it is a maximization problem,
2. for every variable x_j we have the constraint $x_j \geq 0$, and
3. all other constraints are equality constraints.

The Key Definition

Definition

A Linear Program (LP) is in Standard Equality Form (SEF) if

1. it is a maximization problem,
2. for every variable x_j we have the constraint $x_j \geq 0$, and
3. all other constraints are equality constraints.

$$\max \quad (1,-2,4,-4,0,0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 & -3 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 & -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4, x_5, x_6 \geq 0$$

Question

Is the following LP in SEF?

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & x_1 + x_2 + 17 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_1 - x_2 = 0 \\
& x_1 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

Question

Is the following LP in SEF?

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 + x_2 + 17 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 - x_2 = 0 \\ & x_1 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

NO! There is no constraint $x_2 \geq 0$.

Question

Is the following LP in SEF?

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 + x_2 + 17 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 - x_2 = 0 \\ & x_1 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

NO! There is no constraint $x_2 \geq 0$. We say x_2 is free.

Question

Is the following LP in SEF?

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 + x_2 + 17 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 - x_2 = 0 \\ & x_1 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

NO! There is no constraint $x_2 \geq 0$. We say x_2 is free.

Remarks

- $x_2 \geq 0$ is implied by the constraints.
- x_2 is still free since $x_2 \geq 0$ is not given explicitly.

Motivation

Motivation

We will develop an algorithm called the Simplex that can solve any LP

as long as it is in Standard Equality Form (SEF)

Motivation

We will develop an algorithm called the Simplex that can solve any LP

as long as it is in Standard Equality Form (SEF)

Question

What do we do if the LP is not in SEF?

Motivation

We will develop an algorithm called the Simplex that can solve any LP

as long as it is in Standard Equality Form (SEF)

Question

What do we do if the LP is not in SEF?

Idea

1. Find an "equivalent" LP in SEF.

Motivation

We will develop an algorithm called the Simplex that can solve any LP

as long as it is in Standard Equality Form (SEF)

Question

What do we do if the LP is not in SEF?

Idea

1. Find an "equivalent" LP in SEF.
2. Solve the "equivalent" LP using Simplex.

Motivation

We will develop an algorithm called the Simplex that can solve any LP

as long as it is in Standard Equality Form (SEF)

Question

What do we do if the LP is not in SEF?

Idea

1. Find an "equivalent" LP in SEF.
2. Solve the "equivalent" LP using Simplex.
3. Use the sol'n of "equivalent" LP to get the sol'n of the original LP.

Motivation

We will develop an algorithm called the Simplex that can solve any LP

as long as it is in Standard Equality Form (SEF)

Question

What do we do if the LP is not in SEF?

Idea

1. Find an "equivalent" LP in SEF.
2. Solve the "equivalent" LP using Simplex.
3. Use the sol'n of "equivalent" LP to get the sol'n of the original LP.

Question

What do we mean by equivalent?

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Definition

Linear programs (P) and (Q) are equivalent if

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Definition

Linear programs (P) and (Q) are equivalent if

- (P) infeasible $\iff$ (Q) infeasible,

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Definition

Linear programs (P) and (Q) are equivalent if

- (P) infeasible $\iff$ (Q) infeasible,
- (P) unbounded $\iff$ (Q) unbounded,

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Definition

Linear programs (P) and (Q) are equivalent if

- (P) infeasible $\iff$ (Q) infeasible,
- (P) unbounded $\iff$ (Q) unbounded,
- can construct optimal sol'n of (P) from optimal sol'n of (Q),

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Definition

Linear programs (P) and (Q) are equivalent if

- (P) infeasible $\iff$ (Q) infeasible,
- (P) unbounded $\iff$ (Q) unbounded,
- can construct optimal sol'n of (P) from optimal sol'n of (Q),
- can construct optimal sol'n of (Q) from optimal sol'n of (P).

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Definition

Linear programs (P) and (Q) are equivalent if

- (P) infeasible $\iff$ (Q) infeasible,
- (P) unbounded $\iff$ (Q) unbounded,
- can construct optimal sol'n of (P) from optimal sol'n of (Q),
- can construct optimal sol'n of (Q) from optimal sol'n of (P).

Theorem

Every LP is equivalent to an LP in SEF.

Equivalent LPs

Idea

A pair of LPs are equivalent if they behave in the same way.

Definition

Linear programs (P) and (Q) are equivalent if

- (P) infeasible $\iff$ (Q) infeasible,
- (P) unbounded $\iff$ (Q) unbounded,
- can construct optimal sol'n of (P) from optimal sol'n of (Q),
- can construct optimal sol'n of (Q) from optimal sol'n of (P).

Theorem

Every LP is equivalent to an LP in SEF.

We will illustrate the proof with a series of examples.

Dealing with Minimization

Dealing with Minimization

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\min & (1, 2, -4)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} = \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

Dealing with Minimization

$$\min \quad (1, 2, -4)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} = \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0$$

$$\max \quad -(1, 2, -4)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} = \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0$$

Dealing with Minimization

$$\min \quad (1, 2, -4)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} = \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0$$

EQUIVALENT!

$$\max \quad -(1, 2, -4)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} = \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0$$

Replacing an Inequality by an Equality

Replacing an Inequality by an Equality

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \leq 7.$$

Replacing an Inequality by an Equality

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \leq 7.$$

We can replace it by

Replacing an Inequality by an Equality

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \leq 7.$$

We can replace it by

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 + s = 7, \quad \text{where} \quad s \geq 0.$$

Replacing an Inequality by an Equality

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \leq 7.$$

We can replace it by

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 + s = 7, \quad \text{where} \quad s \geq 0.$$

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \geq 7.$$

Replacing an Inequality by an Equality

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \leq 7.$$

We can replace it by

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 + s = 7, \quad \text{where} \quad s \geq 0.$$

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \geq 7.$$

We can replace it by

Replacing an Inequality by an Equality

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \leq 7.$$

We can replace it by

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 + s = 7, \quad \text{where} \quad s \geq 0.$$

Suppose an LP has the constraint

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 \geq 7.$$

We can replace it by

$$x_1 - x_2 + x_4 - s = 7, \quad \text{where} \quad s \geq 0.$$

Free Variables

Free Variables

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0,\ x_3$ is free.

Free Variables

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0,\ x_3$ is free.

Find an equivalent LP without the free variable x_3. How?

Free Variables

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0,\ x_3$ is free.

Find an equivalent LP without the free variable x_3. How?

Idea

Any number is the difference between two non-negative numbers.

Free Variables

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0,\ x_3$ is free.

Find an equivalent LP without the free variable x_3. How?

Idea

Any number is the difference between two non-negative numbers.

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Objective Function

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Objective Function

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$z = (1, 2, 3)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Objective Function

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
z &= (1, 2, 3)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top \\
&= x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3
\end{aligned}
$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Objective Function

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
z &= (1, 2, 3)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top \\
&= x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 \\
&= x_1 + 2x_2 + 3(a - b)
\end{aligned}
$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Objective Function

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$\begin{aligned} z &= (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top \\ &= x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 \\ &= x_1 + 2x_2 + 3(a-b) \\ &= x_1 + x_2 + 3a - 3b \end{aligned}$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Objective Function

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
z &= (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top \\
&= x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 \\
&= x_1 + 2x_2 + 3(a-b) \\
&= x_1 + x_2 + 3a - 3b \\
&= (1,2,3,-3)(x_1,x_2,a,b)^\top
\end{aligned}
$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Constraints

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Constraints

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Constraints

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Constraints

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + (a - b) \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Constraints

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + (a - b) \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + a \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + b \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}
$$

Free Variables – Rewrite the Constraints

$\boxed{\text{Set } x_3 := a - b \text{ where } a, b \geq 0.}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + (a - b) \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + a \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + b \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 & -3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ a \\ b \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0,\ x_3$ is free.

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3)(x_1,x_2,x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0,\ x_3$ is free.

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3,-3)(x_1,x_2,a,b)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 & -3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, a, b \geq 0$$

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3)(x_1, x_2, x_3)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0,\ x_3$ is free.

EQUIVALENT!

$$\max \quad z = (1,2,3,-3)(x_1, x_2, a, b)^\top$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 & -3 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, a, b \geq 0$$

Generalize and Consequences

We have shown, for an LP, how to

Generalize and Consequences

We have shown, for an LP, how to

- change $\min$ to $\max$,

Generalize and Consequences

We have shown, for an LP, how to

- change $\min$ to $\max$,
- replace inequalities by equalities, and

Generalize and Consequences

We have shown, for an LP, how to

- change $\min$ to $\max$,
- replace inequalities by equalities, and
- get rid of free variables.

Generalize and Consequences

We have shown, for an LP, how to

- change $\min$ to $\max$,
- replace inequalities by equalities, and
- get rid of free variables.

Exercise

1. Generalize to arbitrary LPs.

Generalize and Consequences

We have shown, for an LP, how to

- change $\min$ to $\max$,
- replace inequalities by equalities, and
- get rid of free variables.

Exercise

1. Generalize to arbitrary LPs.
2. Show each step yields an equivalent LP.

Generalize and Consequences

We have shown, for an LP, how to

- change $\min$ to $\max$,
- replace inequalities by equalities, and
- get rid of free variables.

Exercise

1. Generalize to arbitrary LPs.
2. Show each step yields an equivalent LP.

⇓

Theorem

Every LP is equivalent to an LP in SEF.

Recap

Recap

1. We defined what it means for an LP to be in SEF.

Recap

1. We defined what it means for an LP to be in SEF.
2. We defined what it means for two LPs to be equivalent.

Recap

1. We defined what it means for an LP to be in SEF.
2. We defined what it means for two LPs to be equivalent.
3. We showed how to convert any LP into an equivalent LP in SEF.

Recap

1. We defined what it means for an LP to be in SEF.
2. We defined what it means for two LPs to be equivalent.
3. We showed how to convert any LP into an equivalent LP in SEF.
4. To solve any LP, it suffices to know how to solve LPs in SEF.

Module 2: Linear Programs (Simplex – A First Attempt)

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

Many details missing!

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

Many details missing!

Questions

- How do we find a feasible solution?

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

Many details missing!

Questions

- How do we find a feasible solution?
- How do we find a "better" solution?

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

Many details missing!

Questions

- How do we find a feasible solution?
- How do we find a "better" solution?
- Will this ever terminate?

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

Many details missing!

Questions

- How do we find a feasible solution?
- How do we find a "better" solution?
- Will this ever terminate?

The SIMPLEX algorithm works along these lines.

A Naive Strategy for Solving an LP

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 3. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 4. Find a "better" feasible solution.

Many details missing!

Questions

- How do we find a feasible solution?
- How do we find a "better" solution?
- Will this ever terminate?

The SIMPLEX algorithm works along these lines.

In this lecture: A first attempt at this algorithm.

A First Example

A First Example

Consider

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

A First Example

Consider

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.

A First Example

Consider

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.
- The objective function is $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 7$.

A First Example

Consider

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.
- The objective function is $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 7$.

Question

The feasible solution has objective value: $4 \times 0 + 3 \times 0 + 7 = 7$.

A First Example

Consider

$$
\begin{array}{|ll|}
\hline
\max & (4,3,0,0)x+7 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
 & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
 & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.
- The objective function is $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 7$.

Question

The feasible solution has objective value: $4 \times 0 + 3 \times 0 + 7 = 7$.

- Can we find a feasible solution with value larger than 7?

A First Example

Consider

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}}$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.
- The objective function is $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 7$.

Question

The feasible solution has objective value: $4 \times 0 + 3 \times 0 + 7 = 7$.

- Can we find a feasible solution with value larger than 7?

YES!

A First Example

Consider

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.
- The objective function is $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 7$.

A First Example

Consider

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.
- The objective function is $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 7$.

Idea

Increase x_1 as much as possible, and keep x_2 unchanged, i.e.,

A First Example

Consider

$$
\begin{array}{|ll|}
\hline
\max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

Remarks

- We have a feasible solution: $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 2$, and $x_4 = 1$.
- The objective function is $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 7$.

Idea

Increase x_1 as much as possible, and keep x_2 unchanged, i.e.,

$$
\begin{aligned}
x_1 &= t \qquad \text{for some } t \geq 0 \text{ as large as possible} \\
x_2 &= 0
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}}$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x+7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

It needs to satisfy

1. the equality constraints, and

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= t \\ x_2 &= 0 \\ x_3 &= ? \\ x_4 &= ? \end{aligned}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

It needs to satisfy

1. the equality constraints, and
2. the non-negativity constraints.

Satisfying the Equality Constraints

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

Satisfying the Equality Constraints

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}}$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x$$

Satisfying the Equality Constraints

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Satisfying the Equality Constraints

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 0 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Satisfying the Equality Constraints

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$
s.t.
$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 0 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Satisfying the Equality Constraints

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = ?$$
$$x_4 = ?$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 0 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}$$

Satisfying the Equality Constraints

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= t \\ x_2 &= 0 \\ x_3 &= ? \\ x_4 &= ? \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 0 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}$$

Remark

Equality constraints hold for any choice of t.

Satisfying the Non-Negativity Constraints

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$x_1 = t$$

$$x_2 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Satisfying the Non-Negativity Constraints

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$x_1 = t \geq 0$ ✓

Satisfying the Non-Negativity Constraints

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$x_1 = t \geq 0$ ✓

$x_2 = 0$ ✓

Satisfying the Non-Negativity Constraints

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$x_1 = t \geq 0$ ✓

$x_2 = 0$ ✓

$x_3 = 2 - 3t \geq 0 \implies t \leq \frac{2}{3}$

Satisfying the Non-Negativity Constraints

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = t$$

$$x_2 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$x_1 = t \geq 0$ ✓

$x_2 = 0$ ✓

$x_3 = 2 - 3t \geq 0 \Rightarrow t \leq \frac{2}{3}$

$x_4 = 1 - t \geq 0 \Rightarrow t \leq 1$

Satisfying the Non-Negativity Constraints

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = t$$

$$x_2 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$x_1 = t \geq 0$ ✓

$x_2 = 0$ ✓

$x_3 = 2 - 3t \geq 0 \Rightarrow t \leq \frac{2}{3}$

$x_4 = 1 - t \geq 0 \Rightarrow t \leq 1$

Thus, the largest possible t is $\min\left\{1, \frac{2}{3}\right\} = \frac{2}{3}$.

Satisfying the Non-Negativity Constraints

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}}$$

$$x_1 = t$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$x_1 = t \geq 0$ ✓

$x_2 = 0$ ✓

$x_3 = 2 - 3t \geq 0 \Rightarrow t \leq \frac{2}{3}$

$x_4 = 1 - t \geq 0 \Rightarrow t \leq 1$

Thus, the largest possible t is $\min\left\{1, \frac{2}{3}\right\} = \frac{2}{3}$. The new solution is

$$x = (t,\ 0,\ 2 - 3t,\ 1 - t)^\top = \left(\frac{2}{3}, 0, 0, \frac{1}{3}\right)^\top$$

Repeating the Argument?

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$x_2 = 0$$

$$x_3 = 0$$

$$x_4 = \frac{1}{3}$$

Repeating the Argument?

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$x_2 = 0$$

$$x_3 = 0$$

$$x_4 = \frac{1}{3}$$

Question

Is the new solution optimal?

Repeating the Argument?

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{2}{3}$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = 0$$
$$x_4 = \frac{1}{3}$$

Question

Is the new solution optimal? NO!

Repeating the Argument?

$$\max \quad (4,3,0,0)x + 7$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_1 = \frac{2}{3}$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = 0$$
$$x_4 = \frac{1}{3}$$

Question

Is the new solution optimal? NO!

Question

Can we use the same trick to get a better solution?

Repeating the Argument?

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{2}{3}$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = 0$$
$$x_4 = \frac{1}{3}$$

Question

Is the new solution optimal? NO!

Question

Can we use the same trick to get a better solution? NO!

Repeating the Argument?

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (4,3,0,0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{2}{3} \qquad x_2 = 0 \qquad x_3 = 0 \qquad x_4 = \frac{1}{3}$$

Question

Is the new solution optimal? NO!

Question

Can we use the same trick to get a better solution? NO!

What made it work the first time around?

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix}4 & 3 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 7 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix}3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 1\end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$x_1 = 0$

$x_2 = 0$

$x_3 = 2$

$x_4 = 1$

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$$x_1 = 0$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = 2$$
$$x_4 = 1$$

Revised strategy:

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}4 & 3 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$$x_1 = 0$$
$$x_2 = 0$$
$$x_3 = 2$$
$$x_4 = 1$$

Revised strategy:

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}4 & 3 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 1\end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$x_1 = 0$

$x_2 = 0$

$x_3 = 2$

$x_4 = 1$

Revised strategy:

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. Rewrite LP so that it is in "canonical" form.

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}4 & 3 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 1\end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$x_1 = 0$

$x_2 = 0$

$x_3 = 2$

$x_4 = 1$

Revised strategy:

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. Rewrite LP so that it is in "canonical" form.

Step 3. If x is optimal, STOP.

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}4 & 3 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 1\end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$x_1 = 0$

$x_2 = 0$

$x_3 = 2$

$x_4 = 1$

Revised strategy:

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. Rewrite LP so that it is in "canonical" form.

Step 3. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 4. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$
\boxed{
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix}4 & 3 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 7 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{array}
}
$$

$x_1 = 0$

$x_2 = 0$

$x_3 = 2$

$x_4 = 1$

Revised strategy:

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. Rewrite LP so that it is in "canonical" form.

Step 3. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 4. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 5. Find a "better" feasible solution.

Remark

The LP needs to be in "canonical" form.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}4 & 3 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}x + 7 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 1\end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$x_1 = 0$
$x_2 = 0$
$x_3 = 2$
$x_4 = 1$

Revised strategy:

Step 1. Find a feasible solution, x.

Step 2. Rewrite LP so that it is in "canonical" form.

Step 3. If x is optimal, STOP.

Step 4. If LP is unbounded, STOP.

Step 5. Find a "better" feasible solution.

From Here to a Complete Algorithm

From Here to a Complete Algorithm

(1) Define what we mean by “canonical” form.

From Here to a Complete Algorithm

(1) Define what we mean by "canonical" form.

(2) Prove that we can always rewrite LPs in canonical form.

From Here to a Complete Algorithm

(1) Define what we mean by "canonical" form.

(2) Prove that we can always rewrite LPs in canonical form.

algorithm known as the SIMPLEX.

From Here to a Complete Algorithm

(1) Define what we mean by "canonical" form.

(2) Prove that we can always rewrite LPs in canonical form.

$\Longrightarrow$

algorithm known as the SIMPLEX.

First on "To do list":

- Define basis and basic solutions.

From Here to a Complete Algorithm

(1) Define what we mean by "canonical" form.

(2) Prove that we can always rewrite LPs in canonical form.

$\Longrightarrow$

algorithm known as the SIMPLEX.

First on "To do list":

- Define basis and basic solutions.
- Define canonical forms.

Module 2: Linear Programs (Basis)

Notation

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{1, 2, 3\}$$

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{1, 2, 3\}$$

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

Notation

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{1, 3, 4\}$$

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{1, 3, 4\}$$

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notation

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{5\}$$

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{5\}$$

$$A_{\{5\}} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{5\} \qquad\qquad A_{\{5\}} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notation

A_j denotes column j of A.

Notation

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{matrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Notation

Let B be a subset of column indices.
Then A_B is a column sub-matrix of A indexed by set B.

$$B = \{5\} \qquad\qquad A_5 = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Notation

A_j denotes column j of A.

Basis

Basis

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices.

Basis

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c@{}c} & \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ A = & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

Basis

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c@{}c} & \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ A = & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

Basis

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c@{}c} & \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ A = & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Basis

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c} \\ A = \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ a basis?

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ a basis?

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ a basis?

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

YES

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{1, 5\}$ a basis?

Basis

Consider

$$\begin{array}{c} \\ A = \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{1, 5\}$ a basis?

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{1, 5\}$ a basis?

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

NO

A_B is not square

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array}\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$ a basis?

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$ a basis? $$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Basis

Consider

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{matrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

Definition

Let B be a subset of column indices. B is a basis if

(1) A_B is a square matrix,

(2) A_B is non-singular (columns are independent).

Is $B = \{2, 3, 4\}$ a basis?

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

NO

columns of A_B are dependent

Question

Does every matrix have a basis?

Question

Does every matrix have a basis? NO.

Question

Does every matrix have a basis? NO.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ -3 & -2 & -1 & -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Question

Does every matrix have a basis? NO.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ -3 & -2 & -1 & -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

The rows of A are dependent!

Question

Does every matrix have a basis? NO.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ -3 & -2 & -1 & -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

The rows of A are dependent!
There are no 3 independent columns.

Question

Does every matrix have a basis? NO.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ -3 & -2 & -1 & -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

The rows of A are dependent!
There are no 3 independent columns.

Theorem

Max number of independent columns $=$
Max number of independent rows.

Question

Does every matrix have a basis? NO.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ -3 & -2 & -1 & -3 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

The rows of A are dependent!
There are no 3 independent columns.

Theorem

Max number of independent columns $=$
Max number of independent rows.

Remark

Let A be a matrix with independent rows. Then B is a basis if and only if B is a maximal set of independent columns of A.

Basic Solutions

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} \color{red}1 & \color{red}2 & \color{red}3 & \color{red}4 & \color{red}5 \end{matrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A.

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A.

- if $j \in B$ then x_j is a basic variable,

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \\ \end{array}}_{}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A.

- if $j \in B$ then x_j is a basic variable,
- if $j \notin B$ then x_j is a non-basic variable.

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A.

- if $j \in B$ then x_j is a basic variable,
- if $j \notin B$ then x_j is a non-basic variable.

Example

Basis $B = \{1, 2, 4\}$.

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \\ \end{array}}_{}$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A.

- if $j \in B$ then x_j is a basic variable,
- if $j \notin B$ then x_j is a non-basic variable.

Example

Basis $B = \{1, 2, 4\}$. Then

- x_1, x_2, x_4 are the basic variables,

Basic Solutions

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A.

- if $j \in B$ then x_j is a basic variable,
- if $j \notin B$ then x_j is a non-basic variable.

Example

Basis $B = \{1, 2, 4\}$. Then

- x_1, x_2, x_4 are the basic variables, and
- x_3, x_5 are the non-basic variables.

Basic Solutions

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Basic Solutions

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ \multicolumn{5}{c}{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \\ \end{array}}$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$

(1) $Ax = b$

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}: \text{ basic sol'n for } B = \{1, 2, 3\}$$

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

(2) $x_4 = x_5 = 0$

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

(2) $x_4 = x_5 = 0$ ✓

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 3, 4\}$

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 3, 4\}$

(1) $Ax = b$

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \\ \end{array}}_{} $$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : \text{ basic sol'n for } B = \{1, 3, 4\}$$

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}1 & \color{red}2 & \color{red}3 & \color{red}4 & \color{red}5 \end{array} \\
\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}
\end{array}}_{A} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 3, 4\}$

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

(2) $x_2 = x_5 = 0$

Basic Solutions

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Definition

x is a basic solution for basis B if

(1) $Ax = b$, and

(2) $x_j = 0$ whenever $j \notin B$.

$$x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$: basic sol'n for $B = \{1, 3, 4\}$

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

(2) $x_2 = x_5 = 0$ ✓

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \multicolumn{4}{c}{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{cccc} \color{red}1 & \color{red}2 & \color{red}3 & \color{red}4 \\ \end{array}}{} $$

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \multicolumn{4}{c}{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \qquad \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c}\begin{array}{cccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \end{array}}_{}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, the basic solution is $x = (4,\ 0,\ 0,\ 2)^\top$.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} 1 & \quad 2 & \quad 3 & \quad 4 \end{matrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, the basic solution is $x = (4,\ 0,\ 0,\ 2)^\top$.

Question

Did we have a choice for a basic solution x given $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \end{array}}_{}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Problem

Find a basic solution x for the basis $B = \{1, 4\}$?

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_2}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \underbrace{x_3}_{=0} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, the basic solution is $x = (4,\ 0,\ 0,\ 2)^\top$.

Question

Did we have a choice for a basic solution x given $B = \{1, 4\}$? NO!

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Before we proceed with the proof, let's look at some conventions.

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Before we proceed with the proof, let's look at some conventions.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Before we proceed with the proof, let's look at some conventions.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

For $B = \{1, 2, 4\}$,

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Before we proceed with the proof, let's look at some conventions.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

For $B = \{1, 2, 4\}$,

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad x_B = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{(basic variables)}$$

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Before we proceed with the proof, let's look at some conventions.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

For $B = \{1, 2, 4\}$,

$$A_B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad x_B = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{(basic variables)}$$

columns of A_B and elements of x_B are ordered by B!

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Proof

$$b = Ax$$

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Proof

$$b = Ax = \sum_j A_j x_j$$

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Proof

$$\begin{aligned} b =& Ax = \sum_j A_j x_j \\ =& \sum_{j \in B} A_j x_j + \sum_{j \notin B} A_j \underbrace{x_j}_{=0} \end{aligned}$$

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Proof

$$\begin{aligned} b =& Ax = \sum_j A_j x_j \\ &= \sum_{j \in B} A_j x_j + \sum_{j \notin B} A_j \underbrace{x_j}_{=0} \\ &= \sum_{j \in B} A_j x_j = A_B x_B \end{aligned}$$

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Proof

$$
\begin{aligned}
b =& Ax = \sum_{j} A_j x_j \\
&= \sum_{j \in B} A_j x_j + \sum_{j \notin B} A_j \underbrace{x_j}_{=0} \\
&= \sum_{j \in B} A_j x_j = A_B x_B
\end{aligned}
$$

Since B is a basis, it implies A_B is non-singular, i.e., A_B^{-1} exists.

Basic Solutions – Uniqueness

Proposition

Consider $Ax = b$ and a basis B of A.
Then there exists a unique basic solution x for B.

Proof

$$\begin{aligned} b =& Ax = \sum_j A_j x_j \\ =& \sum_{j \in B} A_j x_j + \sum_{j \notin B} A_j \underbrace{x_j}_{=0} \\ =& \sum_{j \in B} A_j x_j = A_B x_B \end{aligned}$$

Since B is a basis, it implies A_B is non-singular, i.e., A_B^{-1} exists.

Hence, $x_B = A_B^{-1} b$.

When Is a Vector Basic?

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for some basis B.

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for some basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ \multicolumn{5}{c}{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for <u>some</u> basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 0, 3, 0, 3)^\top$ basic?

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for some basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 0, 3, 0, 3)^\top$ basic? YES!

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for some basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 0, 3, 0, 3)^\top$ basic? YES!

Is x basic for $B = \{3, 5\}$?

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for <u>some</u> basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ \multicolumn{5}{c}{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0,0,3,0,3)^\top$ basic? YES!

(1) $Ax = b$

Is x basic for $B = \{3,5\}$?

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for some basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{matrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 0, 3, 0, 3)^\top$ basic? YES!

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

Is x basic for $B = \{3, 5\}$?

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for some basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ \end{array}}{} $$

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 0, 3, 0, 3)^\top$ basic? YES!

Is x basic for $B = \{3, 5\}$?

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

(2) $x_1 = x_2 = x_4 = 0$

When Is a Vector Basic?

Definition

Consider $Ax = b$ with independent rows.
Vector x is a basic solution if it is a basic solution for <u>some</u> basis B.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 0, 3, 0, 3)^\top$ basic? YES!

Is x basic for $B = \{3, 5\}$?

(1) $Ax = b$ ✓

(2) $x_1 = x_2 = x_4 = 0$ ✓

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\
\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A}
\end{array}
x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}
$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic?

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic? NO!

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}1 & \color{red}2 & \color{red}3 & \color{red}4 & \color{red}5 \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic? NO!

Proof

By contradiction. Suppose x is basic for basis B.

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic? NO!

Proof

By contradiction. Suppose x is basic for basis B.

- $x_2 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $2 \in B$.

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic? NO!

Proof

By contradiction. Suppose x is basic for basis B.

- $x_2 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $2 \in B$.
- $x_4 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $4 \in B$.

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\
\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A}
\end{array}
x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}
$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic? NO!

Proof

By contradiction. Suppose x is basic for basis B.

- $x_2 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $2 \in B$.
- $x_4 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $4 \in B$.

Thus,

$$A_{\{2,4\}} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

is a column submatrix of A_B.

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic? NO!

Proof

By contradiction. Suppose x is basic for basis B.

- $x_2 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $2 \in B$.
- $x_4 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $4 \in B$.

Thus,

$$A_{\{2,4\}} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

is a column submatrix of A_B. But the columns of $A_{\{2,4\}}$ are dependent,

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}1 & \color{red}2 & \color{red}3 & \color{red}4 & \color{red}5 \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Question

Is $x = (0, 1, 0, 1, 0)^\top$ basic? NO!

Proof

By contradiction. Suppose x is basic for basis B.

- $x_2 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $2 \in B$.
- $x_4 = 1 \neq 0$ implies $4 \in B$.

Thus,

$$A_{\{2,4\}} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

is a column submatrix of A_B. But the columns of $A_{\{2,4\}}$ are dependent, so A_B is singular and B is not a basis, a contradiction.

Multiple Bases for a Basic Solution

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \\ \multicolumn{5}{c}{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Multiple Bases for a Basic Solution

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \\ \end{array}}_{} $$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Note: $x = (0,0,0,0,0)^\top$ is a basic solution for

Multiple Bases for a Basic Solution

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{matrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Note: $x = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0)^\top$ is a basic solution for

- basis $B = \{1, 2\}$,

Multiple Bases for a Basic Solution

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Note: $x = (0,0,0,0,0)^\top$ is a basic solution for

- basis $B = \{1,2\}$,
- basis $B' = \{1,3\}$,

Multiple Bases for a Basic Solution

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}{1} & \color{red}{2} & \color{red}{3} & \color{red}{4} & \color{red}{5} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Note: $x = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0)^\top$ is a basic solution for

- basis $B = \{1, 2\}$,
- basis $B' = \{1, 3\}$,
- basis $B'' = \{2, 4\}$, ...

Multiple Bases for a Basic Solution

$$\underbrace{\begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{matrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Note: $x = (0,0,0,0,0)^\top$ is a basic solution for

- basis $B = \{1,2\}$,
- basis $B' = \{1,3\}$,
- basis $B'' = \{2,4\}$, ...

Remark

A basic solution can be the basic solution for more than one basis.

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} \color{red}1 & \color{red}2 & \color{red}3 & \color{red}4 & \color{red}5 \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Note: $x = (0,0,0,0,0)^\top$ is a basic solution for

- basis $B = \{1,2\}$,
- basis $B' = \{1,3\}$,
- basis $B'' = \{2,4\}$, ...

Remark

A basic solution can be the basic solution for more than one basis.

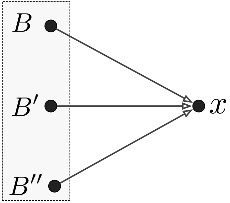
$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \\ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} \end{array} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Note: $x = (0,0,0,0,0)^\top$ is a basic solution for

- basis $B = \{1,2\}$,
- basis $B' = \{1,3\}$,
- basis $B'' = \{2,4\}$, ...

Remark

A basic solution can be the basic solution for more than one basis.



Relation to LPs

Relation to LPs

Problem in SEF:

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$

Relation to LPs

Problem in SEF:

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$

Remark

If the rows of A are dependent, then either

Relation to LPs

Problem in SEF:

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$

Remark

If the rows of A are dependent, then either

- there is no solution to $Ax = b$; (P) is infeasible,

Relation to LPs

Problem in SEF:

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$

Remark

If the rows of A are dependent, then either

- there is no solution to $Ax = b$; (P) is infeasible, OR

Relation to LPs

Problem in SEF:

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Remark

If the rows of A are dependent, then either

- there is no solution to $Ax = b$; (P) is infeasible, OR
- a constraint of $Ax = b$ can be removed without changing the solutions.

Relation to LPs

Problem in SEF:

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$

Remark

If the rows of A are dependent, then either

- there is no solution to $Ax = b$; (P) is infeasible, OR
- a constraint of $Ax = b$ can be removed without changing the solutions.

$\Longrightarrow$

Remark

We may assume, when solving (P), that rows of A are independent.

Relation to LPs

Problem in SEF:

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$

Remark

If the rows of A are dependent, then either

- there is no solution to $Ax = b$; (P) is infeasible, OR
- a constant of $Ax = b$ can be removed without changing the solutions.

$\Rightarrow$

Remark

We may assume, when solving (P), that rows of A are independent.

Definition

A basic solution x of $Ax = b$ is feasible if $x \geq 0$, i.e., if it is feasible for (P).

Consider the system

$$Ax = b$$

where the rows of A are independent.

Consider the system

$$Ax = b$$

where the rows of A are independent.

Recap

(1) B is a basis if A_B is a square, non-singular matrix.

Consider the system

$$Ax = b$$

where the rows of A are independent.

Recap

(1) B is a basis if A_B is a square, non-singular matrix.

(2) a solution x to $Ax = b$, is basic for B, if $x_j = 0$ when $j \notin B$.

Consider the system

$$Ax = b$$

where the rows of A are independent.

Recap

(1) B is a basis if A_B is a square, non-singular matrix.

(2) a solution x to $Ax = b$, is basic for B, if $x_j = 0$ when $j \notin B$.

(3) x is basic if it is basic for some basis B.

Consider the system

$$Ax = b$$

where the rows of A are independent.

Recap

(1) B is a basis if A_B is a square, non-singular matrix.

(2) a solution x to $Ax = b$, is basic for B, if $x_j = 0$ when $j \notin B$.

(3) x is basic if it is basic for <u>some</u> basis B.

(4) Each basis has a unique associated basic solution.

Consider the system

$$Ax = b$$

where the rows of A are independent.

Recap

(1) B is a basis if A_B is a square, non-singular matrix.

(2) a solution x to $Ax = b$, is basic for B, if $x_j = 0$ when $j \notin B$.

(3) x is basic if it is basic for some basis B.

(4) Each basis has a unique associated basic solution.

(5) Several bases can have the same basic solution.

Consider the system

$$Ax = b$$

where the rows of A are independent.

Recap

(1) B is a basis if A_B is a square, non-singular matrix.

(2) a solution x to $Ax = b$, is basic for B, if $x_j = 0$ when $j \notin B$.

(3) x is basic if it is basic for some basis B.

(4) Each basis has a unique associated basic solution.

(5) Several bases can have the same basic solution.

(6) A basic solution is feasible if it is non-negative.

Module 2: Linear Programs (Canonical Forms)

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A. Then (P) is in canonical form for B if

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A. Then (P) is in canonical form for B if

(P1) $A_B = I$, and

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A. Then (P) is in canonical form for B if

(P1) $A_B = I$, and

(P2) $c_j = 0$ for all $j \in B$.

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A. Then (P) is in canonical form for B if

(P1) $A_B = I$, and

(P2) $c_j = 0$ for all $j \in B$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{aligned}$$

Canonical form for $B = \{1, 2\}$

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Definition

Let B be a basis of A. Then (P) is in canonical form for B if

(P1) $A_B = I$, and

(P2) $c_j = 0$ for all $j \in B$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 & 0 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x + 2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

Canonical form for $B = \{2, 3\}$

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Idea

For any basis B we can "rewrite" (P) so that it is in canonical form for a basis B and such that the resulting LP behaves the same as (P).

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Idea

For any basis B we can "rewrite" (P) so that it is in canonical form for a basis B and such that the resulting LP behaves the same as (P).

More formally, we will show the following:

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\right\} \tag{P}$$

Idea

For any basis B we can "rewrite" (P) so that it is in canonical form for a basis B and such that the resulting LP behaves the same as (P).

More formally, we will show the following:

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

Consider

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0} \right\} \tag{P}$$

Idea

For any basis B we can "rewrite" (P) so that it is in canonical form for a basis B and such that the resulting LP behaves the same as (P).

More formally, we will show the following:

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

(1) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region, and

Consider

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbb{0} \right\} \tag{P}$$

Idea

For any basis B we can "rewrite" (P) so that it is in canonical form for a basis B and such that the resulting LP behaves the same as (P).

More formally, we will show the following:

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

(1) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region, and

(2) feasible solutions have the same objective value for (P) and (P').

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

(1) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region, and

(2) feasible solutions have the same objective value for (P) and (P').

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

(1) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region, and

(2) feasible solutions have the same objective value for (P) and (P').

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

(1) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region, and

(2) feasible solutions have the same objective value for (P) and (P').

$\max \quad (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x$	$\max \quad (-2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 6)x + 2$
s.t.	s.t.
$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$
$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$	$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

(1) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region, and

(2) feasible solutions have the same objective value for (P) and (P').

$\max \quad (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x$ s.t. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$	$\max \quad (-2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 6)x + 2$ s.t. $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$

Example

$(1) \quad \bar{x} = (1, 2, 0, 0)^\top$ is feasible for both LPs.

Proposition

For any basis B, there exists (P') in canonical form for B such that

(1) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region, and

(2) feasible solutions have the same objective value for (P) and (P').

$\max \quad (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x$ s.t. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$	$\max \quad (-2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 6)x + 2$ s.t. $\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ $x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$

Example

(1) $\bar{x} = (1, 2, 0, 0)^\top$ is feasible for both LPs.

(2)
$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lcr} (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)\bar{x} & = & 2 \times 0 + 4 \times 0 = 0 \\ (-2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 6)\bar{x} \quad +2 & = & -2 \times 1 + 6 \times 0 + 2 = 0 \end{array}}$$

Illustration with an Example

Illustration with an Example

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Illustration with an Example

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{b} \tag{P}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Question

How do we rewrite (P) in canonical form for basis $B = \{2, 3\}$?

Illustration with an Example

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Question

How do we rewrite (P) in canonical form for basis $B = \{2, 3\}$?

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_{\{2,3\}} = I$.

Illustration with an Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{array}
\qquad \text{(P)}
$$

Question

How do we rewrite (P) in canonical form for basis $B = \{2, 3\}$?

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_{\{2,3\}} = I$.

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ where $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$ and $\bar{z}$ is a constant.

Rewriting Constraints – Example

Rewriting Constraints – Example

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

Rewriting Constraints – Example

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_{\{2,3\}} = I$.

Rewriting Constraints – Example

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_{\{2,3\}} = I$.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Rewriting Constraints – Example

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_{\{2,3\}} = I$.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Rewriting Constraints – Example

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_{\{2,3\}} = I$.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Rewriting Constraints – General

Rewriting Constraints – General

Consider the system $Ax = b$ with basis B of A.

Rewriting Constraints – General

Consider the system $Ax = b$ with basis B of A.

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_B = I$ for some basis B.

Rewriting Constraints – General

Consider the system $Ax = b$ with basis B of A.

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_B = I$ for some basis B.

$$Ax = b$$

Rewriting Constraints – General

Consider the system $Ax = b$ with basis B of A.

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_B = I$ for some basis B.

$$Ax = b$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\underbrace{A_B^{-1}A}_{A'}\,x = \underbrace{A_B^{-1}b}_{b'}$$

Rewriting Constraints – General

Consider the system $Ax = b$ with basis B of A.

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_B = I$ for some basis B.

$$Ax = b$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\underbrace{A_B^{-1} A}_{A'} x = \underbrace{A_B^{-1} b}_{b'}$$

Remarks

- $A'_B = I$.

Rewriting Constraints – General

Consider the system $Ax = b$ with basis B of A.

(P1) Replace $Ax = b$ by $A'x = b'$ with $A'_B = I$ for some basis B.

$$Ax = b$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\underbrace{A_B^{-1} A}_{A'} x = \underbrace{A_B^{-1} b}_{b'}$$

Remarks

- $A'_B = I$.
- $Ax = b$ and $A'x = b'$ have the same set of solutions.

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

$$\max \quad z = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^\top} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

$$\max \quad z = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^\top} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ where $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$ and $\bar{z}$ is a constant.

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

$$\max \quad z = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^\top} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ where $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$ and $\bar{z}$ is a constant.

Step 1. Construct a new objective function by

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

$$\max \quad z = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^\top} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ where $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$ and $\bar{z}$ is a constant.

Step 1. Construct a new objective function by

- multiplying constraint 1 by y_1,

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

$$\max \quad z = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^\top} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ where $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$ and $\bar{z}$ is a constant.

Step 1. Construct a new objective function by

- multiplying constraint 1 by y_1,
- multiplying constraint 2 by y_2, and

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

$$\max \quad z = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^\top} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ where $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$ and $\bar{z}$ is a constant.

Step 1. Construct a new objective function by

- multiplying constraint 1 by y_1,
- multiplying constraint 2 by y_2, and
- adding the resulting constraints to the objective function.

Rewriting the Objective Function – Example

$$\max \quad z = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{c^\top} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ where $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$ and $\bar{z}$ is a constant.

Step 1. Construct a new objective function by

- multiplying constraint 1 by y_1,
- multiplying constraint 2 by y_2, and
- adding the resulting constraints to the objective function.

Step 2. Choose y_1, y_2 to get $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$.

$$\max \quad z = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$
\boxed{
\begin{aligned}
&\max \quad z = (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x \\
&\text{s.t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
&\qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{aligned}
}
$$

$$
(y_1, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = (y_1, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}
$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad z = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 2\end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$$0 \quad = \quad -\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix} x + \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 2\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad z = (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= -(y_1 \;\; y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x + (y_1 \;\; y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ z &= (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x \end{aligned}$$

$$
\boxed{
\begin{array}{l}
\max \quad z = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s.t.} \\
\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
\qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{array}
}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{rcr}
0 & = & -\begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x + \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
z & = & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$$\begin{array}{rcr} 0 & = & -(y_1 \;\; y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x + (y_1 \;\; y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ z & = & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4)x \\ \hline z & = & \left[(0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 4) - (y_1 \;\; y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right] x + (y_1 \;\; y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= -\begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x + \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ z &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x \end{aligned}$$

$$z = \left[\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right] x + \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Remark

For any choice of y_1, y_2 and any feasible solution x,

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 &= -\begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x + \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
z &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} x
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
z = \left[\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right] x + \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}
$$

Remark

For any choice of y_1, y_2 and any feasible solution x,

objective value of x for old objective function $=$
objective value of x for new objective function

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$?

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1\\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$?

$$\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0\end{pmatrix} = \bar{c}_B^\top = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 2\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1\\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$?

$$\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0\end{pmatrix} = \bar{c}_B^\top = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 2\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 2\end{pmatrix}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1\\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$?

$$\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0\end{pmatrix} = \bar{c}_B^\top = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 2\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 2\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}^\top \begin{pmatrix}y_1\\ y_2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}y_1\\ y_2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0\\ 2\end{pmatrix}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1\\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_2 = \bar{c}_3 = 0$?

$$\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0\end{pmatrix} = \bar{c}_B^\top = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 2\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 2\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}^\top \begin{pmatrix}y_1\\ y_2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}y_1\\ y_2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0\\ 2\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$\begin{pmatrix}y_1\\ y_2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}0 & 1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}^{-1}\begin{pmatrix}0\\ 2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}2\\ 0\end{pmatrix}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for $B = \{2, 3\}$?

Choose

$$\begin{pmatrix}y_1 \\ y_2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 0\end{pmatrix}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} y_1 & y_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for $B = \{2, 3\}$?

Choose

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

⇒

$$z = \left[\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}\right] x + \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}y_1 & y_2\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1\\ 2\end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y_1, y_2 such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for $B = \{2, 3\}$?

Choose

$$\begin{pmatrix}y_1\\ y_2\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}2\\ 0\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$z = \left[\begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 2 & 4\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix}2 & 0\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1 & -1\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2\end{pmatrix}\right] x + \begin{pmatrix}2 & 0\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}1\\ 2\end{pmatrix}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$$z = \begin{pmatrix}-2 & 0 & 0 & 6\end{pmatrix} x + 2$$

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}}$$

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ with $\bar{c}_B = \mathbb{0}$ ($\bar{z}$ constant) for some basis B.

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ with $\bar{c}_B = \mathbb{0}$ ($\bar{z}$ constant) for some basis B.

$$y^\top A x = y^\top b$$

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ with $\bar{c}_B = \mathbb{0}$ ($\bar{z}$ constant) for some basis B.

$$0 \quad = \quad -y^\top Ax + y^\top b$$

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ with $\bar{c}_B = \mathbb{0}$ ($\bar{z}$ constant) for some basis B.

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= -y^\top Ax + y^\top b \\ z &= c^\top x \end{aligned}$$

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ with $\bar{c}_B = \mathbb{0}$ ($\bar{z}$ constant) for some basis B.

$$\begin{array}{rcr} 0 & = & -y^\top Ax + y^\top b \\ z & = & c^\top x \\ \hline z & = & \left[c^\top - y^\top A\right] x + y^\top b \end{array}$$

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ with $\bar{c}_B = \mathbb{0}$ ($\bar{z}$ constant) for some basis B.

$$\begin{array}{rcr} 0 & = & -y^\top Ax + y^\top b \\ z & = & c^\top x \\ \hline z & = & \left[c^\top - y^\top A\right] x + y^\top b \end{array}$$

Remark

For any choice of y and any feasible solution x,

Rewriting the Objective Function – General

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}}$$

(P2) Replace $c^\top x$ by $\bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z}$ with $\bar{c}_B = \mathbb{0}$ ($\bar{z}$ constant) for some basis B.

$$\begin{array}{rcr} 0 & = & -y^\top Ax + y^\top b \\ z & = & c^\top x \\ \hline z & = & \left[c^\top - y^\top A\right] x + y^\top b \end{array}$$

Remark

For any choice of y and any feasible solution x,

objective value of x for old objective function $=$
objective value of x for new objective function

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$\mathbb{0}^\top = \bar{c}_B^\top$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$\mathbb{0}^\top = \bar{c}_B^\top = c_B^\top - y^\top A_B$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$\mathbb{0}^\top = \bar{c}_B^\top = c_B^\top - y^\top A_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y^\top A_B = c_B^\top$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$\mathbb{0}^\top = \bar{c}_B^\top = c_B^\top - y^\top A_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y^\top A_B = c_B^\top$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$A_B^\top y = c_B$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$\mathbb{0}^\top = \bar{c}_B^\top = c_B^\top - y^\top A_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y^\top A_B = c_B^\top$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$A_B^\top y = c_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y = \left(A_B^\top\right)^{-1} c_B$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$\mathbb{0}^\top = \bar{c}_B^\top = c_B^\top - y^\top A_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y^\top A_B = c_B^\top$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$A_B^\top y = c_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y = \left(A_B^\top\right)^{-1} c_B$$

Remark

For any non-singular matrix M,

$$(M^\top)^{-1} = (M^{-1})^\top =: M^{-\top}$$

$$z = \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}^\top} x + \underbrace{y^\top b}_{\bar{z}}$$

Question

How do we choose y such that $\bar{c}_B = 0$ for a basis B?

$$\mathbb{0}^\top = \bar{c}_B^\top = c_B^\top - y^\top A_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y^\top A_B = c_B^\top$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$A_B^\top y = c_B$$

$\Longleftrightarrow$

$$y = \left(A_B^\top\right)^{-1} c_B = A_B^{-\top} c_B$$

Remark

For any non-singular matrix M,

$$(M^\top)^{-1} = (M^{-1})^\top =: M^{-\top}$$

Recap

Proposition

Let B be a basis of A,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}} \quad \text{(P)}$$

Recap

Proposition

Let B be a basis of A,

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}} \quad \text{(P)}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}} x + y^\top b \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \underbrace{A_B^{-1} A}_{A'} x = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}} \quad \text{(P')}$$

Recap

Proposition

Let B be a basis of A,

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}} x + y^\top b \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \underbrace{A_B^{-1} A}_{A'} x = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

where $y = A_B^{-\top} c_B$.

Recap

Proposition

Let B be a basis of A,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}} \quad \text{(P)}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}} x + y^\top b \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{A_B^{-1} A}_{A'} x = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}} \quad \text{(P')}$$

where $y = A_B^{-\top} c_B$. Then

(1) (P') is in canonical form for basis B, i.e., $\bar{c}_B = 0$ and $A'_B = I$.

Recap

Proposition

Let B be a basis of A,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}} \quad \text{(P)}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}} x + y^\top b \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{A_B^{-1} A}_{A'} x = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}} \quad \text{(P')}$$

where $y = A_B^{-\top} c_B$. Then

(1) (P') is in canonical form for basis B, i.e., $\bar{c}_B = 0$ and $A'_B = I$.

(2) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region.

Recap

Proposition

Let B be a basis of A,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}} \quad \text{(P)}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \underbrace{\left[c^\top - y^\top A\right]}_{\bar{c}} x + y^\top b \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{A_B^{-1} A}_{A'} x = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}} \quad \text{(P')}$$

where $y = A_B^{-\top} c_B$. Then

(1) (P') is in canonical form for basis B, i.e., $\bar{c}_B = 0$ and $A'_B = I$.

(2) (P) and (P') have the same feasible region.

(3) Feasible solutions have the same objective value for (P) and (P').

Module 2: Linear Programs (Formalizing the Simplex)

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

- A_B is square and non-singular

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

- A_B is square and non-singular $\Longrightarrow$ B is a basis

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

- A_B is square and non-singular $\Longrightarrow$ B is a basis
- $A_B = I$ and $c_B = \mathbf{0}$

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

- A_B is square and non-singular $\Rightarrow$ B is a basis
- $A_B = I$ and $c_B = \mathbf{0}$ $\Rightarrow$ LP is in canonical form for B

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

- A_B is square and non-singular $\Longrightarrow$ B is a basis
- $A_B = I$ and $c_B = \mathbf{0}$ $\Longrightarrow$ LP is in canonical form for B
- $\bar{x} = (2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a the basic solution for B.

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

- A_B is square and non-singular $\Rightarrow$ B is a basis
- $A_B = I$ and $c_B = \mathbf{0}$ $\Rightarrow$ LP is in canonical form for B
- $\bar{x} = (2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a the basic solution for B.
- $\bar{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$

Finding an Optimal Solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Consider $B = \{1, 4\}$.

- A_B is square and non-singular $\Longrightarrow$ B is a basis
- $A_B = I$ and $c_B = \mathbf{0}$ $\Longrightarrow$ LP is in canonical form for B
- $\bar{x} = (2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a the basic solution for B.
- $\bar{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$ $\Longrightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is feasible, i.e., B is feasible

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a basic solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a basic solution

Question

How do we find a better feasible solution?

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a basic solution

Idea

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a basic solution

Idea

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$.

Set $x_k = t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a basic solution

Idea

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$.

Set $x_k = t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Keep all other non-basic variables at 0.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a basic solution

Idea

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$.

Set $x_k = t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Keep all other non-basic variables at 0.

Pick $k = 2$. Set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(2, 0, 0, 5)^\top$ is a basic solution

Idea

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$.

Set $x_k = t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Keep all other non-basic variables at 0.

Pick $k = 2$. Set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

Keep $x_3 = 0$.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

Idea

Choose basic variables such that $Ax = b$ holds.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1 & 3 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\ 5\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

Idea

Choose basic variables such that $Ax = b$ holds.

$$\begin{pmatrix}2\\ 5\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

Idea

Choose basic variables such that $Ax = b$ holds.

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\ &= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

Idea

Choose basic variables such that $Ax = b$ holds.

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 0 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \\
& \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

Idea

Choose basic variables such that $Ax = b$ holds.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 0 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0,\ x_3 = 0$

Idea

Choose basic variables such that $Ax = b$ holds.

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&= x_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + x_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_3 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + x_4 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 0 \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \\
&= t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}}$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Basic variables must remain non-negative.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Basic variables must remain non-negative.

$$x_1 = 2 - t \geq 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad t \leq \frac{2}{1}$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Basic variables must remain non-negative.

$$x_1 = 2 - t \geq 0 \quad \Longrightarrow \quad t \leq \tfrac{2}{1}$$

$$x_4 = 5 - t \geq 0 \quad \Longrightarrow \quad t \leq \tfrac{5}{1}$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0 & 1 & 3 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\5\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}x_1\\x_4\end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\5\end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1\\1\end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Basic variables must remain non-negative.

$$x_1 = 2 - t \geq 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad t \leq \tfrac{2}{1}$$

$$x_4 = 5 - t \geq 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad t \leq \tfrac{5}{1}$$

Thus, the largest possible $t = \min\left\{\frac{2}{1}, \frac{5}{1}\right\}$.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is a basis

$x_2 = t \geq 0$, $x_3 = 0$

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}}_{x_B} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} - t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A_2}$$

Choose $t \geq 0$ as large as possible.

Basic variables must remain non-negative.

$$x_1 = 2 - t \geq 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad t \leq \tfrac{2}{1}$$

$$x_4 = 5 - t \geq 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad t \leq \tfrac{5}{1}$$

Thus, the largest possible $t = \min\left\{\frac{2}{1}, \frac{5}{1}\right\}$.

The new feasible solution is $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$. It has value $2 > 0$.

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

Remark

The new feasible solution $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ is a basic solution.

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Remark

The new feasible solution $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ is a basic solution.

Question

For what basis B is $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ a basic solution?

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix}0 & 1 & 3 & 0\end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 5\end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Remark

The new feasible solution $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ is a basic solution.

Question

For what basis B is $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_2 \neq 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad 2 \in B$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 1 & 3 & 0\end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 5\end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

Remark

The new feasible solution $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ is a basic solution.

Question

For what basis B is $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_2 \neq 0 \Rightarrow 2 \in B$

$x_4 \neq 0 \Rightarrow 4 \in B$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 1 & 3 & 0\end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}2 \\ 5\end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

Remark

The new feasible solution $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ is a basic solution.

Question

For what basis B is $x = (0, 2, 0, 3)^\top$ a basic solution?

$$x_2 \neq 0 \Rightarrow 2 \in B$$
$$x_4 \neq 0 \Rightarrow 4 \in B$$

As $|B| = 2$, $B = \{2, 4\}$.

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

$\Downarrow$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max \quad (0 \quad 1 \quad 3 \quad 0)x \\
&\text{s.t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\
&\qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

NEW

$\{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{2, 4\}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

NEW

$\{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{2, 4\}$

$$\max \quad (0 \quad 1 \quad 3 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

$$\Downarrow$$

$$\max \quad (-1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 0)x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

NEW

$\{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{2, 4\}$

Remark

We only need to know how to go from the OLD basis to a NEW basis!

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

NEW

$\{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{2, 4\}$

Remark

We only need to know how to go from the OLD basis to a NEW basis!

- 2 entered the basis.

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (0 \quad 1 \quad 3 \quad 0)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (-1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 0)x + 2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

NEW

$\{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{2, 4\}$

Remark

We only need to know how to go from the OLD basis to a NEW basis!

- 2 entered the basis.
- 1 left the basis.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

OLD

$\{1,4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1,4\}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

NEW

$\{2,4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{2,4\}$

Remark

We only need to know how to go from the OLD basis to a NEW basis!

- 2 entered the basis.
- 1 left the basis.

WHY?

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

Pick $2 \notin B$ and set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

Pick $2 \notin B$ and set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

$\Longrightarrow$ 2 enters the basis

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (0 \quad 1 \quad 3 \quad 0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

Pick $2 \notin B$ and set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

➡ 2 enters the basis

Set $\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

Pick $2 \notin B$ and set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

➡ 2 enters the basis

Set $\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $t = \min\left\{\frac{2}{1}, \frac{5}{1}\right\} = 2$.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{array}
$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

Pick $2 \notin B$ and set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

➡ 2 enters the basis

Set $\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $t = \min\left\{\frac{2}{1}, \frac{5}{1}\right\} = 2$.

➡ $x_1 = 0$ and 1 leaves the basis

$$\max \quad (0 \quad 1 \quad 3 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

OLD

$\{1, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4\}$

Pick $2 \notin B$ and set $x_2 = t \geq 0$.

➡ 2 enters the basis

Set $\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $t = \min \left\{ \frac{2}{1}, \frac{5}{1} \right\} = 2$.

➡ $x_1 = 0$ and 1 leaves the basis

The NEW basis is $\{2, 4\}$.

Example – Continued

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0\\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\ 3\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$$x_3 = t$$

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0\\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\3\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ⟹ 3 enters the basis

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ $\Longrightarrow$ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ $\Longrightarrow$ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0\\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\3\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ➡ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix}x_2\\x_4\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}2\\3\end{pmatrix} - t\begin{pmatrix}2\\-1\end{pmatrix}$$

$t = \min\left\{\frac{2}{2}, -\right\} = 2$ thus $x_2 = 0$

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ➡ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$t = \min\left\{\frac{2}{2}, -\right\} = 2$ thus $x_2 = 0$ ➡ 2 leaves the basis

Example – Continued

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0 & 1 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 2$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 2 & 0\\ -1 & 0 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}2\\ 3\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{2, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t \quad \Rightarrow \quad 3$ enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix}x_2\\ x_4\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}2\\ 3\end{pmatrix} - t\begin{pmatrix}2\\ -1\end{pmatrix}$$

$t = \min\left\{\frac{2}{2}, -\right\} = 2$ thus $x_2 = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad 2$ leaves the basis

The NEW basis is $B = \{3, 4\}$.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} -1.5 & -0.5 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1.5 & -0.5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 4\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{3, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ is a basic solution

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1.5 & -0.5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 4\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{3, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ is a basic solution

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$: $???$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1.5 & -0.5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 4\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{3, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ is a basic solution

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$: $???$

Claim

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ has value 3. It is optimal because 3 is an upper bound.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1.5 & -0.5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 4\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{3, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ is a basic solution

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$: $???$

Claim

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ has value 3. It is optimal because 3 is an upper bound.

Proof

$$\max \quad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}-1.5 & -0.5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 4\end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{3, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ is a basic solution

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$: ???

Claim

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ has value 3. It is optimal because 3 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x be a feasible solution.

$$\max \quad \underbrace{(-1.5 \quad -0.5 \quad 0 \quad 0)}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{3, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ is a basic solution

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$: $???$

Claim

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ has value 3. It is optimal because 3 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x be a feasible solution. Then

$$\underbrace{(-1.5,\ 0.5,\ 0,\ 0)}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \underbrace{x}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} + 3$$

$$\max \quad \underbrace{(-1.5 \quad -0.5 \quad 0 \quad 0)}_{c} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0.5 & 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ -0.5 & 0.5 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{b}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$B = \{3, 4\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for B

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ is a basic solution

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$: $???$

Claim

$(0, 0, 1, 4)^\top$ has value 3. It is optimal because 3 is an upper bound.

Proof

Let x be a feasible solution. Then

$$\underbrace{(-1.5,\ 0.5,\ 0,\ 0)}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \underbrace{x}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} + 3 \leq 3.$$

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$$x_3 = t$$

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ➡ 3 enters the basis

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t \Rightarrow$ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t \Rightarrow$ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ➡ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$t = \min\left\{\tfrac{1}{1}, -, -\right\} = 1$$

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ➡ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$t = \min\left\{\frac{1}{1}, -, -\right\} = 1$ thus $x_1 = 0$

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ➡ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$t = \min\left\{\frac{1}{1}, -, -\right\} = 1$ thus $x_1 = 0$ ➡ 1 leaves the basis

Another Example

$$\max \quad (0 \quad -4 \quad 3 \quad 0 \quad 0)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_3 = t$ ➡ 3 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$t = \min\left\{\frac{1}{1}, -, -\right\} = 1$ thus $x_1 = 0$ ➡ 1 leaves the basis

The NEW basis is $B = \{3, 4, 5\}$.

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{3, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{3, 4, 5\}$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix}-3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}x + 3 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{3, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{3, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$$\begin{array}{|l|}\hline \max \quad \begin{pmatrix}-3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix}x + 3 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}1 \\ 4 \\ 4\end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$\{3, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{3, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$$x_2 = t$$

$$\max \quad (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{3, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{3, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_2 = t$ $\Longrightarrow$ 2 enters the basis

$$\max \quad (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{3, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{3, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_2 = t$ $\Rightarrow$ 2 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 3 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$\{3, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{3, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_2 = t$ ➡ 2 <u>enters</u> the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Choose $t =???$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

$\{3, 4, 5\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{3, 4, 5\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$x_2 = t$ ⟹ 2 enters the basis

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$
\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}
$$

Choose $t =$???

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

$$\max \quad z = (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\max \quad z = (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

$$\max \quad z = (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

Proof

$$\max \quad z = (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

Proof

$$x(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ t \\ 1 + 2t \\ 4 + t \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} =$$

$$\max \quad z = (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

Proof

$$x(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ t \\ 1+2t \\ 4+t \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=r}$$

$$\max \quad z = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

Proof

$$x(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ t \\ 1+2t \\ 4+t \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=r}$$

- $x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.

$$\max \quad z = (-3 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0)x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

Proof

$$x(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ t \\ 1+2t \\ 4+t \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=r}$$

- $x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.
- $z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$.

$$\max \quad z = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 3$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$$x_2 = t$$

$$x_1 = 0$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Claim

The linear program is unbounded.

Proof

$$x(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ t \\ 1+2t \\ 4+t \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\bar{x}} + t \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=r}$$

- $x(t)$ is feasible for all $t \geq 0$.
- $z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$.

($\bar{x}, r$: certificate of unboundedness.)

The Simplex Algorithm

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

<u>INPUT:</u>

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

<u>INPUT:</u> a feasible basis B.

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}}$$

INPUT: a feasible basis B.

OUTPUT:

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

<u>INPUT:</u> a feasible basis B.

<u>OUTPUT:</u> an optimal solution OR

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

INPUT: a feasible basis B.

OUTPUT: an optimal solution OR it detects that the LP is unbounded.

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

<u>INPUT:</u> a feasible basis B.

<u>OUTPUT:</u> an optimal solution OR it detects that the LP is unbounded.

Step 1. Rewrite in canonical form for the basis B.

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

<u>INPUT:</u> a feasible basis B.

<u>OUTPUT:</u> an optimal solution OR it detects that the LP is unbounded.

Step 1. Rewrite in canonical form for the basis B.

Step 2. Find a better basis B or get required outcome.

The Simplex Algorithm

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

<u>INPUT:</u> a feasible basis B.

<u>OUTPUT:</u> an optimal solution OR it detects that the LP is unbounded.

Step 1. Rewrite in canonical form for the basis B.

Step 2. Find a better basis B or get required outcome.

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\max \quad z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad\quad x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ &\qquad\quad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}}$$

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis,

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$
\boxed{
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_B + A_N x_N = b \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
}
$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$.

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$.

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$.

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$.

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$.

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$.

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$.

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Choose $t = \min\left\{\frac{b_i}{A_{ik}} : \text{for all } i \text{ such that } A_{ik} > 0\right\}$.

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$.

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$.

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Choose $t = \min\left\{ \frac{b_i}{A_{ik}} : \text{for all } i \text{ such that } A_{ik} > 0 \right\}$.

Let x_r be a basic variable forced to 0.

Trying to Find a Better Basis

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_B + A_N x_N = b \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ is a basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$.

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$.

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Choose $t = \min\left\{\frac{b_i}{A_{ik}} : \text{for all } i \text{ such that } A_{ik} > 0\right\}$.

Let x_r be a basic variable forced to 0.

The new basis is obtained by having k enter and r leave.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_B + A_N x_N = b \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_B + A_N x_N = b \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

$\bar{x}_B = b$, $\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

$\bar{x}_B = b$, $\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}$.

$\bar{x}$ has value $z = c_N^\top \bar{x}_N + \bar{z} = \bar{z}$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

$\bar{x}_B = b$, $\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}$.

$\bar{x}$ has value $z = c_N^\top \bar{x}_N + \bar{z} = \bar{z}$.

Let x be a feasible solution.

$$z =$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

$\bar{x}_B = b$, $\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}$.

$\bar{x}$ has value $z = c_N^\top \bar{x}_N + \bar{z} = \bar{z}$.

Let x be a feasible solution.

$$z = \underbrace{c_N^\top}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \underbrace{x_N}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} + \bar{z}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll}\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0}\end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $c_N \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The basic solution $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

$\bar{x}_B = b$, $\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}$.

$\bar{x}$ has value $z = c_N^\top \bar{x}_N + \bar{z} = \bar{z}$.

Let x be a feasible solution.

$$z = \underbrace{c_N^\top}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \underbrace{x_N}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} + \bar{z} \leq \bar{z}.$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

$$\begin{array}{ll}\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0}\end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$,

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$x_B = b - tA_k =$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$$x_B = b - tA_k = \underbrace{b}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} - \underbrace{t}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{A_k}_{\leq \mathbf{0}}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$$x_B = b - tA_k = \underbrace{b}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} - \underbrace{t}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{A_k}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \geq \mathbf{0}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$$x_B = b - tA_k = \underbrace{b}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} - \underbrace{t}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{A_k}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \geq \mathbf{0}$$

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& x_B + A_N x_N = b \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$$x_B = b - tA_k = \underbrace{b}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} - \underbrace{t}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{A_k}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \geq \mathbf{0}$$

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$:

$z = \sum_{j \in N} c_j x_j + \bar{z}$

$$\begin{array}{ll}\max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0}\end{array}$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$$x_B = b - tA_k = \underbrace{b}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} - \underbrace{t}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{A_k}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \geq \mathbf{0}$$

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$:

$$z = \sum_{j \in N} c_j x_j + \bar{z} = c_k x_k + \bar{z}$$

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = c_N^\top x_N + \bar{z} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}
$$

B is a feasible basis, $N = \{j \notin B\}$

Canonical form for B

$\bar{x}$ basic solution

If $A_k \leq \mathbf{0}$, then STOP. The LP is unbounded.

Proof

x is feasible for all $t \geq 0$:

$x_k = t \geq 0$, all other non-basic variables have value zero.

$$x_B = b - tA_k = \underbrace{b}_{\geq \mathbf{0}} - \underbrace{t}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{A_k}_{\leq \mathbf{0}} \geq \mathbf{0}$$

$z \to \infty$ when $t \to \infty$:

$$z = \sum_{j \in N} c_j x_j + \bar{z} = c_k x_k + \bar{z} = \underbrace{c_k}_{>0} t + \bar{x}.$$

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED!

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem:

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem: Start with a feasible basis B_1,

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem: Start with a feasible basis B_1,

$$B_1 \rightsquigarrow B_2$$

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem: Start with a feasible basis B_1,

$$B_1 \rightsquigarrow B_2 \rightsquigarrow B_3$$

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem: Start with a feasible basis B_1,

$$B_1 \rightsquigarrow B_2 \rightsquigarrow B_3 \rightsquigarrow \ldots \rightsquigarrow B_{k-1}$$

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem: Start with a feasible basis B_1,

$$B_1 \rightsquigarrow B_2 \rightsquigarrow B_3 \rightsquigarrow \ldots \rightsquigarrow B_{k-1} \rightsquigarrow B_k = B_1$$

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem: Start with a feasible basis B_1,

$$\underbrace{B_1 \rightsquigarrow B_2 \rightsquigarrow B_3 \rightsquigarrow \dots \rightsquigarrow B_{k-1} \rightsquigarrow B_k = B_1}_{\text{Cycling}}$$

Proposition

Simplex tells the truth:

- If it claims the LP is unbounded, it is unbounded.
- If it claims the solution is optimal, it is optimal.

Question

Is the Simplex a correct algorithm?

NOT AS STATED! IT MAY NOT TERMINATE!

Potential problem: Start with a feasible basis B_1,

$$\underbrace{B_1 \rightsquigarrow B_2 \rightsquigarrow B_3 \rightsquigarrow \ldots \rightsquigarrow B_{k-1} \rightsquigarrow B_k = B_1}_{\text{Cycling}}$$

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Bland's rule

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Bland's rule

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Definition

Bland's rule is as follows:

Bland's rule

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Definition

Bland's rule is as follows:

- If we have a choice for the element <u>entering</u> the basis,

Bland's rule

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Definition

Bland's rule is as follows:

- If we have a choice for the element entering the basis, pick the smallest one.

Bland's rule

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Definition

Bland's rule is as follows:

- If we have a choice for the element entering the basis, pick the smallest one.
- If we have a choice for the element leaving the basis,

Bland's rule

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Definition

Bland's rule is as follows:

- If we have a choice for the element entering the basis, pick the smallest one.
- If we have a choice for the element leaving the basis, pick the smallest one.

Bland's rule

Theorem

If we use Bland's Rule, then the Simplex algorithm always terminates.

Definition

Bland's rule is as follows:

- If we have a choice for the element entering the basis, pick the smallest one.
- If we have a choice for the element leaving the basis, pick the smallest one.

Let us see an example...

$$\max \quad (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 3)x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\tfrac{6}{2}, \tfrac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\frac{6}{2}, \frac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

Pick $r \in B$ such that $x_r = 0$:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\tfrac{6}{2}, \tfrac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

Pick $r \in B$ such that $x_r = 0$:

Choices $r = 1$

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\tfrac{6}{2}, \tfrac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

Pick $r \in B$ such that $x_r = 0$:

Choices $r = 1$ OR

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\tfrac{6}{2}, \tfrac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

Pick $r \in B$ such that $x_r = 0$:

Choices $r = 1$ OR $r = 2$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\tfrac{6}{2}, \tfrac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

Pick $r \in B$ such that $x_r = 0$:

Choices $r = 1$ OR $r = 2$.

Bland's rule says

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (0 \quad 0 \quad 2 \quad 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0 \end{array}$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\frac{6}{2}, \frac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

Pick $r \in B$ such that $x_r = 0$:

Choices $r = 1$ OR $r = 2$.

Bland's rule says pick $r = 1$ (leaving element).

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 6 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4 \geq 0$$

$\{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis

Canonical form for $\{1, 2\}$

Pick $k \notin B$ such that $c_k > 0$ and set $x_k = t$:

Choices $k = 3$ OR $k = 4$.

Bland's rule says pick $k = 3$ (entering element).

Pick $x_B = b - tA_k$:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} - t \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t = \min\left\{\tfrac{6}{2}, \tfrac{12}{4}\right\} = 3$$

Pick $r \in B$ such that $x_r = 0$:

Choices $r = 1$ OR $r = 2$.

Bland's rule says pick $r = 1$ (leaving element).

The NEW basis is $B = \{3, 4\}$.

Recap

Recap

- We have seen a formal description of the Simplex algorithm.

Recap

- We have seen a formal description of the Simplex algorithm.
- We showed that if the algorithm terminates, then it is correct.

Recap

- We have seen a formal description of the Simplex algorithm.
- We showed that if the algorithm terminates, then it is correct.
- We defined Bland's rule and asserted, without proof, that Simplex terminates as long as we are using Bland's rule.

Recap

- We have seen a formal description of the Simplex algorithm.
- We showed that if the algorithm terminates, then it is correct.
- We defined Bland's rule and asserted, without proof, that Simplex terminates as long as we are using Bland's rule.
- To get started, we need to get a feasible basis.

Recap

- We have seen a formal description of the Simplex algorithm.
- We showed that if the algorithm terminates, then it is correct.
- We defined Bland's rule and asserted, without proof, that Simplex terminates as long as we are using Bland's rule.
- To get started, we need to get a feasible basis.

  To do: Find a procedure to find a feasible basis.

Module 2: Linear Programs (Finding a Feasible Solution)

The Problem

Consider

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}.$$

The Problem

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}.$$

To run Simplex, we need a feasible basis.

The Problem

Consider

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}.$$

To run Simplex, we need a feasible basis.

Question

How do we find a feasible basis?

The Problem

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}.$$

To run Simplex, we need a feasible basis.

Question

How do we find a feasible basis?

An easier question,

The Problem

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}.$$

To run Simplex, we need a feasible basis.

Question

How do we find a feasible basis?

An easier question,

Question

How do we find a feasible solution?

The Problem

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}.$$

To run Simplex, we need a feasible basis.

Question

How do we find a feasible basis?

An easier question,

Question

How do we find a feasible solution?

These two questions are equivalent.

The Problem

Consider

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}.$$

To run Simplex, we need a feasible basis.

Question

How do we find a feasible basis?

An easier question,

Question

How do we find a feasible solution?

These two questions are equivalent.

Exercise

There is an algorithm that, given a feasible solution, finds a feasible basis.

The Problem

Consider

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}.$$

To run Simplex, we need a feasible basis.

Question

How do we find a feasible basis?

An easier question,

Question

How do we find a feasible solution?

These two questions are equivalent.

Exercise

There is an algorithm that, given a feasible solution, finds a feasible basis.

$\Longrightarrow$ We will focus on the second question.

The Key Idea

The Key Idea

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

The Key Idea

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Algorithm 1

INPUT: A, b, c, and a feasible solution

OUTPUT: Optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

The Key Idea

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Algorithm 1

<u>INPUT:</u> A, b, c, and a feasible solution

<u>OUTPUT:</u> Optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

OK
Simplex +
exercise

The Key Idea

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Algorithm 1
<u>INPUT:</u> A, b, c, and a feasible solution
<u>OUTPUT:</u> Optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

OK
Simplex +
exercise

Algorithm 2
<u>INPUT:</u> A, b, c.
<u>OUTPUT:</u> Feasible solution/detect there is none.

The Key Idea

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Algorithm 1

<u>INPUT:</u> A, b, c, and a feasible solution

<u>OUTPUT:</u> Optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

OK
Simplex +
exercise

Algorithm 2

<u>INPUT:</u> A, b, c.

<u>OUTPUT:</u> Feasible solution/detect there is none.

HOW?

The Key Idea

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Algorithm 1

<u>INPUT:</u> A, b, c, and a feasible solution

<u>OUTPUT:</u> Optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

OK
Simplex +
exercise

Algorithm 2

<u>INPUT:</u> A, b, c.

<u>OUTPUT:</u> Feasible solution/detect there is none.

HOW?

We will show that...

The Key Idea

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Algorithm 1	
INPUT:	A, b, c, and a feasible solution
OUTPUT:	Optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

OK
Simplex +
exercise

Algorithm 2	
INPUT:	A, b, c.
OUTPUT:	Feasible solution/detect there is none.

HOW?

We will show that...

Proposition

We can use Algorithm 1 to get Algorithm 2.

A First Example

A First Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (1,2,-1,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & -9 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -13 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

A First Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (1,2,-1,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & -9 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -13 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Remark

It does not depend on the objective function.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & -9 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & -9 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & -9 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\min \quad x_5 + x_6$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\min \quad x_5 + x_6 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\min \quad x_5 + x_6$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Remark

The auxiliary problem is

<u>Problem:</u> Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

min $x_5 + x_6$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x \geq \mathbf{0}$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Remark

The auxiliary problem is

- feasible, since $(0,0,0,0,7,13)^\top$ is a solution, and

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & x_5 + x_6 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Remark

The auxiliary problem is

- feasible, since $(0, 0, 0, 0, 7, 13)^\top$ is a solution, and
- bounded, as 0 is the lower bound.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & x_5 + x_6 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Remark

The auxiliary problem is

- feasible, since $(0, 0, 0, 0, 7, 13)^\top$ is a solution, and
- bounded, as 0 is the lower bound.

Therefore, the auxiliary problem has an optimal solution.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\min \quad x_5 + x_6 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & x_5 + x_6 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(2, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem,

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & x_5 + x_6 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(2, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem,

since $x_5 = x_6 = 0$.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & x_5 + x_6 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 9 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

x_5, x_6 are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(2, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem,

since $x_5 = x_6 = 0$.

Therefore, $(2, 1, 0, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution to $(\star)$.

A Second Example

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative.

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

x_4, x_5 are the auxiliary variables

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

x_4, x_5 are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} &\min \quad z = x_4 + x_5 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

x_4, x_5 are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem.

A Second Example

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\min \quad z = x_4 + x_5 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}}$$

x_4, x_5 are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem.

However, $(0, 0, 1)^\top$ is NOT a solution to $(\star)$.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

$$\begin{array}{|l|}\hline \min \quad z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$

optimal value $= 0 + 3 = 3$.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$\min \quad z = x_4 + x_5$ s.t. $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ $x \geq \mathbf{0}$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$

optimal value $= 0 + 3 = 3$.

Claim

$(\star)$ does not have a solution.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$

optimal value $= 0 + 3 = 3$.

Claim

$(\star)$ does not have a solution.

Proof

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$

optimal value $= 0 + 3 = 3$.

Claim

$(\star)$ does not have a solution.

Proof

Suppose, for a contradiction, $(\star)$ has a solution x'_1, x'_2, x'_3.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\min \quad z = x_4 + x_5 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$

optimal value $= 0 + 3 = 3$.

Claim

$(\star)$ does not have a solution.

Proof

Suppose, for a contradiction, $(\star)$ has a solution x'_1, x'_2, x'_3.

Then, $(x'_1, x'_2, x'_3, 0, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution to the auxiliary problem,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(0, 0, 1, 0, 3)^\top$

optimal value $= 0 + 3 = 3$.

Claim

$(\star)$ does not have a solution.

Proof

Suppose, for a contradiction, $(\star)$ has a solution x'_1, x'_2, x'_3.

Then, $(x'_1, x'_2, x'_3, 0, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution to the auxiliary problem,

but that solution has of value 0. This is a contradiction.

Formalize

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} A & \mid & I \end{pmatrix} x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \left(\begin{array}{c|c} A & I \end{array} \right) x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}$ are the auxiliary variables

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} A & \mid & I \end{pmatrix} x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}$ are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \left(\begin{array}{c|c} A & I \end{array} \right) x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}$ are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem.

Formalize

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \left(\begin{array}{c|c} A & I \end{array} \right) x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}$ are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem.

Proposition

If $z = 0$, then $(x_1, \ldots, x_n)^\top$ is a solution to $(\star)$.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} A & \vert & I \end{pmatrix} x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}$ are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem.

Proposition

If $z = 0$, then $(x_1, \ldots, x_n)^\top$ is a solution to ($\star$).

Proof

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} A & \mid & I \end{pmatrix} x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}$ are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem.

Proposition

If $z = 0$, then $(x_1, \ldots, x_n)^\top$ is a solution to ($\star$).

Proof

When $z = 0$, we must have $x_{n+1} = \ldots = x_{n+m} = 0$.

Problem: Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that b is non-negative.

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem (A $m \times n$ matrix).

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \left(\quad A \quad \middle| \quad I \quad \right) x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m}$ are the auxiliary variables

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Algorithm 1.

$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$ is an optimal solution to the auxiliary problem.

Proposition

When $z > 0$, then $(\star)$ has no solution.

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \left(\; A \; \middle| \; I \; \right) x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution

$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$

Proposition

When $z > 0$, then $(\star)$ has no solution.

$$Ax = b \quad \text{and} \quad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} A & | & I \end{pmatrix} x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution
$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$

Proposition

When $z > 0$, then $(\star)$ has no solution.

Proof

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} A & | & I \end{pmatrix} x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution
$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$

Proposition

When $z > 0$, then $(\star)$ has no solution.

Proof

Suppose, for a contradiction, $(\star)$ has a solution $x'_1, \ldots, x'_n$.

$$Ax = b \quad \text{and} \quad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \left(\begin{array}{c|c} A & I \end{array} \right) x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution
$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$

Proposition

When $z > 0$, then $(\star)$ has no solution.

Proof

Suppose, for a contradiction, $(\star)$ has a solution $x'_1, \ldots, x'_n$.

Then $(x'_1, \ldots, x'_n, 0, \ldots, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution to the auxiliary problem,

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \left(\quad A \quad \middle| \quad I \quad \right) x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution
$(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$

Proposition

When $z > 0$, then $(\star)$ has no solution.

Proof

Suppose, for a contradiction, $(\star)$ has a solution $x'_1, \ldots, x'_n$.

Then $(x'_1, \ldots, x'_n, 0, \ldots, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution to the auxiliary problem,

but that solution has of value 0.

$$Ax = b \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \tag{$\star$}$$

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \min & z = x_{n+1} + \ldots + x_{n+m} \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} A & \mid & I \end{pmatrix} x = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

the auxiliary problem

optimal solution $(x_1, \ldots, x_n, x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+m})^\top$

Proposition

When $z > 0$, then ($\star$) has no solution.

Proof

Suppose, for a contradiction, ($\star$) has a solution $x'_1, \ldots, x'_n$.

Then $(x'_1, \ldots, x'_n, 0, \ldots, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution to the auxiliary problem,

but that solution has of value 0. This is a contradiction.

The 2-Phase Method

The 2-Phase Method

To solve

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\},$$

The 2-Phase Method

To solve

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\},$$

we proceed in two phases:

The 2-Phase Method

To solve

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\},$$

we proceed in two phases:

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist.

The 2-Phase Method

To solve

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\},$$

we proceed in two phases:

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist.

Phase 2. Given that feasible solution:
find an optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

The 2-Phase Method

To solve

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\},$$

we proceed in two phases:

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist.

Phase 2. Given that feasible solution:
find an optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

Example

Solve the following LP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (1,1,1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative.

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad z = x_4 + x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

NOT in SEF

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\max \quad z = -x_4 - x_5$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\max \quad z = -x_4 - x_5$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

In SEF

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1\\ 1 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\max \quad z = -x_4 - x_5$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\ 4\end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$\max \quad z = -x_4 - x_5$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & z = -x_4 - x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

To rewrite $B = \{4, 5\}$ in canonical form, you can

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = -x_4 - x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

To rewrite $B = \{4, 5\}$ in canonical form, you can

- use the formulae, OR

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} &\max \quad z = -x_4 - x_5 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

To rewrite $B = \{4, 5\}$ in canonical form, you can

- use the formulae, OR
- notice $A_B = I$ and rewrite the objective function as follows...

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \quad z = -x_4 - x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

$$z = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1\\ 1 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = -x_4 - x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\4\end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

$$\begin{aligned} z &= (0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad -1 \quad -1)x \\ 0 &= (1 \quad 2 \quad -1 \quad 1 \quad 0)x - 4 \end{aligned}$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & z = -x_4 - x_5 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

$$\begin{array}{rcllllllll} z & = & (0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & -1)x & & \\ 0 & = & (1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0)x & - & 4 \\ 0 & = & (1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1)x & - & 4 \end{array}$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1\\ 1 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\max \quad z = -x_4 - x_5$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\4\end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

NOT in canonical form

$$\begin{array}{rcllllll}
z & = & (0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & -1)x & \\
0 & = & (1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0)x & - \quad 4\\
0 & = & (1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1)x & - \quad 4\\
\hline
z & = & (2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0)x & - \quad 8
\end{array}$$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\max \quad z = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - 8$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & z = (2 \ \ 1 \ \ 0 \ \ 0 \ \ 0) - 8 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

canonical form for B

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\begin{aligned} &\max \quad z = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} - 8 \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

canonical form for B

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Simplex, starting from B.

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1\\ 1 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\max \quad z = (2 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0) - 8$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}4\\4\end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

canonical form for B

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Simplex, starting from B.

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is an optimal basis with the basic solution $(4, 0, 0, 0, 0)^\top$.

Phase 1. Find a feasible solution/detect none exist for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \text{and} \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \qquad (\star)$$

Step 1. Multiply the equations such that the RHS is non-negative. OK

Step 2. Construct the auxiliary problem.

$$\max \quad z = (2 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 0) - 8$$

s.t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

In SEF

feasible basis $B = \{4, 5\}$

canonical form for B

Step 3. Solve the auxiliary problem using Simplex, starting from B.

$B = \{1, 4\}$ is an optimal basis with the basic solution $(4, 0, 0, 0, 0)^\top$.

$z = 0$ implies that $(4, 0, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for $(\star)$.

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Phase 1. $(4, 0, 0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2, -1, 2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

Remark

$(4, 0, 0)^\top$ is a basic solution.

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

Remark

$(4,0,0)^\top$ is a basic solution.

Exercise

Show that this will always be the case!

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & (2,-1,2)x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \\
& \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}$$

Question

For what basis, B, is $x = (4,0,0)^\top$ a basic solution?

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

Question

For what basis, B, is $x = (4,0,0)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_1 \neq 0$

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Question

For what basis, B, is $x = (4,0,0)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_1 \neq 0 \Longrightarrow 1 \in B$

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}&\max \quad (2,-1,2)x\\ &\text{s.t.}\\ &\qquad \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 2 & -1\\ 1 & -1 & 1\end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix}1\\3\end{pmatrix}\\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}\end{aligned}}$$

Question

For what basis, B, is $x = (4,0,0)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_1 \neq 0 \Longrightarrow 1 \in B$

Cardinality of maximal set of independent columns of $A =$
Cardinality of maximal set of independent rows of $A = 2$

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Question

For what basis, B, is $x = (4,0,0)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_1 \neq 0 \Longrightarrow 1 \in B$

Cardinality of maximal set of independent columns of $A =$
Cardinality of maximal set of independent rows of $A = 2$

Thus, for some $i \in \{2,3\}$, columns 1 and i of A are independent.

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Question

For what basis, B, is $x = (4,0,0)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_1 \neq 0 \Longrightarrow 1 \in B$

Cardinality of maximal set of independent columns of $A =$
Cardinality of maximal set of independent rows of $A = 2$

Thus, for some $i \in \{2,3\}$, columns 1 and i of A are independent.

In this case, we can pick $i = 2$.

Phase 1. $(4,0,0)^\top$ is a feasible solution for

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,-1,2)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

Question

For what basis, B, is $x = (4,0,0)^\top$ a basic solution?

$x_1 \neq 0 \Longrightarrow 1 \in B$

Cardinality of maximal set of independent columns of $A =$
Cardinality of maximal set of independent rows of $A = 2$

Thus, for some $i \in \{2,3\}$, columns 1 and i of A are independent.

In this case, we can pick $i = 2$. In particular, $B = \{1,2\}$ is a basis.

Phase 2. Find an optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (1,1,1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

$B = \{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis (from Phase 1).

Phase 2. Find an optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (1,1,1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

$B = \{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis (from Phase 1).

We can now solve the problem using Simplex, starting from B.

Phase 2. Find an optimal solution/detect LP unbounded.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (1,1,1)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

$B = \{1, 2\}$ is a feasible basis (from Phase 1).

We can now solve the problem using Simplex, starting from B.

$\Rightarrow$

$x = (0, 8, 12)^\top$ is an optimal solution.

Consequences

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Proof

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Proof

Run 2-Phase method with Simplex using Bland's rule.

Consequences

Theorem

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Proof

Run 2-Phase method with Simplex using Bland's rule.
(Recall that Bland's rule ensures that Simplex terminates.)

Theorem

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Theorem

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0} \right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Remark

A finite number of basis implies a finite number of basic solutions.

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Remark

A finite number of basis implies a finite number of basic solutions.

If a LP has at least two feasible solutions and one optimal solution,

Theorem

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax = b, x \geq \mathbf{0}\right\}$$

Exactly one of the following holds for the LP:

(A) it is infeasible,

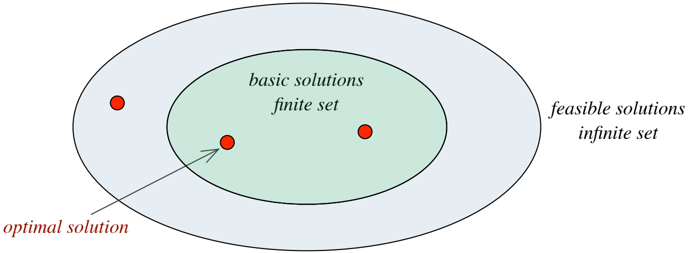
(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution that is basic.

Remark

A finite number of basis implies a finite number of basic solutions.

If a LP has at least two feasible solutions and one optimal solution,



Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP.

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP. Exactly one of the following holds:

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP. Exactly one of the following holds:

(A) it is infeasible,

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP. Exactly one of the following holds:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP. Exactly one of the following holds:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution.

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP. Exactly one of the following holds:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution.

Proof

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP. Exactly one of the following holds:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution.

Proof

Convert the LP into an equivalent LP in SEF.

Fundamental Theorem of Linear Programming

Consider an arbitrary LP. Exactly one of the following holds:

(A) it is infeasible,

(B) it is unbounded, or

(C) it has an optimal solution.

Proof

Convert the LP into an equivalent LP in SEF.

Apply the previous theorem.

Recap

Recap

- Using 2-Phase + the Simplex algorithm, we can solve arbitrary LPs.

Recap

- Using 2-Phase + the Simplex algorithm, we can solve arbitrary LPs.
- We proved the fundamental theorem of linear programming.

Recap

- Using 2-Phase + the Simplex algorithm, we can solve arbitrary LPs.
- We proved the fundamental theorem of linear programming.

We have given a bare bone version of the Simplex procedure.

Recap

- Using 2-Phase + the Simplex algorithm, we can solve arbitrary LPs.
- We proved the fundamental theorem of linear programming.

We have given a bare bone version of the Simplex procedure.

Careful implementation is key to having a practical algorithm.

Recap

- Using 2-Phase + the Simplex algorithm, we can solve arbitrary LPs.
- We proved the fundamental theorem of linear programming.

We have given a bare bone version of the Simplex procedure.

Careful implementation is key to having a practical algorithm.

If Simplex were a bike,

Recap

- Using 2-Phase + the Simplex algorithm, we can solve arbitrary LPs.
- We proved the fundamental theorem of linear programming.

We have given a bare bone version of the Simplex procedure.

Careful implementation is key to having a practical algorithm.

If Simplex were a bike,

Sergio Schnitzler/Hemera/Thinkstock

State of the art implementation

Recap

- Using 2-Phase + the Simplex algorithm, we can solve arbitrary LPs.
- We proved the fundamental theorem of linear programming.

We have given a bare bone version of the Simplex procedure.

Careful implementation is key to having a practical algorithm.

If Simplex were a bike,

Sergio Schnitzler/Hemera/Thinkstock

State of the art implementation

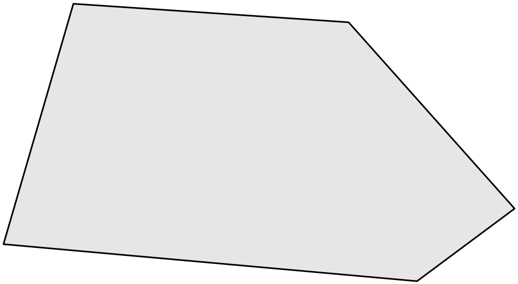
gamegfx/iStock/Thinkstock

Our implementation

Module 2: Linear Programs (Extreme Points)

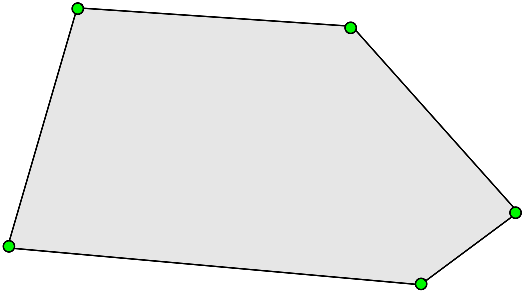
Extreme Points

Consider the following convex set:



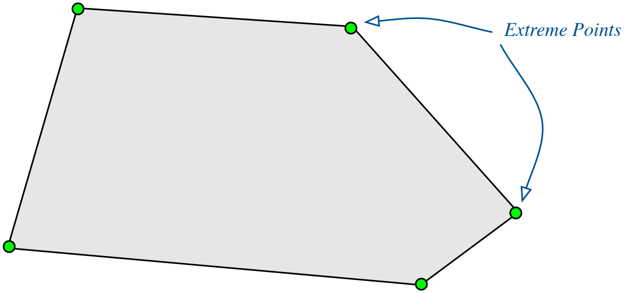
Extreme Points

Consider the following convex set:



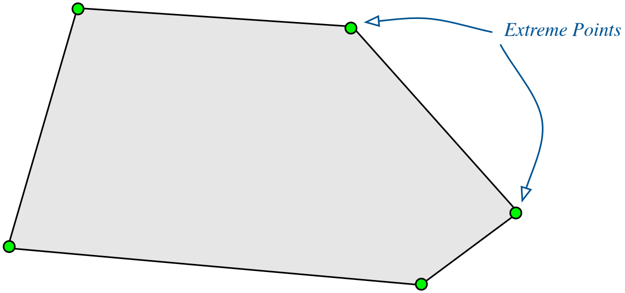
Extreme Points

Consider the following convex set:



Extreme Points

Consider the following convex set:



Question

How might we formally describe the “extreme points”?

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

- $x \in L$ and

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

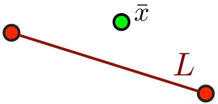
- $x \in L$ and
- x is distinct from the endpoints of L.

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

- $x \in L$ and
- x is distinct from the endpoints of L.



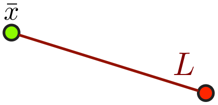
$\bar{x}$ is not contained in L.

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

- $x \in L$ and
- x is distinct from the endpoints of L.



$\bar{x}$ is contained in L,

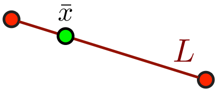
but NOT properly.

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

- $x \in L$ and
- x is distinct from the endpoints of L.



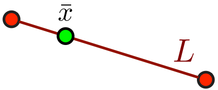
$\bar{x}$ is PROPERLY contained in L.

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

- $x \in L$ and
- x is distinct from the endpoints of L.



$\bar{x}$ is PROPERLY contained in L.

Definition

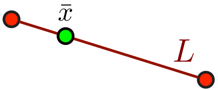
Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$.

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

- $x \in L$ and
- x is distinct from the endpoints of L.



$\bar{x}$ is PROPERLY contained in L.

Definition

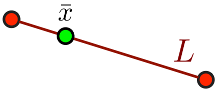
Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if

Towards a Definition of Extreme Points

Definition

Point $x \in \Re^n$ is properly contained in the line segment L if

- $x \in L$ and
- x is distinct from the endpoints of L.



$\bar{x}$ is PROPERLY contained in L.

Definition

Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.

Extreme Points - Examples

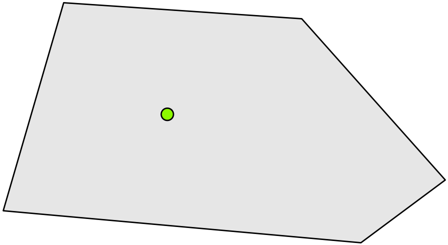
Definition

Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.

Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

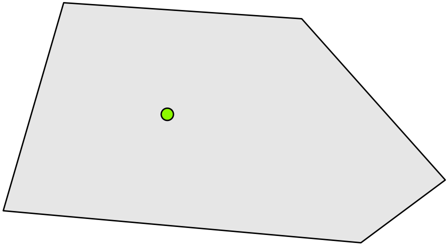
Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.



Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.

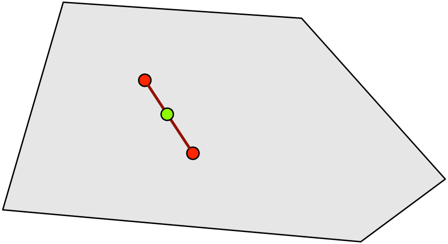


Not an extreme point

Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.

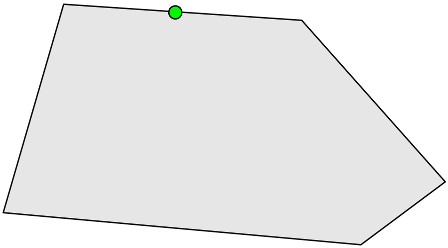


Not an extreme point

Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

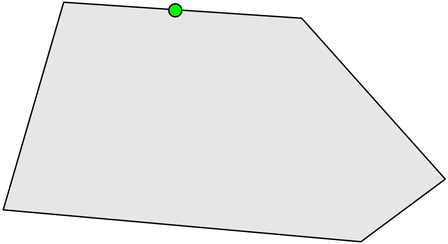
Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.



Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.

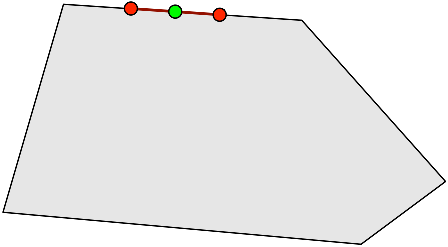


Not an extreme point

Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.

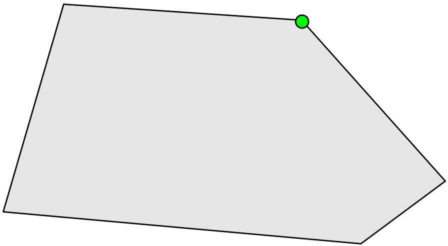


Not an extreme point

Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

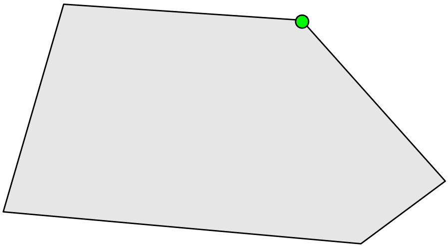
Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.



Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.

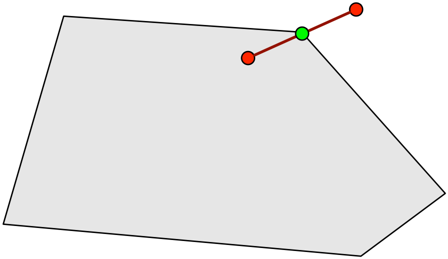


An extreme point

Extreme Points - Examples

Definition

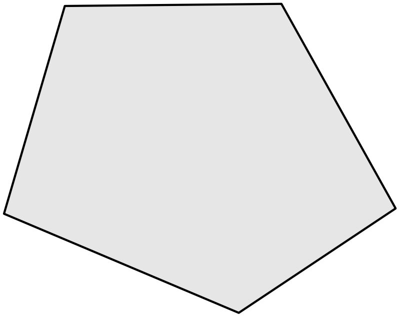
Let S be a convex set and $\bar{x} \in S$. Then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point if there exists a line segment $L \subseteq S$ where L properly contains $\bar{x}$.



An extreme point

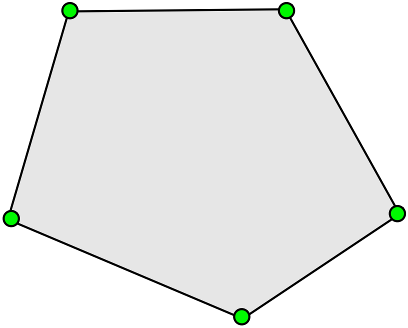
Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



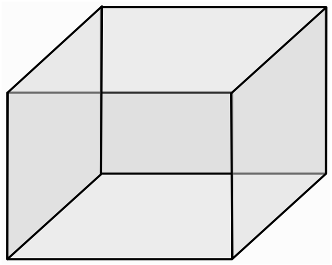
Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



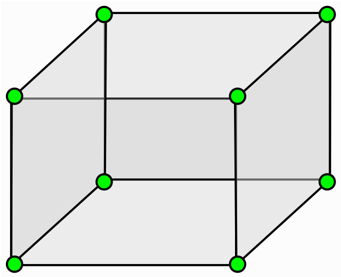
Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



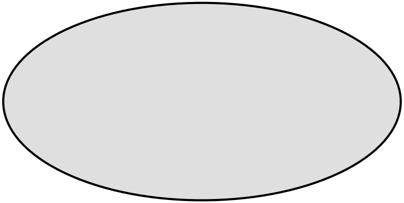
Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



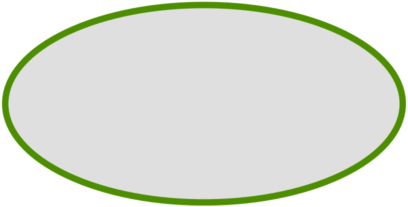
Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



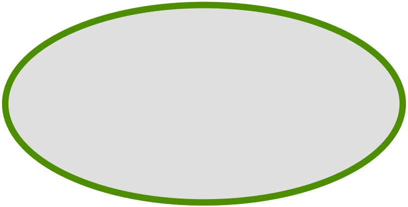
Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?

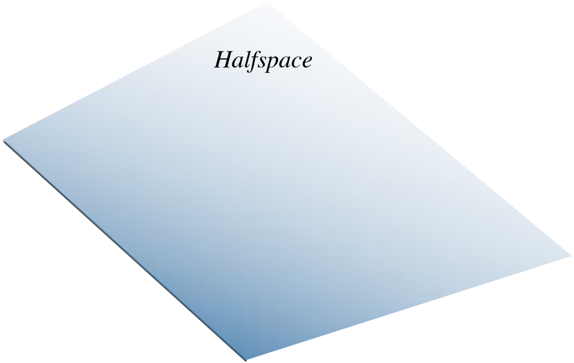


Remark

A convex set may have an infinite number of extreme points.

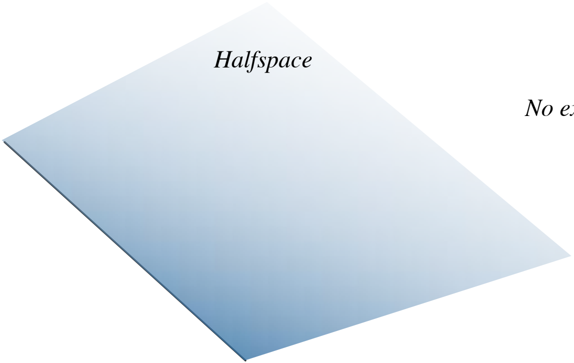
Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



Question

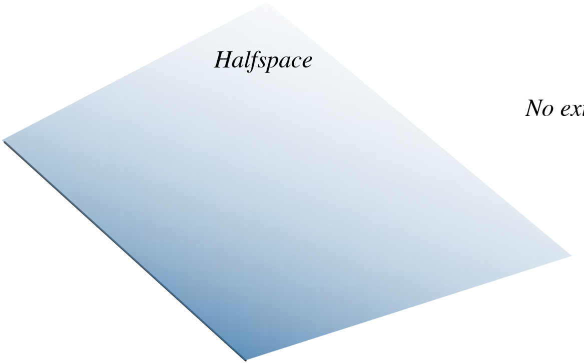
What are the extreme points in the following figure?



No extreme points !!!

Question

What are the extreme points in the following figure?



No extreme points !!!

Remark

A convex set may have NO extreme points.

This Lecture

This Lecture

Goals:

This Lecture

<u>Goals:</u>

1. Characterize the extreme points in a polyhedron.

This Lecture

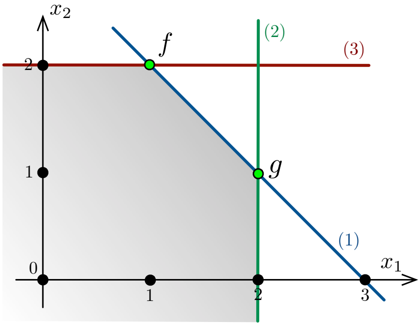
Goals:

1. Characterize the extreme points in a polyhedron.
2. Characterize an extreme point for LP in Standard Equality Form.

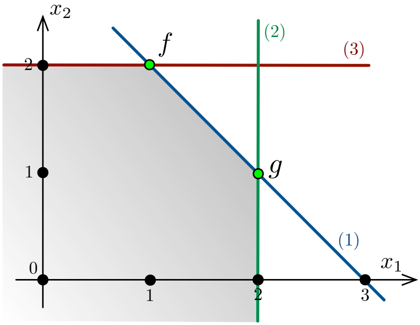
This Lecture

Goals:

1. Characterize the extreme points in a polyhedron.
2. Characterize an extreme point for LP in Standard Equality Form.
3. Gain a geometric understanding of the Simplex algorithm.



$$P = \left\{ x : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$



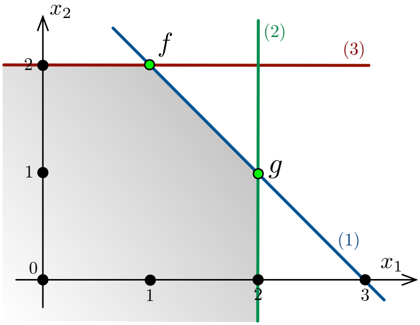
$$P = \left\{ x : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Question

What do the extreme points

$$f = (1,2)^\top \quad \text{and} \quad g = (2,1)^\top$$

have in common?



$$P = \left\{ x : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Question

What do the extreme points

$$f = (1, 2)^\top \quad \text{and} \quad g = (2, 1)^\top$$

have in common?

Each satisfy $n = 2$ "independent" constraints with equality!

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and

Definition

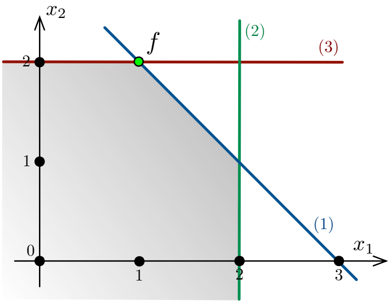
Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \le b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \le \bar{b}$.

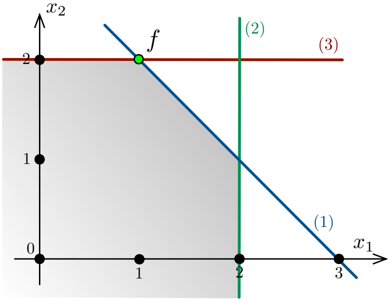


$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \le \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{array}{c} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{array} \right\}$$

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \le b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \le \bar{b}$.



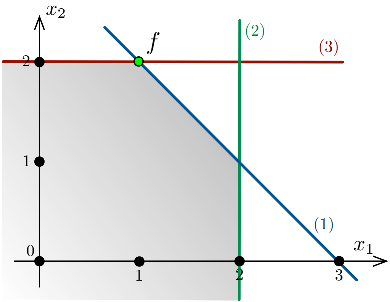
$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \le \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

$\boxed{\text{Consider } f\text{:}}$

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

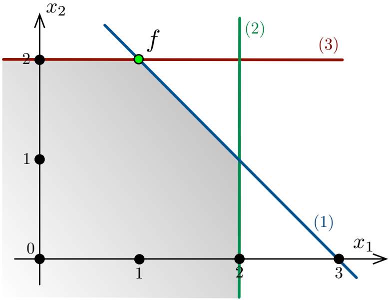
$\boxed{\text{Consider } f\text{:}}$

Here (1) and (3) are tight.

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

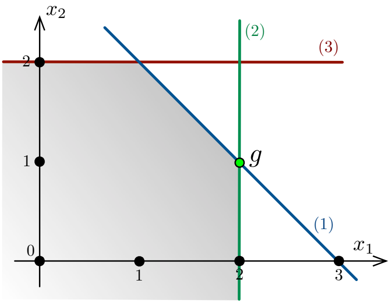
Consider f:

Here (1) and (3) are tight. $\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{A}} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{b}}$.

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.



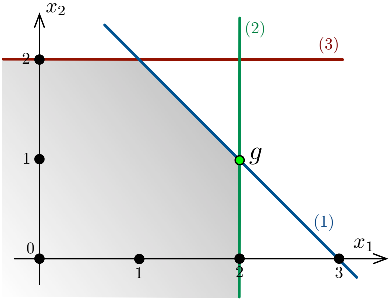
$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Consider g:

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

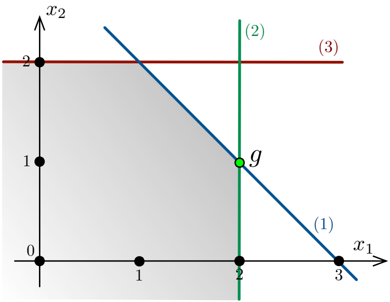
$\boxed{\text{Consider } g\text{:}}$

Here (1) and (2) are tight.

Definition

Let $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $x \in P$.

- A constraint is tight for x if it is satisfied with equality, and
- the set of all tight constraints is denoted $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Consider g:

Here (1) and (2) are tight. $\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{A}} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{\bar{b}}$.

Theorem

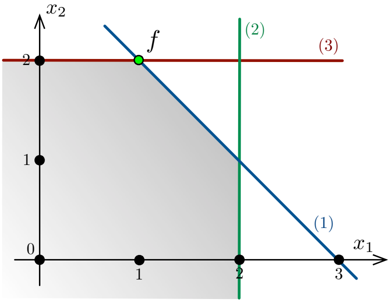
Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

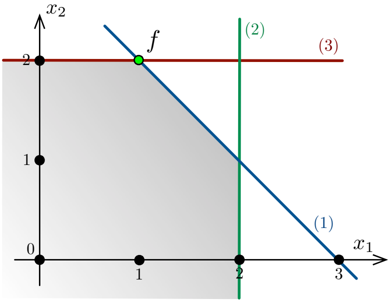


$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



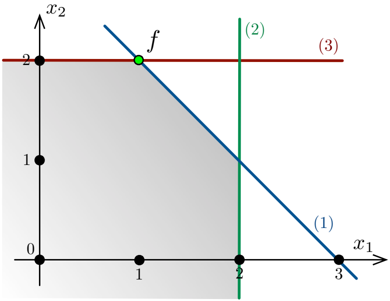
$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

$\boxed{\text{Consider } f\text{:}}$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

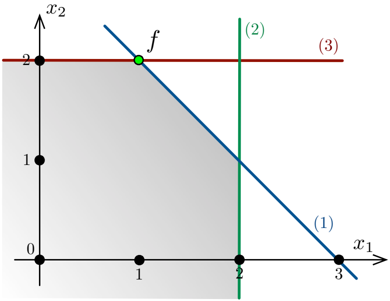
$\boxed{\text{Consider } f\text{:}}$

$$\bar{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

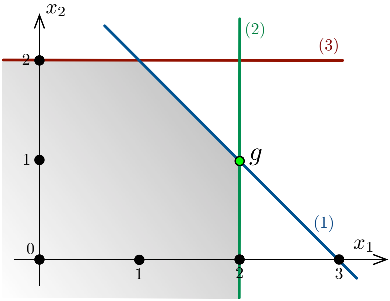
Consider f:

$\bar{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ so, since $rank(\bar{A}) = 2$, f is an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

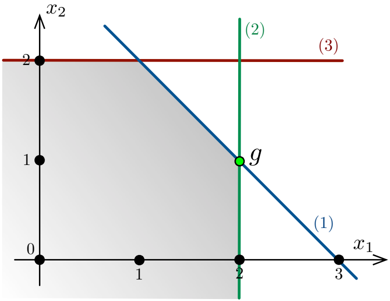


$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



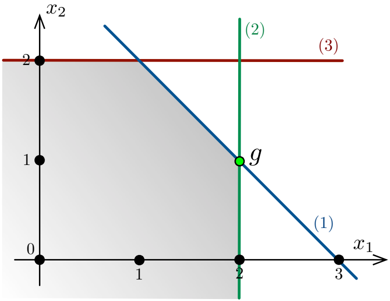
$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Consider g:

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

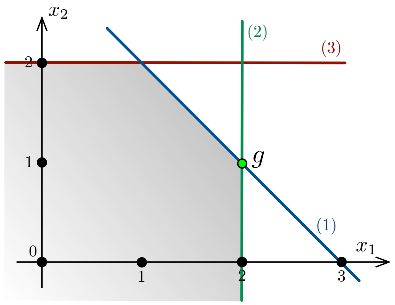
$\boxed{\text{Consider } g\text{:}}$

$$\bar{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

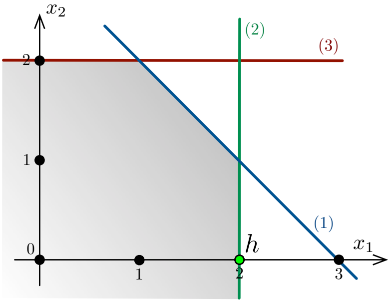
Consider g:

$\bar{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ so, since $rank(\bar{A}) = 2$, g is an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

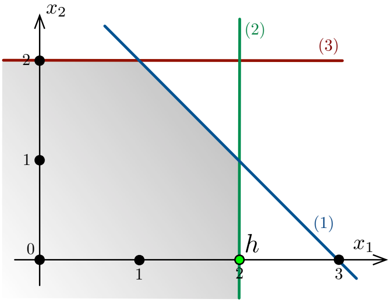


$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



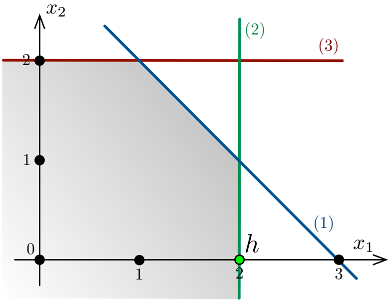
$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Consider h:

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

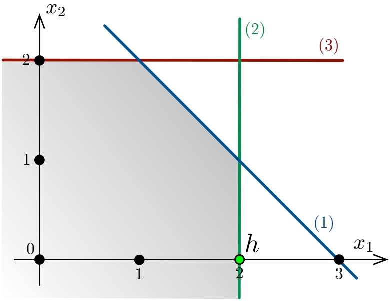
Consider h:

$$\bar{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}$$

$\boxed{\text{Consider } h\text{:}}$

$\bar{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ so, since $rank(\bar{A}) < 2$, h is NOT an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Is the following true?

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Is the following true?

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Is the following true? $\mathrm{NO!}$

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Is the following true? NO!

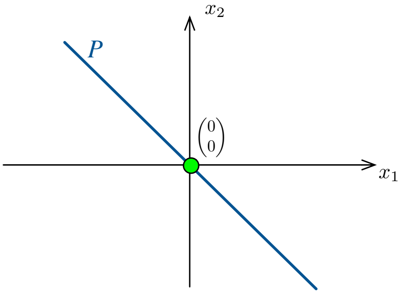
Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Is the following true? NO!

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

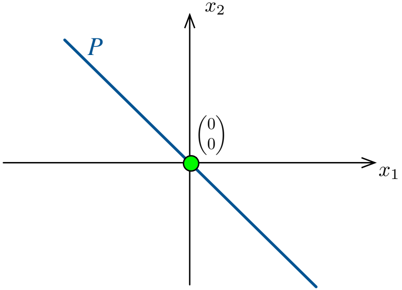


$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \right\}$$

Is the following true? NO!

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.



$$P = \left\{ x : \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \right\}$$

$\bar{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$ has $n = 2$ rows, but $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ is NOT extreme.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Let's prove part (1).

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and suppose

$$a = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and suppose

$$a = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and suppose

$$a = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Proof

$a = \frac{1}{2}\ \ b\ \ + \frac{1}{2}\ \ c$

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and suppose

$$a = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Proof

$a = \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{b}_{\leq a} + \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{c}_{\leq a}$

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and suppose

$$a = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Proof

$a = \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{b}_{\leq a} + \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{c}_{\leq a} \leq \frac{1}{2}a + \frac{1}{2}a = a.$

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and suppose

$$a = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Proof

$a = \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{b}_{\leq a} + \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{c}_{\leq a} \leq \frac{1}{2}a + \frac{1}{2}a = a.$

Thus, equality holds throughout

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and suppose

$$a = \frac{1}{2}b + \frac{1}{2}c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Proof

$a = \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{b}_{\leq a} + \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{c}_{\leq a} \leq \frac{1}{2}a + \frac{1}{2}a = a.$

Thus, equality holds throughout $\Rightarrow$ $b = a$ and $c = a$.

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$,

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$.

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$. Suppose

$$a = \lambda b + (1 - \lambda)c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$. Suppose

$$a = \lambda b + (1 - \lambda) c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$. Suppose

$$a = \lambda b + (1 - \lambda)c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Exercise

Prove the previous remark.

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re^n$

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re^n$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$. Suppose

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re^n$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$. Suppose

$$a = \lambda b + (1 - \lambda)c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re^n$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$. Suppose

$$a = \lambda b + (1 - \lambda)c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Remark

Let $a, b, c \in \Re^n$, and let λ where $0 < \lambda < 1$. Suppose

$$a = \lambda b + (1 - \lambda)c \qquad \text{and} \qquad b \leq a,\ c \leq a.$$

Then $a = b = c$.

Exercise

Prove the previous remark.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n \text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$,

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1 - \lambda) x^{(2)}$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1 - \lambda) x^{(2)}$.

$$\bar{b} = \bar{A}\bar{x}$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}$.

$$\bar{b} = \bar{A}\bar{x} = \bar{A}\left(\lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}\right)$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n \text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}$.

$$\bar{b} = \bar{A}\bar{x} = \bar{A}\left(\lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}\right) = \lambda \bar{A}x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)\bar{A}x^{(2)}.$$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1 - \lambda) x^{(2)}$.

$$\bar{b} = \bar{A}\bar{x} = \bar{A}\left(\lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}\right) = \lambda \bar{A} x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)\bar{A}x^{(2)}.$$

$\bar{A}x^{(1)} \leq \bar{b}$ and $\bar{A}x^{(2)} \leq \bar{b}$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}$.

$$\bar{b} = \bar{A}\bar{x} = \bar{A}\left(\lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}\right) = \lambda \bar{A}x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)\bar{A}x^{(2)}.$$

$\bar{A}x^{(1)} \leq \bar{b}$ and $\bar{A}x^{(2)} \leq \bar{b}$.

Previous remark implies that $\bar{b} = \bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}x^{(2)}$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}$.

$$\bar{b} = \bar{A}\bar{x} = \bar{A}\left(\lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}\right) = \lambda \bar{A}x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)\bar{A}x^{(2)}.$$

$\bar{A}x^{(1)} \leq \bar{b}$ and $\bar{A}x^{(2)} \leq \bar{b}$.

Previous remark implies that $\bar{b} = \bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}x^{(2)}$.

However, since $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, $x^{(1)} = x^{(2)}$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) = n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is not an extreme point.

$\bar{x}$ is properly contained in a line segment with endpoints $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

$\bar{x} \neq x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$ and for some λ, $0 < \lambda < 1$, $\bar{x} = \lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}$.

$$\bar{b} = \bar{A}\bar{x} = \bar{A}\left(\lambda x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)x^{(2)}\right) = \lambda \bar{A}x^{(1)} + (1-\lambda)\bar{A}x^{(2)}.$$

$\bar{A}x^{(1)} \leq \bar{b}$ and $\bar{A}x^{(2)} \leq \bar{b}$.

Previous remark implies that $\bar{b} = \bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}x^{(2)}$.

However, since $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, $x^{(1)} = x^{(2)}$. This is a contradiction.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n \text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n, \text{ then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n, \text{ then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n \text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$.

$x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n \text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$.

$x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$

$x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

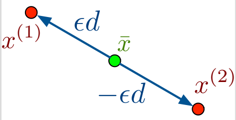
Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$.

$x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$

$x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$



Theorem

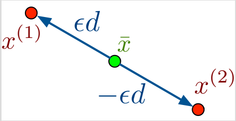
Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n, \text{ then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$.



$x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$

$x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$

It suffices to prove the following:

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

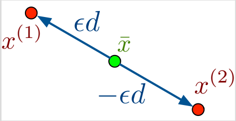
Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$.

$x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$

$x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$



It suffices to prove the following:

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

2. $\boxed{\text{If } rank(\bar{A}) < n\text{, then } \bar{x} \text{ is NOT an extreme point.}}$

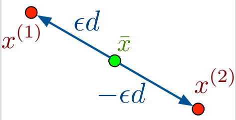
Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$.

$x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$

$x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$



It suffices to prove the following:

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$.

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

Why?

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

Why?

$$\frac{1}{2}x^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2}x^{(2)}$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

Why?

$$\frac{1}{2}x^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2}x^{(2)} = \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) + \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x} - \epsilon d)$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

Why?

$$\frac{1}{2}x^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2}x^{(2)} = \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) + \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x} - \epsilon d) = \bar{x}.$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

Why?

$$\frac{1}{2}x^{(1)} + \frac{1}{2}x^{(2)} = \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) + \frac{1}{2}(\bar{x} - \epsilon d) = \bar{x}. \quad \checkmark$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

$\boxed{\text{Consider tight constraints } \bar{A}x \le \bar{b}.}$

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)}$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d)$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}}$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}} = \bar{b}.$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

$\boxed{\text{Consider tight constraints } \bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}.}$

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}} = \bar{b}. \qquad \checkmark$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}} = \bar{b}. \qquad \checkmark$$

Consider non-tight constraint $a^\top x \leq \beta$.

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

$\boxed{\text{Consider tight constraints } \bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}.}$

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}} = \bar{b}. \qquad \checkmark$$

$\boxed{\text{Consider non-tight constraint } a^\top x \leq \beta.}$

$$a^\top x^{(1)}$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}} = \bar{b}. \qquad \checkmark$$

Consider non-tight constraint $a^\top x \leq \beta$.

$$a^\top x^{(1)} = a^\top(\bar{x} + \epsilon d)$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}} = \bar{b}. \qquad \checkmark$$

Consider non-tight constraint $a^\top x \leq \beta$.

$$a^\top x^{(1)} = a^\top(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{a^\top \bar{x}}_{<\beta} + \epsilon \underbrace{a^\top d}_{??}$$

Proof

Since $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, there exists a non-zero vector d such that $\bar{A}d = \mathbf{0}$.

Pick a small $\epsilon > 0$. Let $x^{(1)} = \bar{x} + \epsilon d$ and $x^{(2)} = \bar{x} - \epsilon d$.

(a) $\bar{x}$ is properly contained in the line segment between $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$.

(b) $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)} \in P$. (It is sufficient to show this for $x^{(1)}$ only.)

Consider tight constraints $\bar{A}x \leq \bar{b}$.

$$\bar{A}x^{(1)} = \bar{A}(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{\bar{A}\bar{x}}_{\bar{b}} + \epsilon \underbrace{\bar{A}d}_{\mathbf{0}} = \bar{b}. \qquad \checkmark$$

Consider non-tight constraint $a^\top x \leq \beta$.

$$a^\top x^{(1)} = a^\top(\bar{x} + \epsilon d) = \underbrace{a^\top \bar{x}}_{<\beta} + \epsilon \underbrace{a^\top d}_{??} < \beta$$

for a small enough ϵ.

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ is a basic solution

Question

Is $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ an extreme point?

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ an extreme point?

Let's use our theorem to find an answer.

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ an extreme point?

Let's use our theorem to find an answer.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2,4,0)^\top$ an extreme point?

Let's use our theorem to find an answer.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \in \Re^n : Ax \leq b\}$ be a polyhedron and let $\bar{x} \in P$.

1. If $rank(\bar{A}) = n$, then $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point.
2. If $rank(\bar{A}) < n$, then $\bar{x}$ is NOT an extreme point.

We need to rewrite the constraints in P so they are all in the form "$\leq$".

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ an extreme point?

We need to rewrite the constraints in P so they are all in the form "$\leq$".

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ an extreme point?

We need to rewrite the constraints in P so they are all in the form "$\leq$".

$P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \left(\begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad b = \left(\begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right)$$

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ an extreme point?

We need to rewrite the constraints in P so they are all in the form "$\leq$".

$P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad b = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ \hline \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{pmatrix}$$

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2,4,0)^\top$ an extreme point?

We need to rewrite the constraints in P so they are all in the form "$\leq$".

$P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline \\ \\ \\ \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad b = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ \hline -2 \\ -4 \\ \hline \\ \\ \\ \end{pmatrix}$$

Consider

$$P = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is a basic solution}$$

Question

Is $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ an extreme point?

We need to rewrite the constraints in P so they are all in the form "$\leq$".

$P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad b = \left(\begin{array}{r} 2 \\ 4 \\ \hline -2 \\ -4 \\ \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array} \right)$$

For $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array}\right) \quad , \quad b = \left(\begin{array}{r} 2 \\ 4 \\ \hline -2 \\ -4 \\ \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array}\right)$$

and $(2, 4, 0)^\top$, we have

For $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array}\right) \quad , \quad b = \left(\begin{array}{r} 2 \\ 4 \\ \hline -2 \\ -4 \\ \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array}\right)$$

and $(2, 4, 0)^\top$, we have

$$\bar{A} = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} \color{blue}{1} & \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{-1} \\ \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{1} & \color{blue}{3} \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{-1} \end{array}\right)$$

For $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array}\right) \quad , \quad b = \left(\begin{array}{r} 2 \\ 4 \\ \hline -2 \\ -4 \\ \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array}\right)$$

and $(2,4,0)^\top$, we have

$$\bar{A} = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array}\right)$$

Since $rank(\bar{A}) = 3$, we know that $(2,4,0)^\top$ is an extreme point!

For $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$, where

$$A = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array}\right) \quad , \quad b = \left(\begin{array}{r} 2 \\ 4 \\ \hline -2 \\ -4 \\ \hline 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array}\right)$$

and $(2, 4, 0)^\top$, we have

$$\bar{A} = \left(\begin{array}{rrr} \color{blue}{1} & \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{-1} \\ \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{1} & \color{blue}{3} \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 \\ \hline \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{0} & \color{blue}{-1} \end{array}\right)$$

Since $rank(\bar{A}) = 3$, we know that $(2, 4, 0)^\top$ is an extreme point!

This is no accident...

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \geq \mathbf{0} : Ax = b\}$ where rows of A are independent. The following are equivalent:

1. $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point of P.
2. $\bar{x}$ is a basic feasible solution of P.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \geq \mathbf{0} : Ax = b\}$ where rows of A are independent. The following are equivalent:

1. $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point of P.
2. $\bar{x}$ is a basic feasible solution of P.

Exercise

Prove the previous theorem.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \geq \mathbf{0} : Ax = b\}$ where rows of A are independent. The following are equivalent:

1. $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point of P.
2. $\bar{x}$ is a basic feasible solution of P.

Exercise

Prove the previous theorem.

Theorem

Let $P = \{x \geq \mathbf{0} : Ax = b\}$ where rows of A are independent. The following are equivalent:

1. $\bar{x}$ is an extreme point of P.
2. $\bar{x}$ is a basic feasible solution of P.

Exercise

Prove the previous theorem.

$\Rightarrow$

The Simplex algorithm moves from extreme points to extreme points.

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}$$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Solve using Simplex:

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

SOLVE USING SIMPLEX:

- Basis $B = \{3, 4, 5\}$, basic solution $(0, 0, 10, 6, 4)^\top$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \\ \hline \end{array} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

SOLVE USING SIMPLEX:

- Basis $B = \{3, 4, 5\}$, basic solution $(0, 0, 10, 6, 4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1, 4, 5\}$, basic solution $(5, 0, 0, 1, 9)^\top$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Solve using Simplex:

- Basis $B = \{3,4,5\}$, basic solution $(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,4,5\}$, basic solution $(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,5\}$, basic solution $(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

SOLVE USING SIMPLEX:

- Basis $B = \{3,4,5\}$, basic solution $(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,4,5\}$, basic solution $(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,5\}$, basic solution $(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,3\}$, basic solution $(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$:

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

SOLVE USING SIMPLEX:

- Basis $B = \{3,4,5\}$, basic solution $(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,4,5\}$, basic solution $(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,5\}$, basic solution $(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,3\}$, basic solution $(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$: optimal

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Solve using Simplex:

- Basis $B = \{3,4,5\}$, basic solution $(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,4,5\}$, basic solution $(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,5\}$, basic solution $(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,3\}$, basic solution $(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$: optimal

⇒ Simplex visits extreme points of P_1 in order:

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Solve using Simplex:

- Basis $B = \{3, 4, 5\}$, basic solution $(0, 0, 10, 6, 4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1, 4, 5\}$, basic solution $(5, 0, 0, 1, 9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1, 2, 5\}$, basic solution $(4, 2, 0, 0, 6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$, basic solution $(1, 5, 3, 0, 0)^\top$: optimal

⇒ Simplex visits extreme points of P_1 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix},$$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Solve using Simplex:

- Basis $B = \{3, 4, 5\}$, basic solution $(0, 0, 10, 6, 4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1, 4, 5\}$, basic solution $(5, 0, 0, 1, 9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1, 2, 5\}$, basic solution $(4, 2, 0, 0, 6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$, basic solution $(1, 5, 3, 0, 0)^\top$: optimal

⇒ Simplex visits extreme points of P_1 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix},$$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}
\qquad
P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}
$$

Solve using Simplex:

- Basis $B = \{3,4,5\}$, basic solution $(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,4,5\}$, basic solution $(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,5\}$, basic solution $(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,3\}$, basic solution $(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$: optimal

➡ Simplex visits extreme points of P_1 in order:

$$
\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix},
$$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

SOLVE USING SIMPLEX:

- Basis $B = \{3,4,5\}$, basic solution $(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,4,5\}$, basic solution $(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,5\}$, basic solution $(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,3\}$, basic solution $(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$: optimal

$\Rightarrow$ Simplex visits extreme points of P_1 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \\ 3 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Simplex - a Geometric Illustration

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

SOLVE USING SIMPLEX:

- Basis $B = \{3,4,5\}$, basic solution $(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,4,5\}$, basic solution $(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,5\}$, basic solution $(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$
- Basis $B = \{1,2,3\}$, basic solution $(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$: optimal

$\Rightarrow$ Simplex visits extreme points of P_1 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \\ 3 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

However, we cannot draw a picture of this...

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}}$$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}} \qquad P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}} \qquad P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Remark

$(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(0,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}} \qquad P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Remark

$$\begin{array}{llcll} (0,0,10,6,4)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_1 & \Rightarrow & (0,0)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_2, \\ (5,0,0,1,9)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_1 & \Rightarrow & (5,0)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_2, \\ (4,2,0,0,6)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_1 & \Rightarrow & (4,2)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_2, \\ (1,5,3,0,0)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_1 & \Rightarrow & (1,5)^\top & \text{extreme point of } P_2. \end{array}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}} \qquad P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Remark

$(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(0,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(5,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(4,2)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(1,5)^\top$ extreme point of P_2.

Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}} \qquad P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Remark

$(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(0,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(5,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(4,2)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(1,5)^\top$ extreme point of P_2.

➡ Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}} \qquad P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Remark

$(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(0,0)^\top$	extreme point of P_2,
$(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(5,0)^\top$	extreme point of P_2,
$(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(4,2)^\top$	extreme point of P_2,
$(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(1,5)^\top$	extreme point of P_2.

Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

max	$(2,3,0,0,0)x$
s.t.	
	$x \in P_1$

$$P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

max	$(2,3)x$
s.t.	
	$x \in P_2$

$$P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Remark

$(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(0,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(5,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(4,2)^\top$ extreme point of P_2,
$(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$ extreme point of P_1 $\Rightarrow$ $(1,5)^\top$ extreme point of P_2.

Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3,0,0,0)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_1 \end{array}} \qquad P_1 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is obtained by adding slack variables to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}} \qquad P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Remark

$(0,0,10,6,4)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(0,0)^\top$	extreme point of P_2,
$(5,0,0,1,9)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(5,0)^\top$	extreme point of P_2,
$(4,2,0,0,6)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(4,2)^\top$	extreme point of P_2,
$(1,5,3,0,0)^\top$	extreme point of P_1	$\Rightarrow$	$(1,5)^\top$	extreme point of P_2.

Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}.$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}}$$

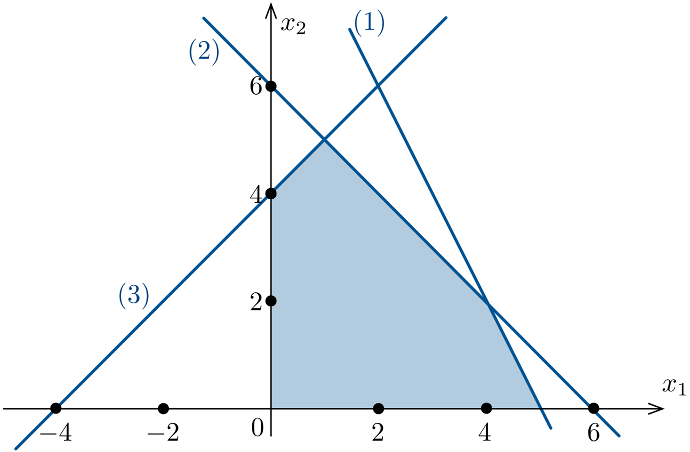
$$P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}.$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}}$$

$$P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

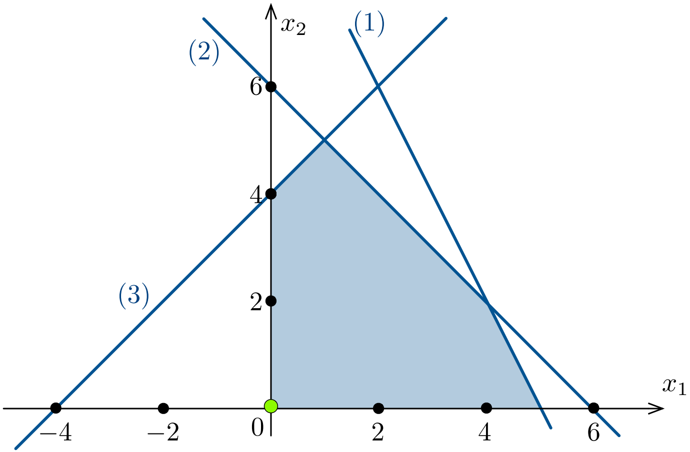
Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}.$



$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}}$$

$$P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

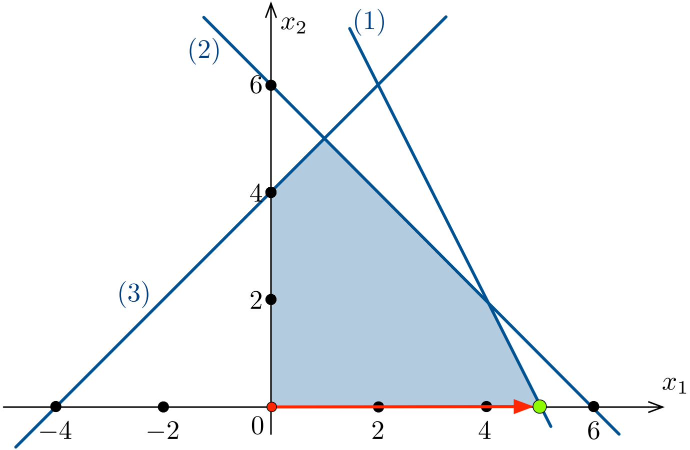
Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order: $\boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$.



$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}}$$

$$P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

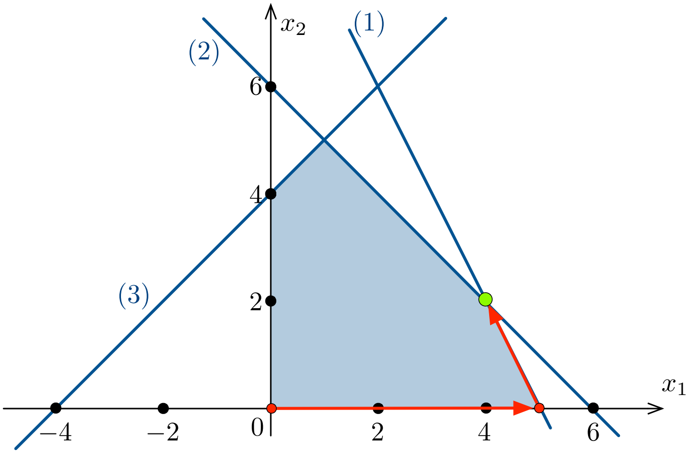
Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}.$



$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \end{array}}$$

$$P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

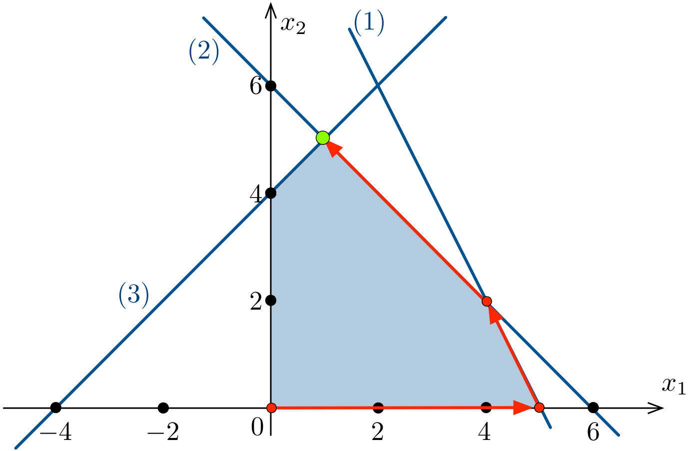
Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}.$



$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \max & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x \in P_2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$P_2 = \left\{ x \geq \mathbf{0} : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 10 \\ 6 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Simplex visits extreme points of P_2 in order: $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}}$.



Recap

Recap

- We defined extreme points of convex sets.

Recap

- We defined extreme points of convex sets.
- We characterized extreme points in polyhedra.

Recap

- We defined extreme points of convex sets.
- We characterized extreme points in polyhedra.
- We saw that extreme points = basic solutions for problems in SEF.

Recap

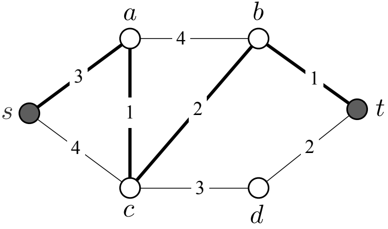
- We defined extreme points of convex sets.
- We characterized extreme points in polyhedra.
- We saw that extreme points = basic solutions for problems in SEF.
- We showed that the Simplex algorithm moves from extreme point to extreme point.

Module 3: Duality through examples

Recap: Shortest Paths

In an instance of the shortest path problem, we are given

- a graph $G = (V, E)$, a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.

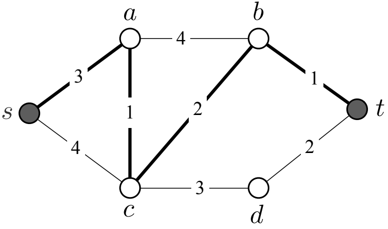


Recap: Shortest Paths

In an instance of the shortest path problem, we are given

- a graph $G = (V, E)$, a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.

Our goal is to compute an s, t-path P of smallest total length.



Recap: Shortest Paths

In an instance of the shortest path problem, we are given

- a graph $G = (V, E)$, a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.

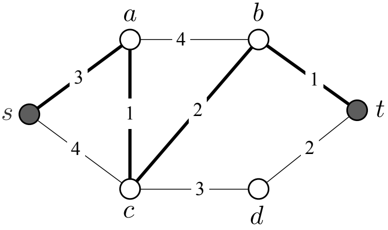
Our goal is to compute an s, t-path P of smallest total length.

Recall: an s, t-path is a sequence

$$P := u_1u_2, u_2u_3, \ldots, u_{k-1}u_k$$

where

- $u_iu_{i+1} \in E$ for all i, and
- $u_1 = s$, $u_k = t$, and $u_i \neq u_j$ for all $i \neq j$.



Recap: Shortest Paths

In an instance of the shortest path problem, we are given

- a graph $G = (V, E)$, a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.

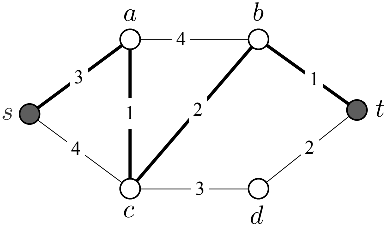
Our goal is to compute an s, t-path P of smallest total length.

Recall: an s, t-path is a sequence

$$P := u_1u_2, u_2u_3, \ldots, u_{k-1}u_k$$

where

- $u_iu_{i+1} \in E$ for all i, and
- $u_1 = s$, $u_k = t$, and $u_i \neq u_j$ for all $i \neq j$.



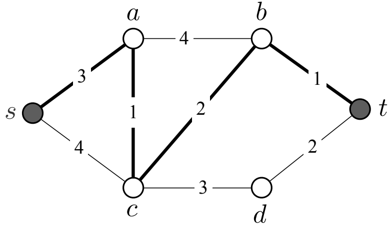
Its length is given by

$$c(P) = c_{u_1u_2} + c_{u_2u_3} + \ldots + c_{u_{k-1}u_k}$$

In the example, we see by inspection that

$$P = sa, ac, cb, bt$$

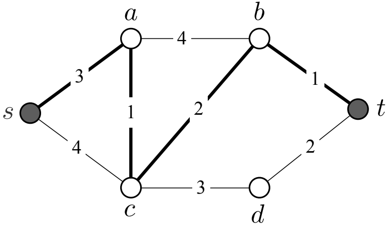
is a shortest path and that its length is 9.



In the example, we see by inspection that

$$P = sa, ac, cb, bt$$

is a shortest path and that its length is 9.



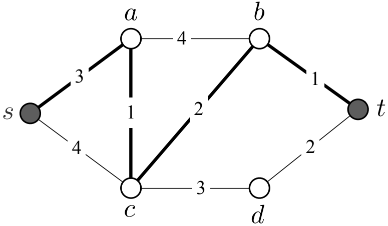
Question

1. Given a shortest-path instance and a candidate shortest s, t-path P, is there a short proof of its optimality?

In the example, we see by inspection that

$$P = sa, ac, cb, bt$$

is a shortest path and that its length is 9.



Question

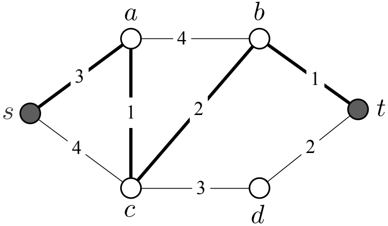
1. Given a shortest-path instance and a candidate shortest s, t-path P, is there a short proof of its optimality?

2. How can we find a shortest s, t-path?

In the example, we see by inspection that

$$P = sa, ac, cb, bt$$

is a shortest path and that its length is 9.



Question

1. Given a shortest-path instance and a candidate shortest s, t-path P, is there a short proof of its optimality?

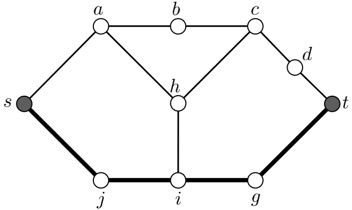
2. How can we find a shortest s, t-path?

We will answer both questions in this module. This lecture focus on question 1.

Shortest Paths: Finding an Intuitive Lower Bound

Cardinality Case

To make our lives easier, we will first consider the cardinality special case of the shortest path problem.

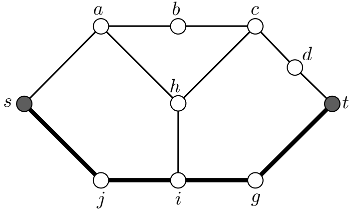


Cardinality Case

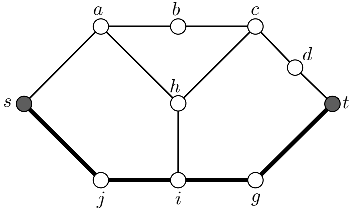
To make our lives easier, we will first consider the cardinality special case of the shortest path problem.

We consider shortest path instances where...

- each edge $e \in E$ has length 1, and



Cardinality Case



To make our lives easier, we will first consider the cardinality special case of the shortest path problem.

We consider shortest path instances where...

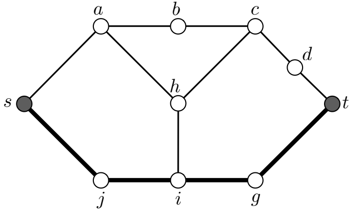
- each edge $e \in E$ has length 1, and
- we are therefore looking for an s, t-path with the smallest number of edges.

Cardinality Case

To make our lives easier, we will first consider the cardinality special case of the shortest path problem.

We consider shortest path instances where...

- each edge $e \in E$ has length 1, and
- we are therefore looking for an s, t-path with the smallest number of edges.



Example: In the diagram above, one easily sees that

$$P = sj, ji, ig, gt$$

is a shortest s, t-path.

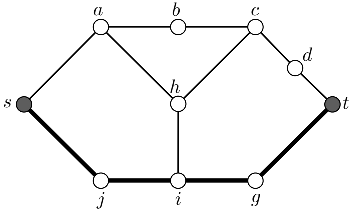
How can we prove this fact?

Cardinality Case

To make our lives easier, we will first consider the cardinality special case of the shortest path problem.

We consider shortest path instances where...

- each edge $e \in E$ has length 1, and
- we are therefore looking for an s, t-path with the smallest number of edges.



Example: In the diagram above, one easily sees that

$$P = sj, ji, ig, gt$$

is a shortest s, t-path.

How can we prove this fact?
$\longrightarrow$ The answer lies in s,t-cuts!

s, t-cuts

Definition

For $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E \,:\, u \in U, v \notin U\}$$

and call it an s, t-cut if $s \in U$, and $t \notin U$.

s, t-cuts

Definition

For $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E : u \in U, v \notin U\}$$

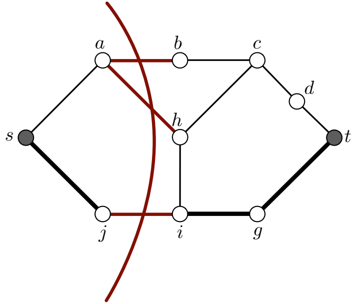
and call it an s, t-cut if $s \in U$, and $t \notin U$.

Example

Let $U = \{s, a, j\}$. It follows that

$$\delta(U) = \{ab, ah, ji\}$$

is an s, t-cut.



s, t-cuts

Definition

For $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E : u \in U, v \notin U\}$$

and call it an s, t-cut if $s \in U$, and $t \notin U$.

Example

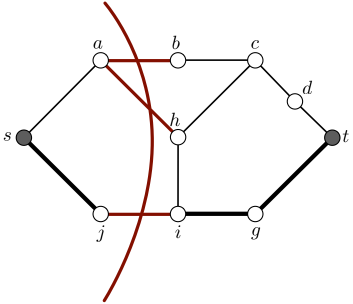
Let $U = \{s, a, j\}$. It follows that

$$\delta(U) = \{ab, ah, ji\}$$

is an s, t-cut.

Recall:

- If P is an s, t-path and $\delta(U)$ an s, t-cut, then P contains an edge of $\delta(U)$.



s,t-cuts

Definition

For $U \subseteq V$, we define

$$\delta(U) = \{uv \in E : u \in U, v \notin U\}$$

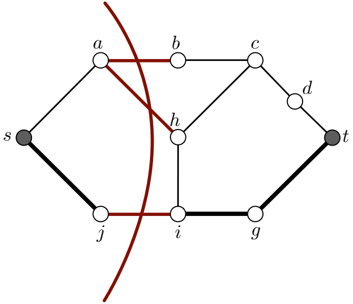
and call it an s,t-cut if $s \in U$, and $t \notin U$.

Example

Let $U = \{s, a, j\}$. It follows that

$$\delta(U) = \{ab, ah, ji\}$$

is an s,t-cut.

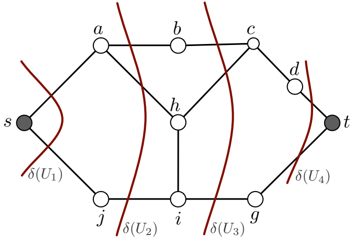


Recall:

- If P is an s,t-path and $\delta(U)$ an s,t-cut, then P contains an edge of $\delta(U)$.
- If $S \subseteq E$ contains an edge from every s,t-cut, then S contains an s,t-path.

From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

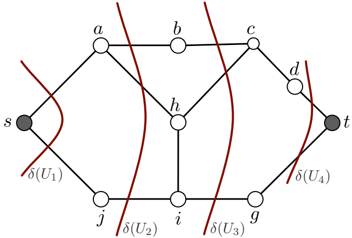
The example on the right shows 4 s,t-cuts, $\delta(U_1), \delta(U_2), \delta(U_3), \delta(U_4)$.



$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\} \\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\} \\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\} \\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}
$$

From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

The example on the right shows 4 s, t-cuts, $\delta(U_1), \delta(U_2), \delta(U_3), \delta(U_4)$.



Two important notes:

(1) $\delta(U_i) \cap \delta(U_j) = \emptyset$ for $i \neq j$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\} \\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\} \\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\} \\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}
$$

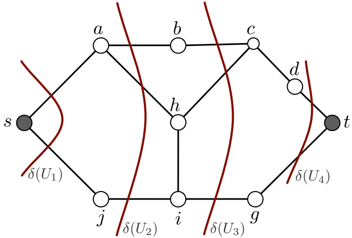
From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

The example on the right shows 4 s, t-cuts, $\delta(U_1), \delta(U_2), \delta(U_3), \delta(U_4)$.

Two important notes:

(1) $\delta(U_i) \cap \delta(U_j) = \emptyset$ for $i \neq j$ and

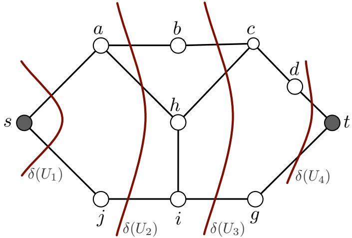
(2) an s, t-path must contain an edge from $\delta(U_i)$ for all i.



$$\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\} \\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\} \\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\} \\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}$$

From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

The example on the right shows 4 s,t-cuts, $\delta(U_1), \delta(U_2), \delta(U_3), \delta(U_4)$.



Two important notes:

(1) $\delta(U_i) \cap \delta(U_j) = \emptyset$ for $i \neq j$ and

(2) an s,t-path must contain an edge from $\delta(U_i)$ for all i.

$\longrightarrow$ Every s,t-path must have at least 4 edges.

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\} \\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\} \\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\} \\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}$$

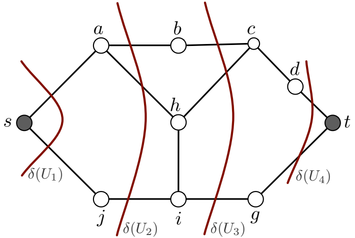
From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

The example on the right shows 4 s,t-cuts, $\delta(U_1), \delta(U_2), \delta(U_3), \delta(U_4)$.

Two important notes:

(1) $\delta(U_i) \cap \delta(U_j) = \emptyset$ for $i \neq j$ and

(2) an s,t-path must contain an edge from $\delta(U_i)$ for all i.



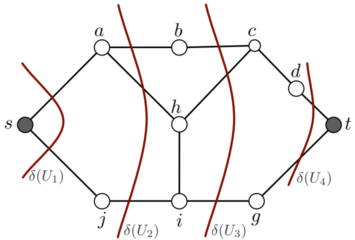
$\longrightarrow$ Every s,t-path must have at least 4 edges.
$\longrightarrow$ sj, ji, ig, gt is a shortest s,t-path!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\}\\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\}\\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\}\\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}
$$

From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

Question

Notice: hi is not in any of the $\delta(U_i)$. Does this mean that hi is not on any shortest s,t-path?

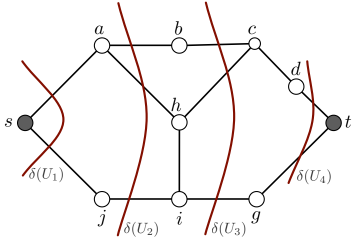


$$\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\} \\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\} \\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\} \\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}$$

From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

Question

Notice: hi is not in any of the $\delta(U_i)$. Does this mean that hi is not on any shortest s,t-path?



Yes!

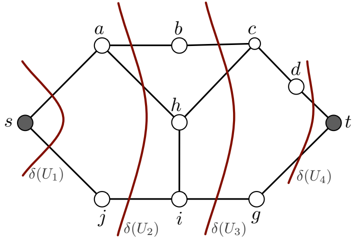
An s,t-path that contains hi must also contain an edge from each of the s,t-cuts $\delta(U_i)$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\} \\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\} \\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\} \\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}$$

From Cuts to Lower-Bounds

Question

Notice: hi is not in any of the $\delta(U_i)$. Does this mean that hi is not on any shortest s,t-path?



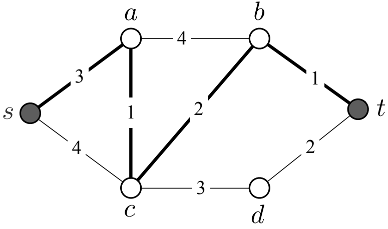
Yes!

An s,t-path that contains hi must also contain an edge from each of the s,t-cuts $\delta(U_i)$. $\longrightarrow$ It must contain at least 5 edges!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta(U_1) &= \{sa, sj\} \\
\delta(U_2) &= \{ab, ah, ji\} \\
\delta(U_3) &= \{bc, hc, ig\} \\
\delta(U_4) &= \{dt, gt\}
\end{aligned}
$$

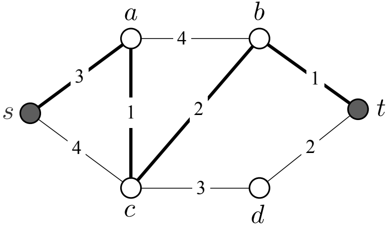
Back to the General Case

In general instances, we assign a non-negative width y_U to every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$.



Back to the General Case

In general instances, we assign a non-negative width y_U to every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$.

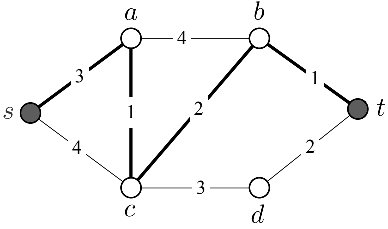


Definition

A width assignment $\{y_U : \delta(U)\ s, t\text{-cut}\}$ is feasible if,

Back to the General Case

In general instances, we assign a non-negative width y_U to every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$.

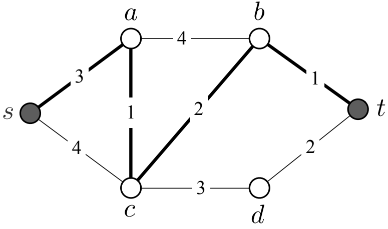


Definition

A width assignment $\{y_U : \delta(U)\ s,t\text{-cut}\}$ is feasible if, for every edge $e \in E$,

Back to the General Case

In general instances, we assign a non-negative width y_U to every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$.

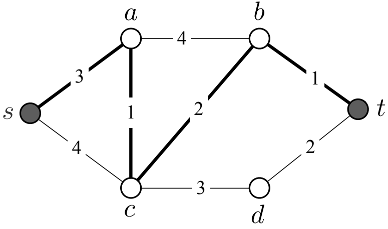


Definition

A width assignment $\{y_U : \delta(U)\ s, t\text{-cut}\}$ is feasible if, for every edge $e \in E$, the total width of all cuts containing e is no more than c_e.

Back to the General Case

In general instances, we assign a non-negative width y_U to every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$.



Definition

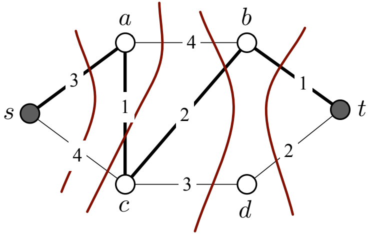
A width assignment $\{y_U : \delta(U) \; s,t\text{-cut}\}$ is feasible if, for every edge $e \in E$, the total width of all cuts containing e is no more than c_e.

Using math: y is feasible if for all e

$$\sum (y_U : \delta(U) \; s,t\text{-cut and } e \in E) \leq c_e$$

Back to the General Case

Consider the example on the right with 4 s,t-cuts.



$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &= \{s\} \\ U_2 &= \{s,a\} \\ U_3 &= \{s,a,c\} \\ U_4 &= \{s,a,b,c,d\} \end{aligned}$$

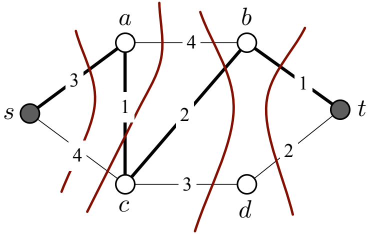
Back to the General Case

Consider the example on the right with 4 s,t-cuts.

The width assignment

$$\begin{aligned} y_{U_1} &= 3 \\ y_{U_2} &= 1 \\ y_{U_3} &= 2 \\ y_{U_4} &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

is easily checked to be feasible.



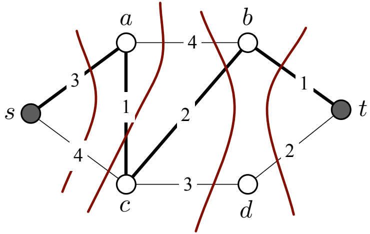
$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &= \{s\} \\ U_2 &= \{s, a\} \\ U_3 &= \{s, a, c\} \\ U_4 &= \{s, a, b, c, d\} \end{aligned}$$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum(y_U \,:\, U\ s,t\text{-cut}).$$



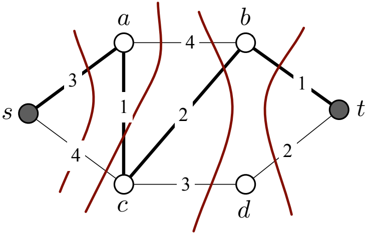
$$
\begin{aligned}
U_1 &= \{s\} \\
U_2 &= \{s, a\} \\
U_3 &= \{s, a, c\} \\
U_4 &= \{s, a, b, c, d\}
\end{aligned}
$$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s, t-path must have length at least

$$\sum(y_U \,:\, U \;\; s,t\text{-cut}).$$



Example:

$$y_{U_1} + y_{U_2} + y_{U_3} + y_{U_4} = 7$$

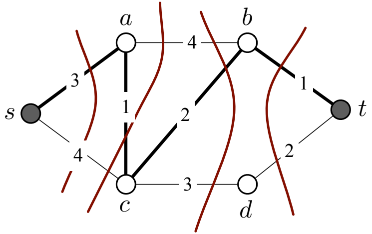
$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &= \{s\} \\ U_2 &= \{s, a\} \\ U_3 &= \{s, a, c\} \\ U_4 &= \{s, a, b, c, d\} \end{aligned}$$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum(y_U\ :\ U\ s,t\text{-cut}).$$



Example:

$$y_{U_1}+y_{U_2}+y_{U_3}+y_{U_4}=7$$

$\longrightarrow$ Path sa, ac, cb, bt is a shortest path!

$$\begin{aligned} U_1 &= \{s\} \\ U_2 &= \{s,a\} \\ U_3 &= \{s,a,c\} \\ U_4 &= \{s,a,b,c,d\} \end{aligned}$$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum(y_U \ : \ U \ s,t\text{-cut}).$$

Example:

$$y_{U_1} + y_{U_2} + y_{U_3} + y_{U_4} = 7$$

$\longrightarrow$ Path sa, ac, cb, bt is a shortest path!

Proof: Consider an s,t-path P. It follows that

$$c(P) \quad = \quad \sum(c_e \ : \ e \in P)$$

$\square$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum(y_U \,:\, U \;\; s,t\text{-cut}).$$

Example:

$$y_{U_1} + y_{U_2} + y_{U_3} + y_{U_4} = 7$$

$\longrightarrow$ Path sa, ac, cb, bt is a shortest path!

Proof: Consider an s,t-path P. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} c(P) &= \sum(c_e \,:\, e \in P) \\ &\geq \sum\Big(\sum(y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \,:\, e \in P\Big) \end{aligned}$$

where the first inequality follows from the feasibility of y.

$\square$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum (y_U \,:\, U \;\; s,t\text{-cut}).$$

Example:

$$y_{U_1} + y_{U_2} + y_{U_3} + y_{U_4} = 7$$

$\longrightarrow$ Path sa, ac, cb, bt is a shortest path!

Proof: Consider an s,t-path P. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} c(P) &= \sum (c_e \,:\, e \in P) \\ &\geq \sum \Big(\sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \,:\, e \in P \Big) \end{aligned}$$

where the first inequality follows from the feasibility of y.

Note: if $\delta(U)$ is an s,t-cut, then P contains at least one edge from $\delta(U)$.

$\square$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum(y_U \;:\; U \;\; s,t\text{-cut}).$$

Example:

$$y_{U_1} + y_{U_2} + y_{U_3} + y_{U_4} = 7$$

$\longrightarrow$ Path sa, ac, cb, bt is a shortest path!

Proof: Consider an s,t-path P. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} c(P) &= \sum(c_e \;:\; e \in P) \\ &\geq \sum\left(\sum(y_U \;:\; e \in \delta(U)) \;:\; e \in P\right) \end{aligned}$$

where the first inequality follows from the feasibility of y.

Note: if $\delta(U)$ is an s,t-cut, then P contains at least one edge from $\delta(U)$.
$\longrightarrow$ Variable y_U appears at least once on the right-hand side above, and hence we obtain the 2nd inequality $\square$

Back to the General Case

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum(y_U \,:\, U \ s,t\text{-cut}).$$

Example:

$$y_{U_1} + y_{U_2} + y_{U_3} + y_{U_4} = 7$$

$\longrightarrow$ Path sa, ac, cb, bt is a shortest path!

Proof: Consider an s,t-path P. It follows that

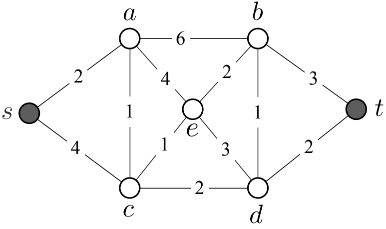
$$\begin{aligned} c(P) &= \sum(c_e \,:\, e \in P) \\ &\geq \sum\Big(\sum(y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \,:\, e \in P\Big) \\ &\geq \sum(y_U \,:\, \delta(U) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \end{aligned}$$

where the first inequality follows from the feasibility of y.

Note: if $\delta(U)$ is an s,t-cut, then P contains at least one edge from $\delta(U)$.
$\longrightarrow$ Variable y_U appears at least once on the right-hand side above, and hence we obtain the 2nd inequality $\square$

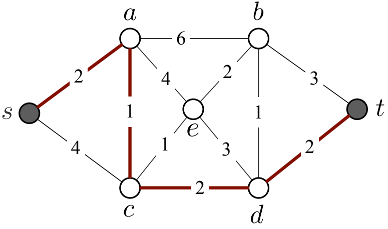
One More Example

Question: Can you spot a shortest s,t-path?



One More Example

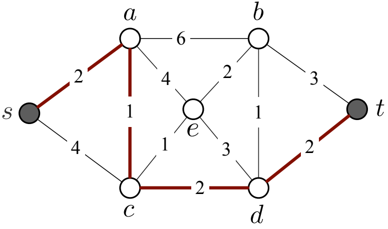
Question: Can you spot a shortest s, t-path?
$\longrightarrow$ $P = sa, ac, cd, dt$ of length 7.



One More Example

Question: Can you spot a shortest s, t-path?
$\longrightarrow$ $P = sa, ac, cd, dt$ of length 7.

Question: Can you prove your guess?

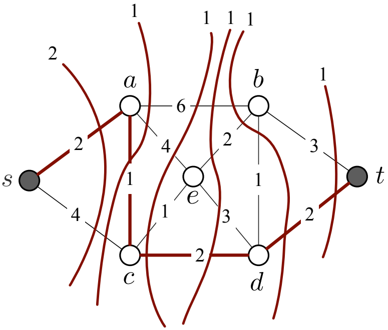


One More Example

Question: Can you spot a shortest s,t-path?
$\longrightarrow$ $P = sa, ac, cd, dt$ of length 7.

Question: Can you prove your guess?
$\longrightarrow$ Yes! There is a feasible dual width assignment of value 7:

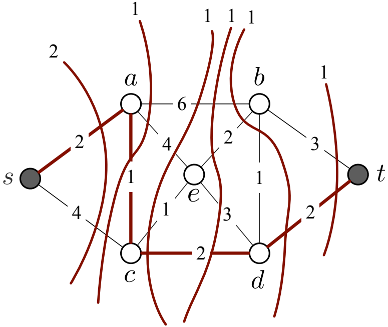
$$\begin{aligned}
y_{\{s\}} &= 2\\
y_{\{s,a\}} &= 1\\
y_{\{s,a,c\}} &= 1\\
y_{\{s,a,c,e\}} &= 1\\
y_{\{s,a,c,d,e\}} &= 1\\
y_{\{s,a,b,c,d,e\}} &= 1
\end{aligned}$$



One More Example

Question

(A) In an instance with a shortest path, can we always find feasible widths to prove optimality?

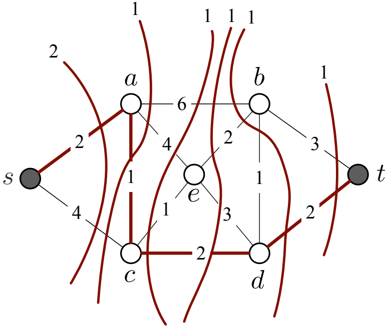


One More Example

Question

(A) In an instance with a shortest path, can we always find feasible widths to prove optimality?

(B) If so, how do we find a path and these widths?

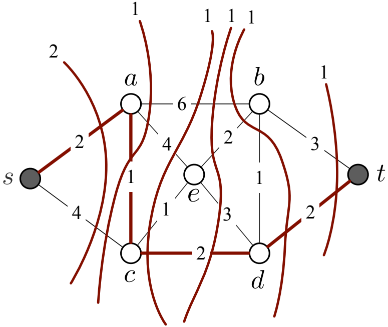


One More Example

Question

(A) In an instance with a shortest path, can we always find feasible widths to prove optimality?

(B) If so, how do we find a path and these widths?



We will answer (A) affirmatively, and provide an efficient algorithm for (B) shortly.

Recap

- A shortest path instance is given by a graph $G = (V, E)$ and non-negative lengths c_e for all $e \in E$.

Recap

- A shortest path instance is given by a graph $G = (V, E)$ and non-negative lengths c_e for all $e \in E$.
- A width assignment $y_U \geq 0$ for all s, t-cuts $\delta(U)$ is feasible if

$$\sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \leq c_e$$

  for all $e \in E$.

Recap

- A shortest path instance is given by a graph $G = (V, E)$ and non-negative lengths c_e for all $e \in E$.
- A width assignment $y_U \geq 0$ for all s, t-cuts $\delta(U)$ is feasible if

$$\sum (y_U \, : \, e \in \delta(U)) \leq c_e$$

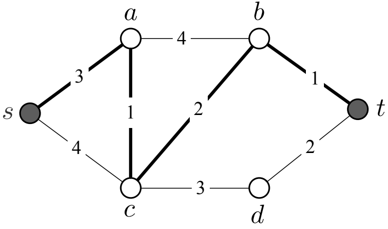
  for all $e \in E$.
- If y is a feasible width assignment and P an s, t-path, then

$$c(P) \geq \sum y_U$$

Module 3: Duality through examples (Weak Duality)

Recap: Feasible Widths

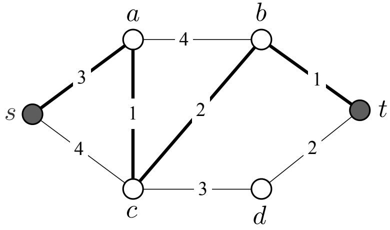
Suppose we are given an instance of the shortest path problem. . .



Recap: Feasible Widths

Suppose we are given an instance of the shortest path problem...

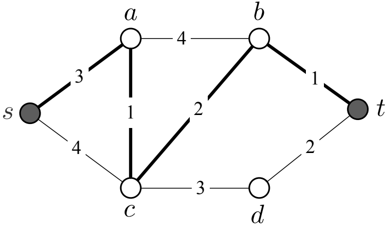
- a graph $G = (V, E)$,
- a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.



Recap: Feasible Widths

Suppose we are given an instance of the shortest path problem...

- a graph $G = (V, E)$,
- a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.



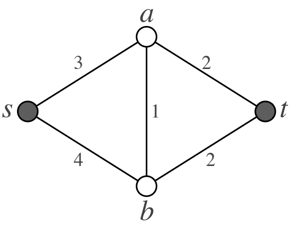
A width-assignment is of the form

$$\{y_U \,:\, \delta(U)\ s,t\text{-cut}\}$$

Recap: Feasible Widths

Suppose we are given an instance of the shortest path problem...

- a graph $G = (V, E)$,
- a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.



A width-assignment is of the form

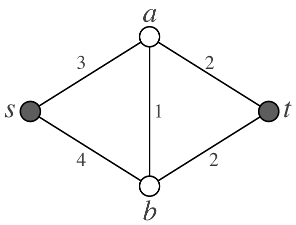
$$\{y_U \, : \, \delta(U) \ s, t\text{-cut}\}$$

and this is feasible if the total width of cuts containing edge e is no more than c_e, for all $e \in E$.

Recap: Feasible Widths

Suppose we are given an instance of the shortest path problem. . .

- a graph $G = (V, E)$,
- a non-negative length c_e for each edge $e \in E$, and
- a pair of vertices s and t in V.



A width-assignment is of the form

$$\{y_U \,:\, \delta(U) \ s,t\text{-cut}\}$$

and this is feasible if the total width of cuts containing edge e is no more than c_e, for all $e \in E$.

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

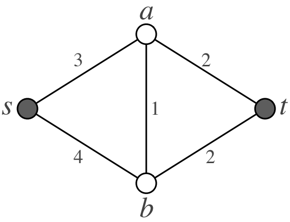
$$\sum (y_U \,:\, U \ s,t\text{-cut}).$$

Recap: Feasible Widths

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s, t-path must have length at least

$$\sum (y_U \ : \ U \ \ s, t\text{-cut}).$$



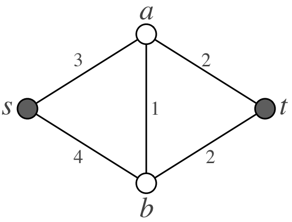
Seemingly, we used an adhoc argument, taylormade for shortest paths. . .

Recap: Feasible Widths

Proposition

If y is a feasible width assignment, then any s,t-path must have length at least

$$\sum (y_U \ : \ U \ \ s,t\text{-cut}).$$



Seemingly, we used an adhoc argument, taylormade for shortest paths...

but, as we will now see, there is a constructive and quite mechanical way to derive the Proposition via linear programming!

An Instructive Example LP

The LP on the right is feasible. . .

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

An Instructive Example LP

The LP on the right is feasible...

E.g., $x^1 = (8, 16)^\top$ and $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ are feasible.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

An Instructive Example LP

The LP on the right is feasible. . .

E.g., $x^1 = (8, 16)^\top$ and $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ are feasible.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (2,3)x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

Question

Can you find an optimal solution?

An Instructive Example LP

The LP on the right is feasible...

E.g., $x^1 = (8, 16)^\top$ and $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ are feasible.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Question

Can you find an optimal solution?

x^1 has an objective of value 64 and x^2 has a value of $49 \longrightarrow x^1$ is definitely not optimal, but is x^2?

An Instructive Example LP

The LP on the right is feasible...

E.g., $x^1 = (8, 16)^\top$ and $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ are feasible.

$$\min \quad (2,3)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Question

Can you find an optimal solution?

x^1 has an objective of value 64 and x^2 has a value of $49 \longrightarrow x^1$ is definitely not optimal, but is x^2?

Feasible widths provide a lower-bound on the length of a shortest s, t-path...

An Instructive Example LP

The LP on the right is feasible...

E.g., $x^1 = (8, 16)^\top$ and $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ are feasible.

Question

Can you find an optimal solution?

x^1 has an objective of value 64 and x^2 has a value of 49 $\longrightarrow$ x^1 is definitely not optimal, but is x^2?

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (2,3)x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

Feasible widths provide a lower-bound on the length of a shortest s, t-path...

Question

Can we find a good lower-bound on the objective value of the above LP?

Deriving Valid Inequalities

Let's suppose that x is feasible for the LP on the right.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (2,3)x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

Deriving Valid Inequalities

Let's suppose that x is feasible for the LP on the right.

It follows that x satisfies

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Deriving Valid Inequalities

Let's suppose that x is feasible for the LP on the right.

It follows that x satisfies

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

and it also satisfies

$$\begin{array}{rl} & (2,1)x \geq 20 \\ + & (1,1)x \geq 18 \\ + & (-1,1)x \geq 8 \\ \hline = & (2,3)x \geq 46 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Deriving Valid Inequalities

Let's suppose that x is feasible for the LP on the right.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

It follows that x satisfies

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

and it also satisfies

$$\begin{array}{r} (2,1)x \geq 20 \\ +\ (1,1)x \geq 18 \\ +\ (-1,1)x \geq 8 \\ \hline =\ (2,3)x \geq 46 \end{array}$$

Additionally, it satisfies

$$\begin{array}{l} \quad y_1 \cdot (2,1)x \geq y_1 \cdot 20 \\ +\ y_2 \cdot (1,1)x \geq y_2 \cdot 18 \\ +\ y_3 \cdot (-1,1)x \geq y_3 \cdot 8 \\ \hline =\ (2y_1 + y_2 - y_3, y_1 + y_2 + y_3)x \\ \qquad\qquad \geq 20y_1 + 18y_2 + 8y_3 \end{array}$$

for $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$.

So, if x is feasible for the LP on the right, it also satisfies

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

So, if x is feasible for the LP on the right, it also satisfies

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq$$

$$(y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$.

E.g., for $y = (0, 2, 1)^\top$, we obtain

$$(1, 3)x \geq 44$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

So, if x is feasible for the LP on the right, it also satisfies

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$.

E.g., for $y = (0, 2, 1)^\top$, we obtain

$$(1, 3)x \geq 44$$

or

$$0 \geq 44 - (1, 3)x \qquad (\star)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2, 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

So, if x is feasible for the LP on the right, it also satisfies

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$.

E.g., for $y = (0, 2, 1)^\top$, we obtain

$$(1, 3)x \geq 44$$

or

$$0 \geq 44 - (1, 3)x \qquad (\star)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2, 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$z(x) \quad = \quad (2, 3)x$$

So, if x is feasible for the LP on the right, it also satisfies

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$.

E.g., for $y = (0, 2, 1)^\top$, we obtain

$$(1, 3)x \geq 44$$

or

$$0 \geq 44 - (1, 3)x \qquad (\star)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2, 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} z(x) &= (2, 3)x \\ &\geq (2, 3)x + 44 - (1, 3)x \\ &= 44 + (1, 0)x \end{aligned}$$

Since $x \geq \mathbb{0}$, it follows that

$$z(x) \geq 44$$

for every feasible solution x!

State of Affairs

We now know that

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

State of Affairs

We now know that

(i) $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ is a solution to the LP of value 49 and

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

State of Affairs

We now know that

(i) $x^2 = (5,13)^\top$ is a solution to the LP of value 49 and

(ii) $z(x) \geq 44$ for every feasible solution to the LP.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

State of Affairs

We now know that

(i) $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ is a solution to the LP of value 49 and

(ii) $z(x) \geq 44$ for every feasible solution to the LP.

$\longrightarrow$ The optimal value of the LP is in the interval $[44, 49]$.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2,3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

State of Affairs

We now know that

(i) $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ is a solution to the LP of value 49 and

(ii) $z(x) \geq 44$ for every feasible solution to the LP.

$\longrightarrow$ The optimal value of the LP is in the interval $[44, 49]$.

Can we find a better lowerbound on $z(x)$ for a feasible x?

$$\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & (2,3)x \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}$$

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

We know that a feasible x satisfies

$$0 \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} -$$

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$.

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

We know that a feasible x satisfies

$$0 \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} - (y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$. Therefore,

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} + \left((2, 3) - (y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) x \quad (\star)$$

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

We know that a feasible x satisfies

$$0 \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} - (y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$. Therefore,

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} + \left((2,3) - (y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) x \quad (\star)$$

We want the second term to be non-negative. Since $x \geq \mathbb{0}$, this amounts to choosing y such that

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \leq (2,3)$$

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

We know that a feasible x satisfies

$$0 \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} - (y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x$$

for any $y_1, y_2, y_3 \geq 0$. Therefore,

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} + \left((2,3) - (y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) x \quad (\star)$$

We want the second term to be non-negative. Since $x \geq \mathbb{0}$, this amounts to choosing y such that

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \leq (2,3)$$

With such a y we then have from $(\star)$:

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

So, we choose $y \geq \mathbb{0}$ such that

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \leq (2, 3) \quad (\star)$$

yields

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\Diamond)$$

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

So, we choose $y \geq \mathbb{0}$ such that

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \leq (2, 3) \quad (\star)$$

yields

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\Diamond)$$

Idea

Find the best possible lower-bound on z.

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

So, we choose $y \geq \mathbb{0}$ such that

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2) \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \leq (2, 3) \quad (\star)$$

yields

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3) \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\Diamond)$$

Idea

Find the best possible lower-bound on z. I.e., find $y \geq \mathbb{0}$ such that $(\star)$ holds, and the right-hand side of $(\Diamond)$ is maximized!

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

So, we choose $y \geq \mathbb{0}$ such that

$$(y_1, y_2, y_2)\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \leq (2,3) \quad (\star)$$

yields

$$z(x) \geq (y_1, y_2, y_3)\begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\Diamond)$$

Idea

Find the best possible lower-bound on z. I.e., find $y \geq \mathbb{0}$ such that ($\star$) holds, and the right-hand side of ($\Diamond$) is maximized!

This is a Linear Program:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & (20, 18, 8)y \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y \leq (2,3) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

This is a Linear Program:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (20, 18, 8)y \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y \leq (2, 3) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Solving it gives:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}_1 &= 0 \\ \bar{y}_2 &= 5/2 \\ \bar{y}_3 &= 1/2 \end{aligned}$$

and the objective value is 49.

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

This is a Linear Program:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (20, 18, 8)y \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y \leq (2, 3) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Solving it gives:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}_1 &= 0 \\ \bar{y}_2 &= 5/2 \\ \bar{y}_3 &= 1/2 \end{aligned}$$

and the objective value is 49.

There is no feasible solution x to

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2, 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

which has an objective value smaller than 49.

Lowerbounding $z(x)$ Systematically!

This is a Linear Program:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & (20, 18, 8)y \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y \leq (2, 3) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Solving it gives:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}_1 &= 0 \\ \bar{y}_2 &= 5/2 \\ \bar{y}_3 &= 1/2 \end{aligned}$$

and the objective value is 49.

There is no feasible solution x to

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & (2, 3)x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \begin{pmatrix} 20 \\ 18 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

which has an objective value smaller than 49.

Since $x^2 = (5, 13)^\top$ is a feasible solution with value 49, it must be optimal!

A General Argument

Suppose now we are given the LP

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

A General Argument

Suppose now we are given the LP

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Any feasible solution x must satisfy

$$y^\top Ax \geq y^\top b,$$

for $y \geq \mathbb{0}$,

A General Argument

Suppose now we are given the LP

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Any feasible solution x must satisfy

$$y^\top Ax \geq y^\top b,$$

for $y \geq \mathbb{0}$, and hence also

$$0 \geq y^\top b - y^\top Ax$$

A General Argument

Suppose now we are given the LP

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Any feasible solution x must satisfy

$$y^\top Ax \geq y^\top b,$$

for $y \geq \mathbb{0}$, and hence also

$$0 \geq y^\top b - y^\top Ax$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} z(x) &= c^\top x \\ &\geq c^\top x + y^\top b - y^\top Ax \end{aligned}$$

A General Argument

Suppose now we are given the LP

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Any feasible solution x must satisfy

$$y^\top Ax \geq y^\top b,$$

for $y \geq \mathbb{0}$, and hence also

$$0 \geq y^\top b - y^\top Ax$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} z(x) &= c^\top x \\ &\geq c^\top x + y^\top b - y^\top Ax \\ &= y^\top b + (c^\top - y^\top A)x \end{aligned}$$

A General Argument

Suppose now we are given the LP

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Any feasible solution x must satisfy

$$y^\top Ax \geq y^\top b,$$

for $y \geq \mathbb{0}$, and hence also

$$0 \geq y^\top b - y^\top Ax$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} z(x) &= c^\top x \\ &\geq c^\top x + y^\top b - y^\top Ax \\ &= y^\top b + (c^\top - y^\top A)x \end{aligned}$$

If we also know that

$$A^\top y \leq c$$

then $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ implies that $z(x) \geq y^\top b$.

A General Argument

Suppose now we are given the LP

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Any feasible solution x must satisfy

$$y^\top Ax \geq y^\top b,$$

for $y \geq \mathbb{0}$, and hence also

$$0 \geq y^\top b - y^\top Ax$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} z(x) &= c^\top x \\ &\geq c^\top x + y^\top b - y^\top Ax \\ &= y^\top b + (c^\top - y^\top A)x \end{aligned}$$

If we also know that

$$A^\top y \leq c$$

then $x \geq \mathbb{0}$ implies that $z(x) \geq y^\top b$.

The best lower-bound on $z(x)$ can be found by the following LP:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & b^\top y \\ \text{s.t.} & A^\top y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

The Dual LP

The linear program is called the dual of primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & b^T y \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

The Dual LP

The linear program is called the dual of primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & b^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Theorem

[Weak Duality] If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D), then $b^T \bar{y} \leq c^T \bar{x}$.

The Dual LP

The linear program

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & b^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \le c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

is called the dual of primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \ge b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Theorem

[Weak Duality] If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D), then $b^T\bar{y} \le c^T\bar{x}$.

Proof:

$$b^T\bar{y} = \bar{y}^T b$$

The Dual LP

The linear program is called the dual of primal LP

$$\begin{array}{rl} \max & b^T y \\ \text{s.t.} & A^T y \le c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{array} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\begin{array}{rl} \min & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} & Ax \ge b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \end{array} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Theorem

[Weak Duality] If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D), then $b^T \bar{y} \le c^T \bar{x}$.

Proof:

$$b^T \bar{y} = \bar{y}^T b \le \bar{y}^T (A\bar{x}) = (A^T \bar{y})^T \bar{x}$$

as $\bar{y} \ge \mathbb{0}$ and $b \le A\bar{x}$,

The Dual LP

The linear program is called the dual of primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & b^T y && \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \le c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x && \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \ge b \\ & x \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Theorem

[Weak Duality] If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D), then $b^T\bar{y} \le c^T\bar{x}$.

Proof:

$$b^T\bar{y} = \bar{y}^T b \le \bar{y}^T(A\bar{x}) = (A^T\bar{y})^T\bar{x} \le c^T\bar{x}$$

as $\bar{y} \ge \mathbb{0}$ and $b \le A\bar{x}$, as $\bar{x} \ge \mathbb{0}$ and $A^T\bar{y} \le c$. $\square$

Lowerbounding the Length of s, t-Paths

Recap: Shortest Path LP

Given a shortest path instance $G = (V, E)$, $s, t \in V$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, the shortest-path LP is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & \sum \big(c_e x_e : e \in E\big) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum \big(x_e \ : \ e \in \delta(U)\big) \geq 1 && (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$

Recap: Shortest Path LP

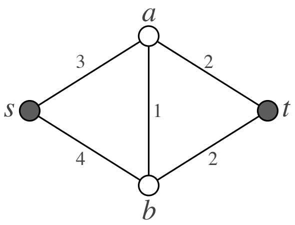
Given a shortest path instance $G = (V, E)$, $s, t \in V$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, the shortest-path LP is

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum \big(c_e x_e : e \in E \big) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum \big(x_e \, : \, e \in \delta(U) \big) \geq 1 \qquad\qquad (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \text{ integer} \end{aligned}$$

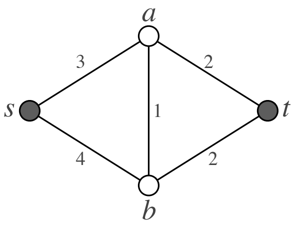
Let's look at an example!

Shortest Path: Example

On the right, we see a sample instance of the shortest-path problem.



Shortest Path: Example



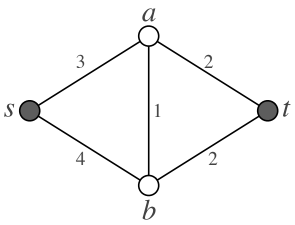
On the right, we see a sample instance of the shortest-path problem.

Here is the corresponding IP:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\min & (3,4,1,2,2)x & \\
\text{s.t.} & \begin{array}{l} \\ \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} x \geq \mathbb{1} & \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \text{ integer} &
\end{array}
$$

Shortest Path: Example

On the right, we see a sample instance of the shortest-path problem.



Here is the corresponding IP:

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{cc} & \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \mathbb{1} \end{array}$$

$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x$ integer

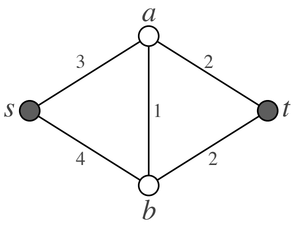
Note that if P is an s,t-path, then letting

$$\bar{x}_e = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e \text{ is an edge of } P \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

for all $e \in E$ yields a feasible IP solution and

Shortest Path: Example

On the right, we see a sample instance of the shortest-path problem.



Here is the corresponding IP:

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} x \geq \mathbb{1}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \text{ integer}$$

Note that if P is an s,t-path, then letting

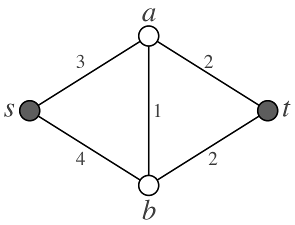
$$\bar{x}_e = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e \text{ is an edge of } P \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

for all $e \in E$ yields a feasible IP solution and its objective value is $c(P)$.

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c c} & \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} x \geq \mathbb{1}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \text{ integer}$$



Example:

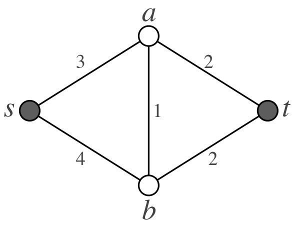
$$P = sa, ab, bt$$

is an s,t-path.

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} x \geq \mathbb{1}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \text{ integer}$$



Example:

$$P = sa, ab, bt$$

is an s,t-path.

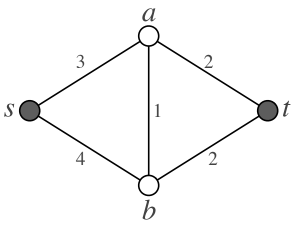
$$x = (1,0,1,0,1)^T$$

is feasible for the IP, and its value is 6.

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c|c} & \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \mathbb{1} \end{array}$$

$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x$ integer



Example:

$$P = sa, ab, bt$$

is an s,t-path.

$$x = (1,0,1,0,1)^T$$

is feasible for the IP, and its value is 6.

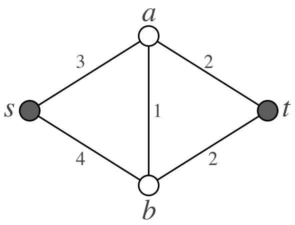
Remark

The optimal value of the shortest path IP is, at most, the length of a shortest s,t-path.

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} x \geq \mathbb{1}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \; \cancel{\text{integer}}$$

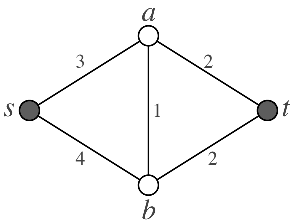


Note that dropping the integrality restriction can not increase the optimal value.

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{r c} & \begin{array}{ccccc} sa & sb & ab & at & bt \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{r} \{s\} \\ \{s,a\} \\ \{s,b\} \\ \{s,a,b\} \end{array} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \geq \mathbb{1} \end{array}$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x \; \cancel{\text{integer}}$$



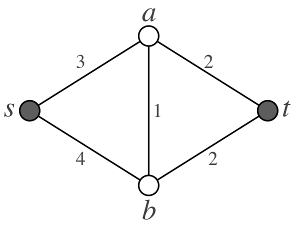
Note that dropping the integrality restriction can not increase the optimal value.

The resulting LP is called the linear programming relaxation of the IP.

$$\min \quad (3,4,1,2,2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c|ccccc} & sa & sb & ab & at & bt \\ \hline \{s\} & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \{s,a\} & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ \{s,b\} & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ \{s,a,b\} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array} \; x \geq \mathbb{1}$$

$x \geq \mathbb{0}, x$ ~~integer~~



Note that dropping the integrality restriction can not increase the optimal value.

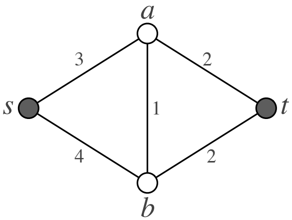
The resulting LP is called the linear programming relaxation of the IP.

Straight from Weak Duality theorem, we have that:

Remark

The dual of (P) has optimal value no larger than that of (P)!

The dual of the shortest path LP on the previous slide is given by

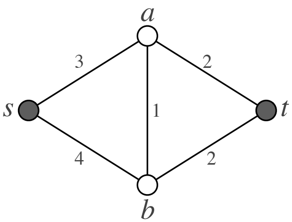


$$\max \quad \mathbb{1}^\top y$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ sa \\ sb \\ ab \\ at \\ bt \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \{s\} & \{s,a\} & \{s,b\} & \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} y \leq \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

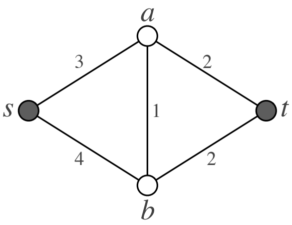
The dual of the shortest path LP on the previous slide is given by



$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \mathbb{1}^\top y \\
\text{s.t.} & \begin{array}{c} \\ sa \\ sb \\ ab \\ at \\ bt \end{array}
\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \{s\} & \{s,a\} & \{s,b\} & \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} y \le \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
& y \ge \mathbb{0}
\end{array}
$$

Note that dual solutions assign the value $y_U \ge 0$ to every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$!

The dual of the shortest path LP on the previous slide is given by



$$\max \quad \mathbb{1}^\top y$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ sa \\ sb \\ ab \\ at \\ bt \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \{s\} & \{s,a\} & \{s,b\} & \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} y \leq \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

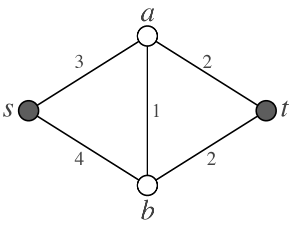
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note that dual solutions assign the value $y_U \geq 0$ to every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$!

Focus on the constraint for edge ab:

$$y_{\{s,a\}} + y_{\{s,b\}} \leq 1$$

The dual of the shortest path LP on the previous slide is given by



$$\max \quad \mathbb{1}^\top y$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c|c} & \{s\} \quad \{s,a\} \quad \{s,b\} \quad \{s,a,b\} \\ \begin{array}{c} sa \\ sb \\ ab \\ at \\ bt \end{array} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y \leq \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{array}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

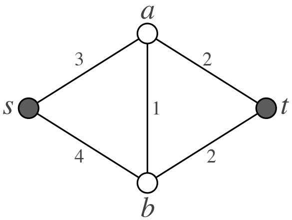
Note that dual solutions assign the value $y_U \geq 0$ to every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$!

Focus on the constraint for edge ab:

$$y_{\{s,a\}} + y_{\{s,b\}} \leq 1$$

The left-hand side is precisely the y-value assigned to s,t-cuts containing ab!

The dual of the shortest path LP on the previous slide is given by



$$\max \quad \mathbb{1}^\top y$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{array}{c} \\ sa \\ sb \\ ab \\ at \\ bt \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{cccc} \{s\} & \{s,a\} & \{s,b\} & \{s,a,b\} \end{array} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{array} y \leq \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note that dual solutions assign the value $y_U \geq 0$ to every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$!

Remark

y is feasible for the above LP if and only if it is a feasible width assignment for the s,t-cuts in the given shortest path instance!

General Shortest Path Instances

Input: $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$.

General Shortest Path Instances

Input: $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$.

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \, : \, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \, : \, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad\qquad\qquad (\delta(U) \ s,t-\text{cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

General Shortest Path Instances

Input: $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$.

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad\qquad\qquad (\delta(U)\ s,t-\text{cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \qquad\qquad \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where

General Shortest Path Instances

Input: $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$.

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad\qquad (\delta(U)\ s,t-\text{cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$.

General Shortest Path Instances

Input: $G = (V, E)$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$.

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad\qquad (\delta(U) \; s,t-\text{cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$.

(ii) $A[U, e] = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$ and 0 otherwise.

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Its dual is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \mathbb{1}^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$.

(ii) $A[U,e] = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$, and 0 otherwise.

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x \qquad \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$.

(ii) $A[U,e] = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$, and 0 otherwise.

Its dual is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \mathbb{1}^T y \qquad \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the dual has a constraint for every edge $e \in E$.

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x && \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$.

(ii) $A[U,e] = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$, and 0 otherwise.

Its dual is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \mathbb{1}^T y && \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the dual has a constraint for every edge $e \in E$. The left-hand side of this constraint is

$$\sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x && \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$.

(ii) $A[U,e] = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$, and 0 otherwise.

Its dual is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \mathbb{1}^T y && \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the dual has a constraint for every edge $e \in E$. The left-hand side of this constraint is

$$\sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

and the right-hand side is c_e.

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$.

(ii) $A[U, e] = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$, and 0 otherwise.

Its dual is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \mathbb{1}^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the dual has a constraint for every edge $e \in E$. The left-hand side of this constraint is

$$\sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

and the right-hand side is c_e.

Remark

Feasible solutions to (D) correspond precisely to feasible width assignments.

The LP is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & Ax \geq \mathbb{1} \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where

(i) A has a column for every edge and a row for every s,t-cut $\delta(U)$.

(ii) $A[U,e] = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$, and 0 otherwise.

Its dual is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \mathbb{1}^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the dual has a constraint for every edge $e \in E$. The left-hand side of this constraint is

$$\sum (y_U \ : \ e \in \delta(U))$$

and the right-hand side is c_e.

Remark

Feasible solutions to (D) correspond precisely to feasible width assignments. Weak duality implies that $\sum y_U$ is, at most, the length of a shortest s,t-path!

Recap

- The dual LP of

$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$

is given by

$$\max\{b^T y \,:\, A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{D}$$

Recap

- The dual LP of
$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$
is given by
$$\max\{b^T y \,:\, A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{D}$$
- If x is feasible for (P) and y feasible for (D), then $b^T y \leq c^T x$.

Recap

- The dual LP of
$$\min\{c^T x : Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$
is given by
$$\max\{b^T y : A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{D}$$
- If x is feasible for (P) and y feasible for (D), then $b^T y \leq c^T x$.
- The LP relaxation of an integer program is obtained by dropping the integrality restriction.

Recap

- The dual LP of
$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{P}$$
is given by
$$\max\{b^T y \,:\, A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \tag{D}$$

- If x is feasible for (P) and y feasible for (D), then $b^T y \leq c^T x$.

- The LP relaxation of an integer program is obtained by dropping the integrality restriction.

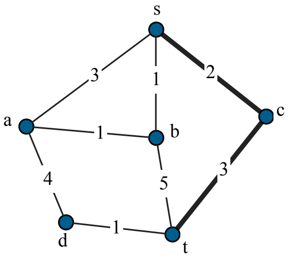
- The dual of the shortest path LP is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_U \,:\, \delta(U)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Module 3: Duality through examples (Shortest Path Algorithm)

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

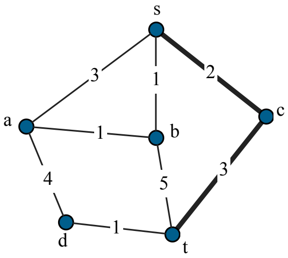
The figure on the right shows another simple instance of the shortest s, t-path problem.



Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

The figure on the right shows another simple instance of the shortest s, t-path problem.

By inspection: shortest s, t-path (bold edges) has length 5

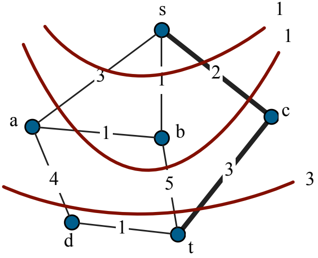


Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

The figure on the right shows another simple instance of the shortest s,t-path problem.

By inspection: shortest s,t-path (bold edges) has length 5

There is a feasible width assignment of value 5, proving optimality!

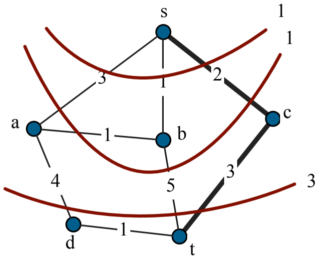


Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

The figure on the right shows another simple instance of the shortest s, t-path problem.

By inspection: shortest s, t-path (bold edges) has length 5

There is a feasible width assignment of value 5, proving optimality!



Shortest path LP:

$$\min \quad \sum(x_e \,:\, e \in E)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1$$

$$(\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

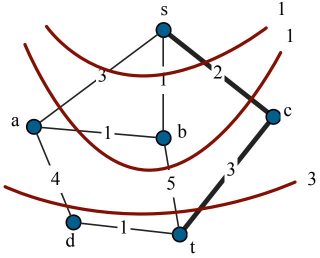
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

The figure on the right shows another simple instance of the shortest s, t-path problem.

By inspection: shortest s, t-path (bold edges) has length 5

There is a feasible width assignment of value 5, proving optimality!



Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum(x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum(y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

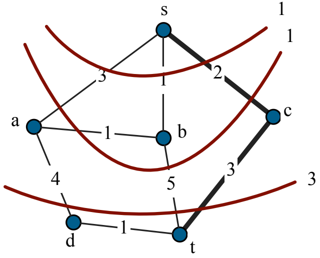
Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

Shortest path LP:

$$\min \quad \sum(c_e x_e \;:\; e \in E)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum(x_e \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$



Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum(y_S \;:\; \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum(y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \qquad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Letting

$$x_e = \begin{cases} 1 & e \textbf{ bold} \text{ in figure} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

for all $e \in E$ is feasible for shortest path LP.

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

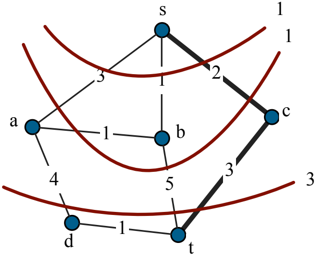
Shortest path LP:

$$\min \quad \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1$$

$$(\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$



Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e$$

$$(e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Letting

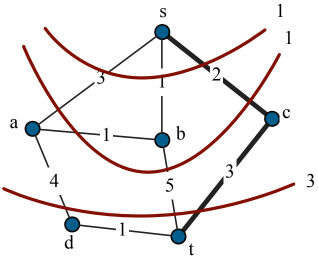
$$y_{\{s\}} = y_{\{s,b\}} = 1, \; y_{\{s,a,b,c\}} = 3,$$

and $y_S = 0$ for all other s,t-cuts $\delta(S)$ yields a feasible dual solution of value 5!

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (x_e \;:\; e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$



Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

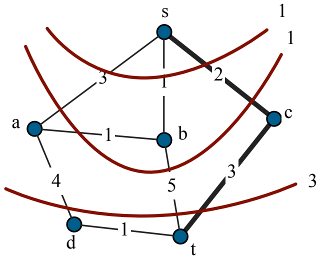
Weak Duality Theorem

If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for shortest path LP, and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for its dual then $b^T\bar{y} \leq c^T\bar{x}$.

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$



Shortest path dual:

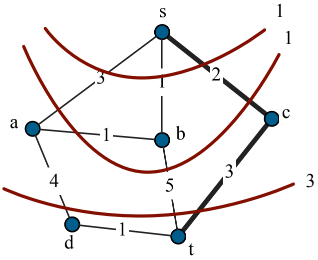
$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Weak Duality Theorem

If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for shortest path LP, and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for its dual then $b^T\bar{y} \leq c^T\bar{x}$.

$\longrightarrow$ **Bold** path in figure is shortest s,t-path!

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality



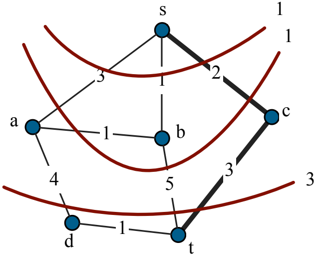
Today:

1. How did we find the bold path?

Weak Duality Theorem

If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for shortest path LP, and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for its dual then $b^T\bar{y} \le c^T\bar{x}$.

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality



Weak Duality Theorem

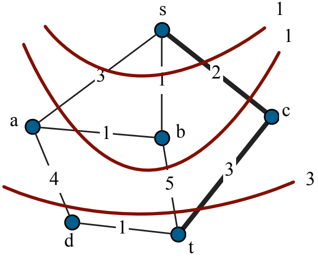
If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for shortest path LP, and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for its dual then $b^T\bar{y} \leq c^T\bar{x}$.

$\longrightarrow$ **Bold** path in figure is shortest s, t-path!

Today:

1. How did we find the bold path?
2. How did we find the dual solution?

Recap: Feasible Widths via Duality



Weak Duality Theorem

If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for shortest path LP, and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for its dual then $b^T\bar{y} \leq c^T\bar{x}$.

$\longrightarrow$ **Bold** path in figure is shortest s, t-path!

Today:

1. How did we find the bold path?
2. How did we find the dual solution?
3. Is there always a shortest s, t-path and a dual solution whose value matches its length?

An Algorithm for the Shortest s, t-Path Problem

Arcs and Directed Paths

So far: edges of a graph $G = (V, E)$ are unordered pairs of vertices.

Arcs and Directed Paths

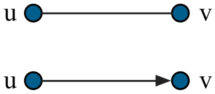
So far: edges of a graph $G = (V, E)$ are unordered pairs of vertices.

Now: introduce arcs – ordered pairs of vertices.

Arcs and Directed Paths

So far: edges of a graph $G = (V, E)$ are unordered pairs of vertices.

Now: introduce arcs – ordered pairs of vertices. Denote an arc from u to v as $\overrightarrow{uv}$, and draw it as arrow from u to v.



Arcs and Directed Paths

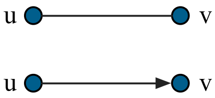
So far: edges of a graph $G = (V, E)$ are unordered pairs of vertices.

Now: introduce arcs – ordered pairs of vertices. Denote an arc from u to v as $\overrightarrow{uv}$, and draw it as arrow from u to v.

A directed path is then a sequence of arcs:

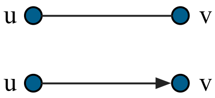
$$\overrightarrow{v_1 v_2}, \overrightarrow{v_2 v_3}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{v_{k-1} v_k},$$

where $\overrightarrow{v_i v_{i+1}}$ is an arc in the given graph, and $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$.



Arcs and Directed Paths

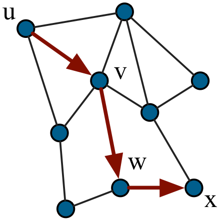
So far: edges of a graph $G = (V, E)$ are unordered pairs of vertices.



Now: introduce arcs – ordered pairs of vertices. Denote an arc from u to v as $\overrightarrow{uv}$, and draw it as arrow from u to v.

A directed path is then a sequence of arcs:

$$\overrightarrow{v_1v_2}, \overrightarrow{v_2v_3}, \ldots, \overrightarrow{v_{k-1}v_k},$$



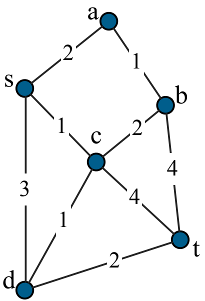
where $\overrightarrow{v_iv_{i+1}}$ is an arc in the given graph, and $v_i \neq v_j$ for all $i \neq j$.

Example:

$$\overrightarrow{uv}, \overrightarrow{vw}, \overrightarrow{wx}$$

is a directed u, x-path.

Shortest Paths: Algorithmic Ideas



Idea: Find an s,t-path P and a feasible dual y s.t. $c(P) = \mathbb{1}^T y$. How?

Recall the shortest path dual:

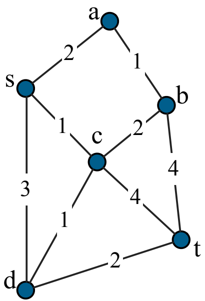
$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \; : \; \delta(S) \; s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \; : \; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Algorithmic Ideas

Idea: Find an s,t-path P and a feasible dual y s.t. $c(P) = \mathbb{1}^T y$. How?



Definition

Let y be a feasible dual solution. The slack of an edge $e \in E$ is defined as

$$\text{slack}_y(e) = c_e - \sum(y_U : \delta(U)\ s,t\text{-cut},\ e \in \delta(U))$$

Recall the shortest path dual:

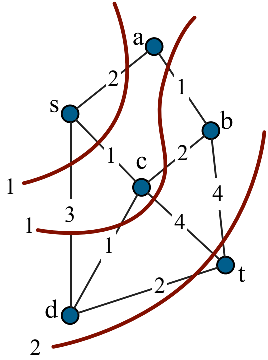
$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum(y_S : \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(y_S : e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Algorithmic Ideas

Definition

Let y be a feasible dual solution. The slack of an edge $e \in E$ is defined as

$$\text{slack}_y(e) = c_e - \sum(y_U \; : \; \delta(U) \; s,t\text{-cut}, \; e \in \delta(U))$$



Examples: for the dual y given on the right,

- $\text{slack}_y(sa) =$

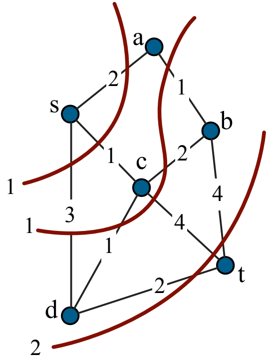
$$\begin{array}{rl} \max & \sum(y_S \; : \; \delta(S) \; s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} & \sum(y_S \; : \; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Shortest Paths: Algorithmic Ideas

Definition

Let y be a feasible dual solution. The slack of an edge $e \in E$ is defined as

$$\text{slack}_y(e) = c_e - \sum(y_U \; : \; \delta(U) \; s,t\text{-cut}, \; e \in \delta(U))$$



Examples: for the dual y given on the right,

- $\text{slack}_y(sa) = 2 - 1 = 1$

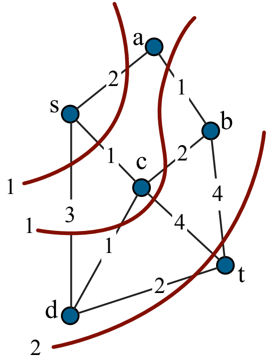
$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum(y_S \; : \; \delta(S) \; s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(y_S \; : \; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Algorithmic Ideas

Definition

Let y be a feasible dual solution. The slack of an edge $e \in E$ is defined as

$$\mathsf{slack}_y(e) = c_e - \sum(y_U \ : \ \delta(U) \ s,t\text{-cut}, \ e \in \delta(U))$$



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum(y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

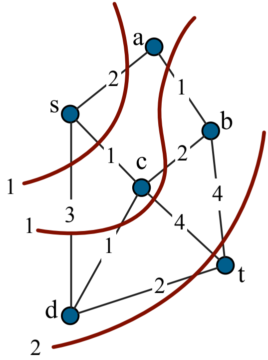
Examples: for the dual y given on the right,

- $\mathsf{slack}_y(sa) = 2 - 1 = 1$
- $\mathsf{slack}_y(sd) =$

Definition

Let y be a feasible dual solution. The slack of an edge $e \in E$ is defined as

$$\text{slack}_y(e) = c_e - \sum(y_U \ : \ \delta(U) \ s,t\text{-cut}, \ e \in \delta(U))$$



Examples: for the dual y given on the right,

- $\text{slack}_y(sa) = 2 - 1 = 1$
- $\text{slack}_y(sd) = 3 - 1 - 1 = 1$

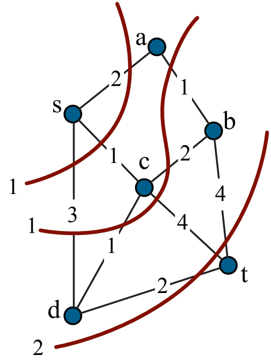
$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum(y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Algorithmic Ideas

Definition

Let y be a feasible dual solution. The slack of an edge $e \in E$ is defined as

$$\text{slack}_y(e) = c_e - \sum(y_U \ : \ \delta(U) \ s,t\text{-cut}, \ e \in \delta(U))$$



Examples: for the dual y given on the right,

- $\text{slack}_y(sa) = 2 - 1 = 1$
- $\text{slack}_y(sd) = 3 - 1 - 1 = 1$
- $\text{slack}_y(ct) =$

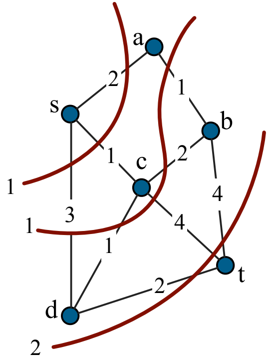
$$\begin{array}{rl} \max & \sum(y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} & \sum(y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Shortest Paths: Algorithmic Ideas

Definition

Let y be a feasible dual solution. The slack of an edge $e \in E$ is defined as

$$\mathsf{slack}_y(e) = c_e - \sum (y_U \ : \ \delta(U) \ s,t\text{-cut},\ e \in \delta(U))$$



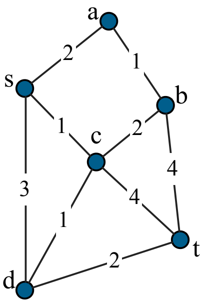
Examples: for the dual y given on the right,

- $\mathsf{slack}_y(sa) = 2 - 1 = 1$
- $\mathsf{slack}_y(sd) = 3 - 1 - 1 = 1$
- $\mathsf{slack}_y(ct) = 4 - 1 - 2 = 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

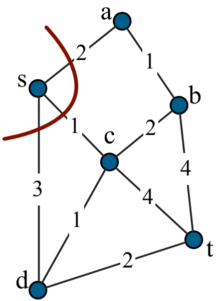
$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

Simplest s,t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$



$$\max \quad \sum(y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

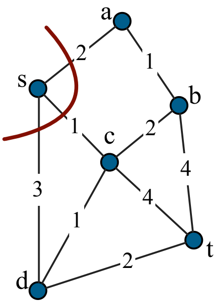
$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum(y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

Simplest s, t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$
$\longrightarrow$ increase $y_{\{s\}}$ as much as we can maintaining feasibility

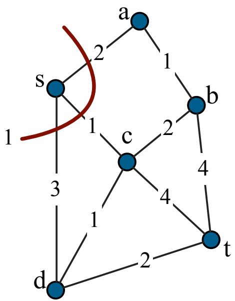


$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad\qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

Simplest s,t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$
$\longrightarrow$ increase $y_{\{s\}}$ as much as we can maintaining feasibility
$\longrightarrow$ $y_{\{s\}} = 1$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

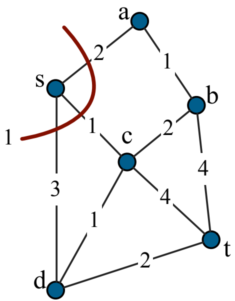
$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

Simplest s, t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$
$\longrightarrow$ increase $y_{\{s\}}$ as much as we can
maintaining feasibility
$\longrightarrow$ $y_{\{s\}} = 1$

Note: This decreases the slack of sc to 0!



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \, : \, \delta(S) \ s, t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \, : \, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

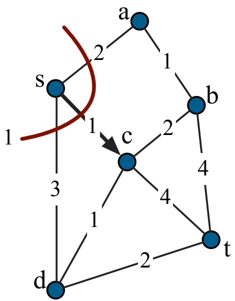
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

Simplest s,t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$
$\longrightarrow$ increase $y_{\{s\}}$ as much as we can maintaining feasibility
$\longrightarrow$ $y_{\{s\}} = 1$

Note: This decreases the slack of sc to 0!
$\longrightarrow$ replace sc by $\overrightarrow{sc}$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

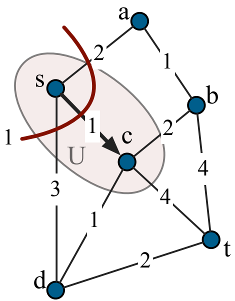
Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

Simplest s,t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$
$\longrightarrow$ increase $y_{\{s\}}$ as much as we can maintaining feasibility
$\longrightarrow$ $y_{\{s\}} = 1$

Note: This decreases the slack of sc to 0!
$\longrightarrow$ replace sc by $\overrightarrow{sc}$

Next: Look at all vertices that are reachable from s via directed paths:

$$U = \{s, c\}$$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

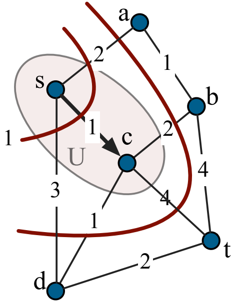
Simplest s,t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$
$\longrightarrow$ increase $y_{\{s\}}$ as much as we can
maintaining feasibility
$\longrightarrow$ $y_{\{s\}} = 1$

Note: This decreases the slack of sc to 0!
$\longrightarrow$ replace sc by $\overrightarrow{sc}$

Next: Look at all vertices that are reachable from s via directed paths:

$$U = \{s, c\}$$

and consider increasing y_U



$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Start with the trivial dual $y = \mathbb{0}$

Simplest s,t-cut: $\delta(\{s\})$
$\longrightarrow$ increase $y_{\{s\}}$ as much as we can maintaining feasibility
$\longrightarrow$ $y_{\{s\}} = 1$

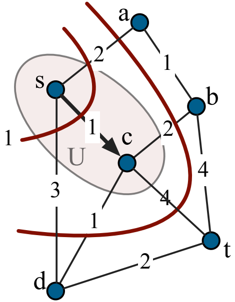
Note: This decreases the slack of sc to 0!
$\longrightarrow$ replace sc by $\overrightarrow{sc}$

Next: Look at all vertices that are reachable from s via directed paths:

$$U = \{s, c\}$$

and consider increasing y_U

Q: By how much can you increase y_U?



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

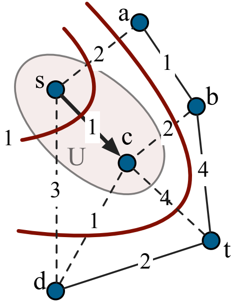
$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

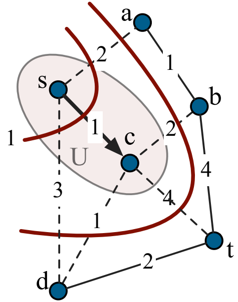
$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(sa) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(cb) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(cd) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(sd) &= \end{aligned}$$



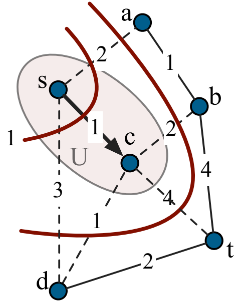
$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{slack}_y(sa) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \\
\text{slack}_y(cb) &= \\
\text{slack}_y(ct) &= \\
\text{slack}_y(cd) &= \\
\text{slack}_y(sd) &=
\end{aligned}$$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

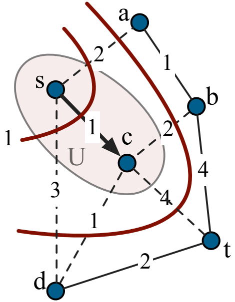
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(sa) &= 2-1=1 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(cb) &= 2 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(cd) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(sd) &= \end{aligned}$$



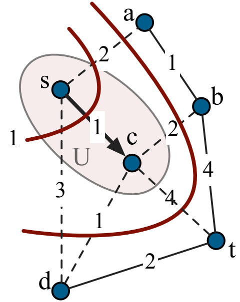
$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{slack}_y(sa) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \\
\text{slack}_y(cb) &= 2 \\
\text{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 \\
\text{slack}_y(cd) &= \\
\text{slack}_y(sd) &=
\end{aligned}$$



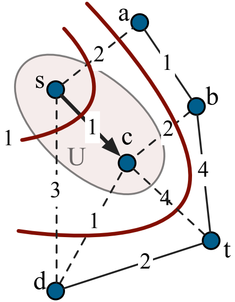
$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum(y_S : \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(y_S : e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\
& (e \in E) \\
& y \ge \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$\begin{aligned} \text{slack}_y(sa) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \\ \text{slack}_y(cb) &= 2 \\ \text{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 \\ \text{slack}_y(cd) &= 1 \\ \text{slack}_y(sd) &= \end{aligned}$$



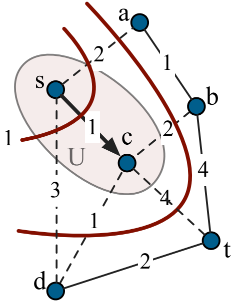
$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{slack}_y(sa) &= 2-1=1\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(cb) &= 2\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= 4\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(cd) &= 1\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(sd) &= 3-1=2
\end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})\\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e\\
& \qquad (e \in E)\\
& y \ge \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}$$

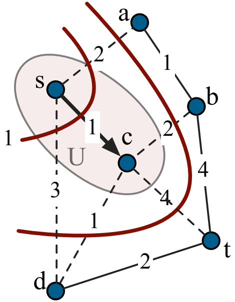
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{slack}_y(sa) &= 2-1=1\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(cb) &= 2\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= 4\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(cd) &= 1\\
\mathsf{slack}_y(sd) &= 3-1=2
\end{aligned}
$$

Edges cd and sa minimize slack. Pick one arbitrarily: sa.



$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})\\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\
& \qquad\qquad (e \in E)\\
& y \ge \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

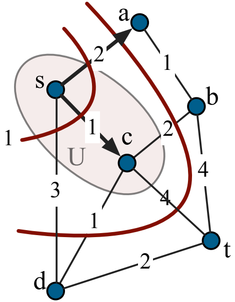
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: By how much can you increase y_U? The

maximum increase possible for $y_{\{s,c\}}$ is determined by the slack of edges in $\delta(\{s,c\})$!

$$\begin{aligned} \text{slack}_y(sa) &= 2-1=1 \\ \text{slack}_y(cb) &= 2 \\ \text{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 \\ \text{slack}_y(cd) &= 1 \\ \text{slack}_y(sd) &= 3-1=2 \end{aligned}$$

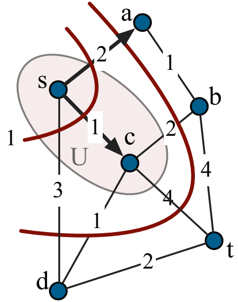
Edges cd and sa minimize slack. Pick one arbitrarily: sa.
Set $y_U = \text{slack}_y(sa) = 1$ and convert sa into arc $\overrightarrow{sa}$



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S : \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S : e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: Which vertices are reachable from s via directed paths?



$$\max \quad \sum(y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

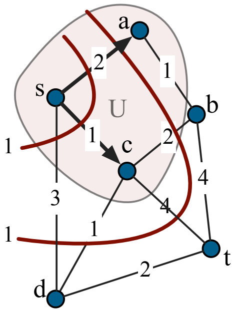
$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum(y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: Which vertices are reachable from s via directed paths?

$$U = \{s, a, c\}$$



$$\max \quad \sum(y_S \,:\, \delta(S) \; s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum(y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

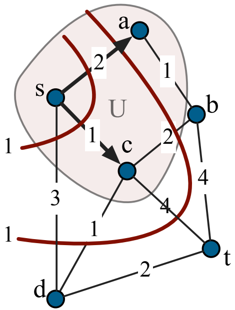
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: Which vertices are reachable from s via directed paths?

$$U = \{s, a, c\}$$

Natural idea: Increase $y_{\{s,a,c\}}$ by as much as we can. How much?



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

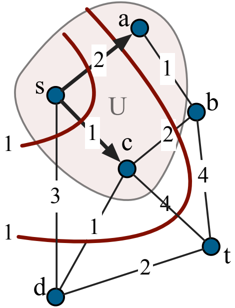
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: Which vertices are reachable from s via directed paths?

$$U = \{s, a, c\}$$

Natural idea: Increase $y_{\{s,a,c\}}$ by as much as we can. How much?
$\longrightarrow$ the slack of cd is 0, and hence

$$y_{\{s,a,c\}} = 0$$



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S : \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S : e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Q: Which vertices are reachable from s via directed paths?

$$U = \{s, a, c\}$$

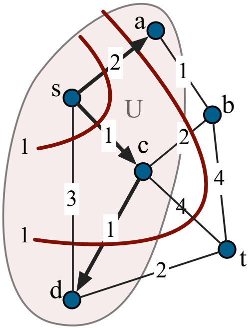
Natural idea: Increase $y_{\{s,a,c\}}$ by as much as we can. How much?
$\longrightarrow$ the slack of cd is 0, and hence

$$y_{\{s,a,c\}} = 0$$

Also: change cd into $\overrightarrow{cd}$, and let

$$U = \{s, a, c, d\}$$

be the reachable vertices from s

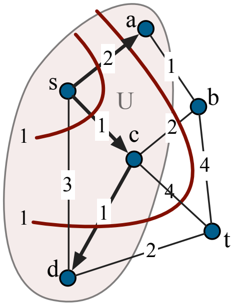


$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S : \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S : e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, c, d\}$$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

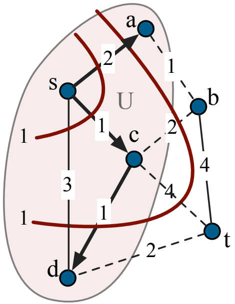
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{slack}_y(ab) &= \\
\mathsf{slack}_y(cb) &= \\
\mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= \\
\mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &=
\end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\
& \qquad (e \in E) \\
& y \ge \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}$$

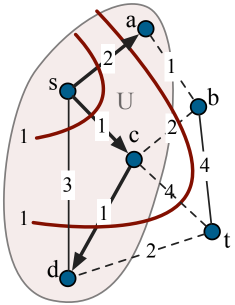
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(ab) &= 1 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(cb) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &= \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

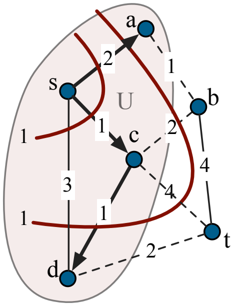
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{slack}_y(ab) &= 1 \\
\text{slack}_y(cb) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \\
\text{slack}_y(ct) &= \\
\text{slack}_y(dt) &=
\end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\
& \qquad (e \in E) \\
& y \ge \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}$$

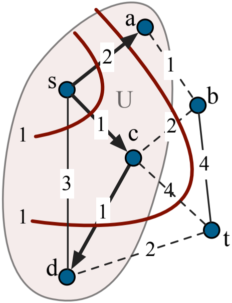
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{slack}_y(ab) &= 1 \\
\text{slack}_y(cb) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \\
\text{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 - 1 = 3 \\
\text{slack}_y(dt) &=
\end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\
& \qquad (e \in E) \\
& y \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, c, d\}$$

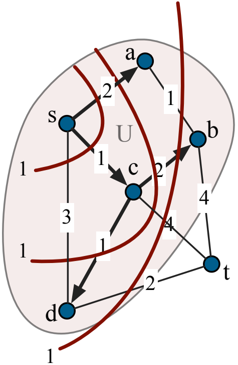
Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathsf{slack}_y(ab) &= 1 \\
\mathsf{slack}_y(cb) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \\
\mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 - 1 = 3 \\
\mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &= 2
\end{aligned}$$

Let $y_{\{s,a,c,d\}} = 1$, add equality arc $\overrightarrow{cb}$, and update the set

$$U = \{s, a, b, c, d\}$$

of vertices reachable from s

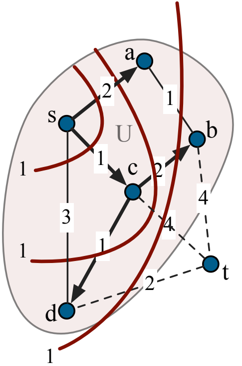


$$\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum (y_S : \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S : e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\
& \qquad (e \in E) \\
& y \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, b, c, d\}$$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

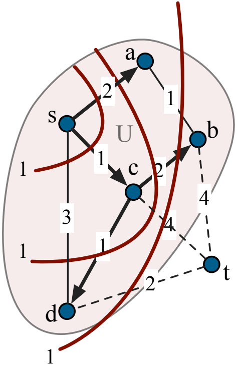
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, b, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(bt) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &= \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

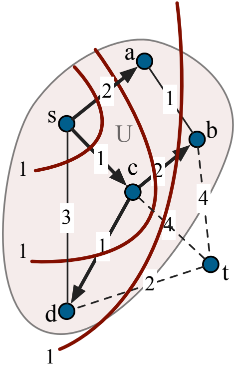
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, b, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(bt) &= 4 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &= \end{aligned}$$



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

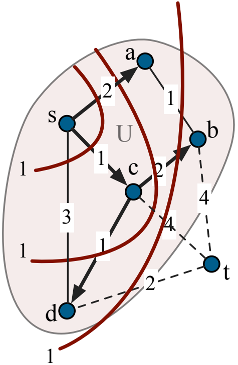
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, b, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(bt) &= 4 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 - 2 = 2 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &= \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad\qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

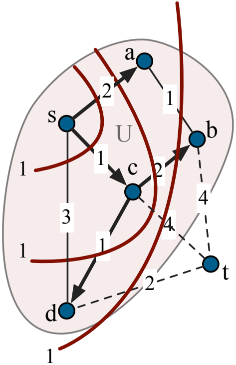
Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, b, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(bt) &= 4 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 - 2 = 2 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \, : \, \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \, : \, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

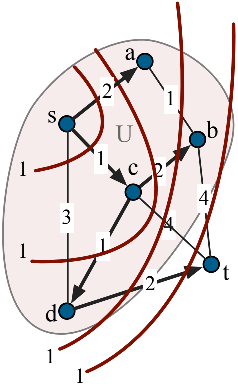
Vertices reachable from s by directed paths:

$$U = \{s, a, b, c, d\}$$

Let us compute the slack of edges in $\delta(U)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{slack}_y(bt) &= 4 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(ct) &= 4 - 2 = 2 \\ \mathsf{slack}_y(dt) &= 2 - 1 = 1 \end{aligned}$$

Let $y_{\{s,a,b,c,d\}} = 1$, add equality arc $\overrightarrow{dt}$.



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

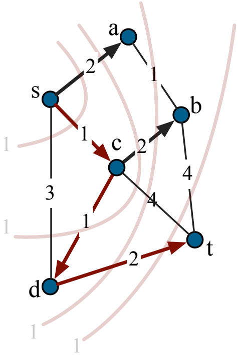
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Note: we now have a directed s, t-path in our graph:

$$P = \overrightarrow{sc}, \overrightarrow{cd}, \overrightarrow{dt},$$

and its length is 4!



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Note: we now have a directed s,t-path in our graph:

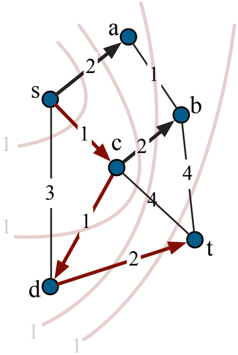
$$P = \overrightarrow{sc}, \overrightarrow{cd}, \overrightarrow{dt},$$

and its length is 4!

We also have a feasible dual solution:

$$y_{\{s\}} = y_{\{s,c\}} = y_{\{s,a,c,d\}} = y_{\{s,a,b,c,d\}} = 1,$$

and $y_U = 0$ otherwise.



$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Note: we now have a directed s,t-path in our graph:

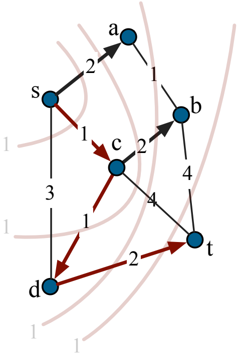
$$P = \overrightarrow{sc}, \overrightarrow{cd}, \overrightarrow{dt},$$

and its length is 4!

We also have a feasible dual solution:

$$y_{\{s\}} = y_{\{s,c\}} = y_{\{s,a,c,d\}} = y_{\{s,a,b,c,d\}} = 1,$$

and $y_U = 0$ otherwise. Its value is 4!



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad\qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Paths: Building Duals Incrementally

Note: we now have a directed s,t-path in our graph:

$$P = \overrightarrow{sc}, \overrightarrow{cd}, \overrightarrow{dt},$$

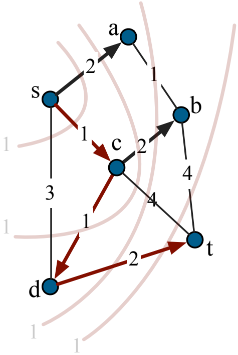
and its length is 4!

We also have a feasible dual solution:

$$y_{\{s\}} = y_{\{s,c\}} = y_{\{s,a,c,d\}} = y_{\{s,a,b,c,d\}} = 1,$$

and $y_U = 0$ otherwise. Its value is 4!

$\longrightarrow$ Path P is a shortest path!



$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \le c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest Path Algorithm

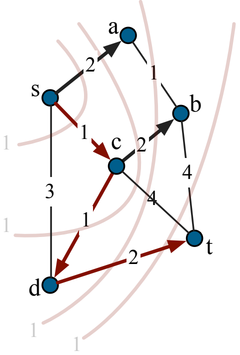
To compute the shortest Path for the instance on the right, we used the following algorithm:

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
    Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
    $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
    $U := U \cup \{b\}$
    change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.



Recap

- We saw a shortest path algorithm that computes
  (a) an s, t-path P, and
  (b) a feasible solution y for the dual of the shortest path LP

  simultaneously

Recap

- We saw a shortest path algorithm that computes
  (a) an s, t-path P, and
  (b) a feasible solution y for the dual of the shortest path LP

  simultaneously

- We will soon show, that the length of the output path P, and the value of the dual solution y are the same, showing that both P and y are optimal

Recap

- We saw a shortest path algorithm that computes

  (a) an s, t-path P, and

  (b) a feasible solution y for the dual of the shortest path LP

  simultaneously

- We will soon show, that the length of the output path P, and the value of the dual solution y are the same, showing that both P and y are optimal

- Have a look at the book. It has another full example run of the shortest path algorithm

Module 3: Duality through examples (Correctness Shortest Path Algorithm)

Recap: Shortest Path Algorithm

Previous lecture: we showed an algorithm for the shortest path problem that computes

- An s,t-path P

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad\qquad (\delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad\qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Recap: Shortest Path Algorithm

Previous lecture: we showed an algorithm for the shortest path problem that computes

- An s,t-path P whose characteristic vector, x^P, is feasible for the shortest path LP, and

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \ : \ e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Recap: Shortest Path Algorithm

Previous lecture: we showed an algorithm for the shortest path problem that computes

- An s,t-path P whose characteristic vector, x^P, is feasible for the shortest path LP, and
- a feasible solution, y, for the dual of the shortest path LP.

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Recap: Shortest Path Algorithm

Previous lecture: we showed an algorithm for the shortest path problem that computes

- An s, t-path P whose characteristic vector, x^P, is feasible for the shortest path LP, and
- a feasible solution, y, for the dual of the shortest path LP.

Important: $c^T x = \mathbb{1}^T y$

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad\qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad\qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Recap: Shortest Path Algorithm

Previous lecture: we showed an algorithm for the shortest path problem that computes

- An s,t-path P whose characteristic vector, x^P, is feasible for the shortest path LP, and
- a feasible solution, y, for the dual of the shortest path LP.

Important: $c^T x = \mathbb{1}^T y \rightarrow P$ is a shortest path!

Shortest path LP:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & \sum(c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\ \text{s.t.} & \sum(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \sum(y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} & \sum(y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{array}$$

Recap: Shortest Path Algorithm

Previous lecture: we showed an algorithm for the shortest path problem that computes

- An s,t-path P whose characteristic vector, x^P, is feasible for the shortest path LP, and
- a feasible solution, y, for the dual of the shortest path LP.

Important: $c^T x = \mathbb{1}^T y \rightarrow P$ is a shortest path!

We will start this lecture with another example!

Shortest path LP:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & \sum (c_e x_e \,:\, e \in E) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \geq 1 \\
& \qquad\qquad (\delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\
& x \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

Shortest path dual:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \sum (y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\
& \qquad\qquad (e \in E) \\
& y \geq \mathbb{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

Recall the algorithm we developed previously:

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
while t ∉ U do
    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
    y_U := slack_y(ab)
    U := U ∪ {b}
    change edge ab into an arc →ab
end while
return A directed st-path P.
```

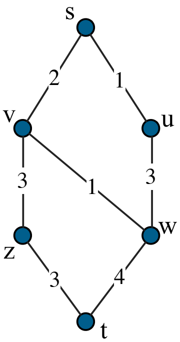
Recall the algorithm we developed previously:

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
    Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
    $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
    $U := U \cup \{b\}$
    change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.



$\longrightarrow$ Run this on the example instance on the right.

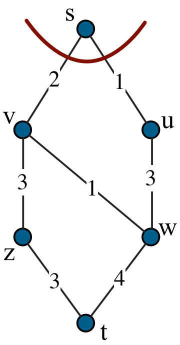
Recall the algorithm we developed previously:

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
  Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
  $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
  $U := U \cup \{b\}$
  change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.

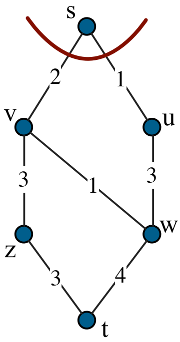


$\longrightarrow$ Run this on the example instance on the right.

Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

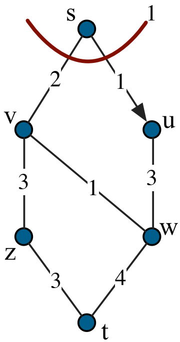
Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$



Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 $\quad su$ edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1



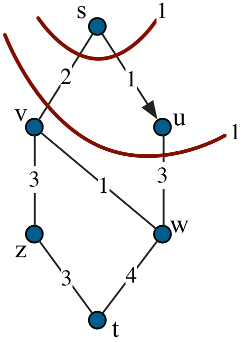
Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 $\quad su$ edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$

$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 $\quad$ Now: $U = \{s, u\}$

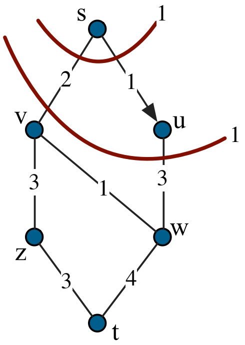
Slack-minimal edge is sv



Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

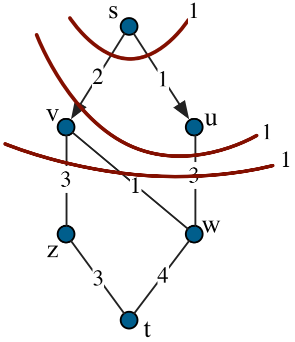


Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw

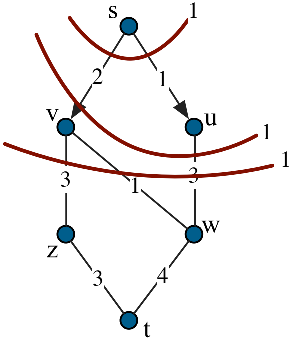


Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 $\quad su$ edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 $\quad$ Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $\quad U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1



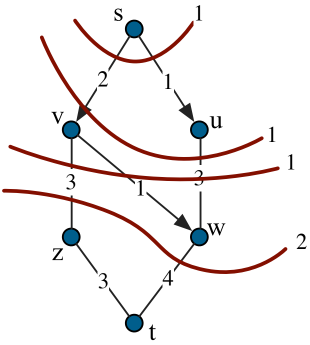
Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 4 $U = \{s, v, u, w\}$
Slack minimizer is vz



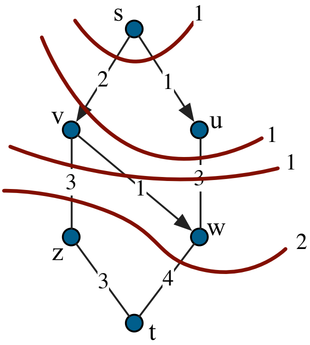
Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 4 $U = \{s, v, u, w\}$
Slack minimizer is vz
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2



Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

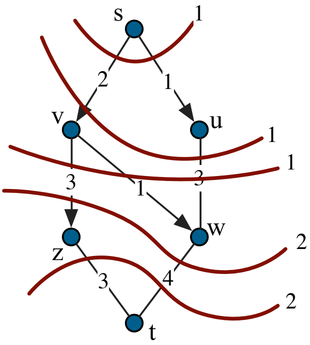
Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 4 $U = \{s, v, u, w\}$
Slack minimizer is vz
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2

Step 5 $U = \{s, v, u, w, z\}$
Slack minimizer is wt



Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

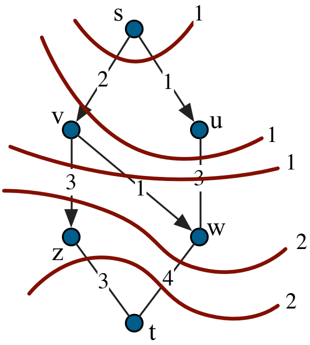
Step 1 $\quad su$ edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 $\quad$ Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $\quad U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 4 $\quad U = \{s, v, u, w\}$
Slack minimizer is vz
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2

Step 5 $\quad U = \{s, v, u, w, z\}$
Slack minimizer is wt
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2



Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

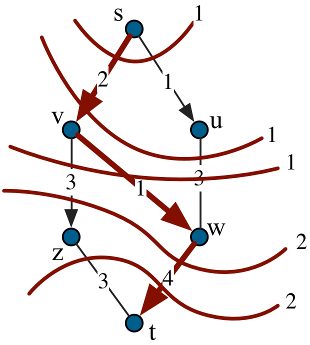
Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 4 $U = \{s, v, u, w\}$
Slack minimizer is vz
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2

Step 5 $U = \{s, v, u, w, z\}$
Slack minimizer is wt
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2



Now: We have a directed s,t-path P of length 7,

Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

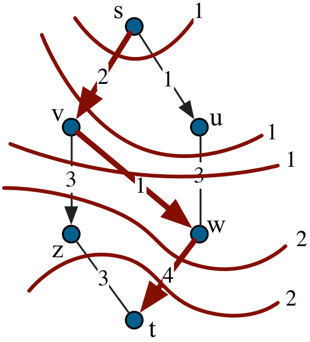
Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 4 $U = \{s, v, u, w\}$
Slack minimizer is vz
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2

Step 5 $U = \{s, v, u, w, z\}$
Slack minimizer is wt
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2



Now: We have a directed s,t-path P of length 7, and a dual feasible solution of the same value!

Initially: $y = \mathbb{0}$ and $U = \{s\}$

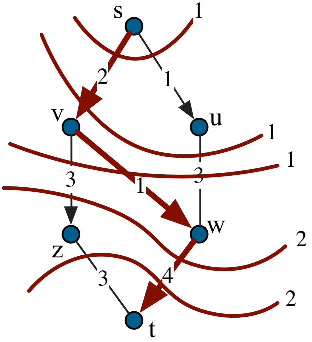
Step 1 su edge with smallest slack in $\delta(U)$
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 2 Now: $U = \{s, u\}$
Slack-minimal edge is sv
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 3 $U = \{s, v, u\}$
Slack minimizer is vw
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 1

Step 4 $U = \{s, v, u, w\}$
Slack minimizer is vz
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2

Step 5 $U = \{s, v, u, w, z\}$
Slack minimizer is wt
$\longrightarrow$ increase y_U by 2

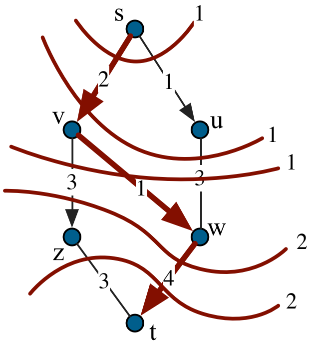


Now: We have a directed s, t-path P of length 7, and a dual feasible solution of the same value!

$\longrightarrow$ P is a shortest path!

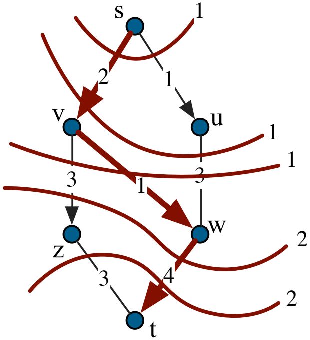
Question

Will the algorithm always terminate?



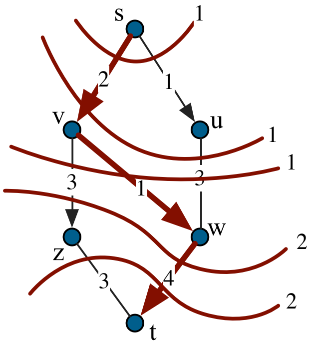
Question

Will the algorithm always terminate? Will it always find an s, t-path P whose length is equal to the value of a feasible dual solution?



Question

Will the algorithm always terminate? Will it always find an s,t-path P whose length is equal to the value of a feasible dual solution?



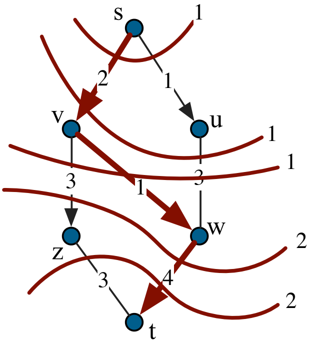
This lecture: We will show the answers to the above are yes & yes!

Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Recall: the slack of an edge $uv \in E$ for a feasible dual solution y is

$$c_{uv} - \sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

.

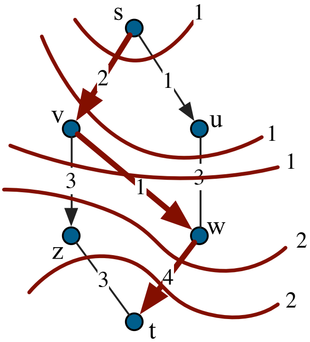


Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Recall: the slack of an edge $uv \in E$ for a feasible dual solution y is

$$c_{uv} - \sum(y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

We call an edge $uv \in E$ an equality edge if its slack is 0.



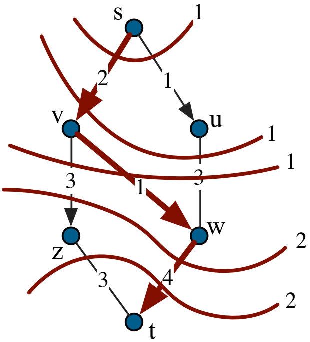
Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Recall: the slack of an edge $uv \in E$ for a feasible dual solution y is

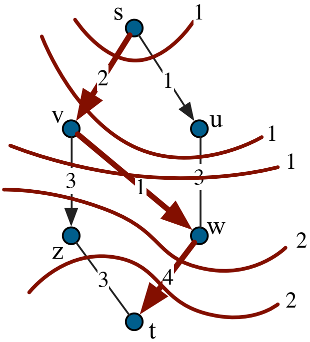
$$c_{uv} - \sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

We call an edge $uv \in E$ an equality edge if its slack is 0.

Example: edge vz is an equality edge, and zt is not!



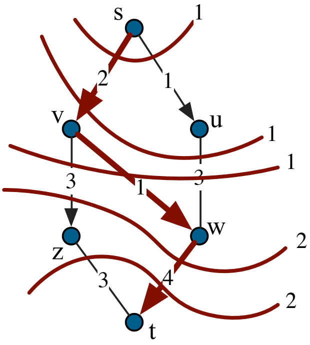
We will also call a cut $\delta(U)$ active for a dual solution y if $y_U > 0$.



Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

We will also call a cut $\delta(U)$ active for a dual solution y if $y_U > 0$.

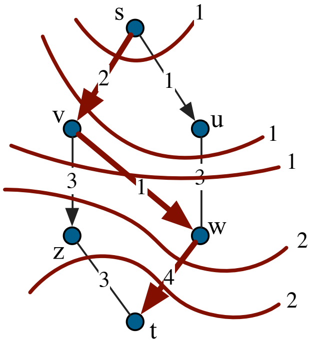
Example: $\delta(\{s, v, u\})$ is active, while $\delta(\{s, v\})$ is not!



Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Proposition

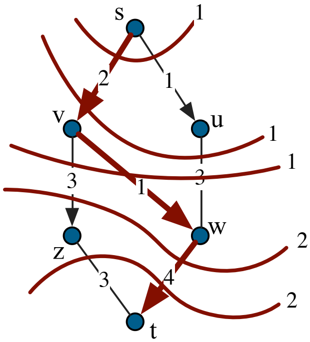
Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s,t-path. P is a shortest path if



Proposition

Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s,t-path. P is a shortest path if

(i) all edges on P are equality edges, and



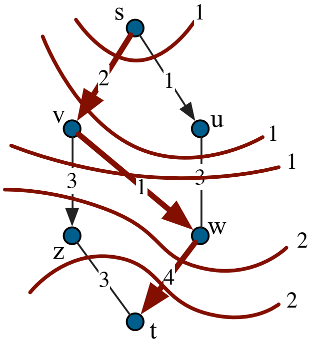
Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Proposition

Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s, t-path. P is a shortest path if

(i) all edges on P are equality edges, and

(ii) every active cut $\delta(U)$ has exactly one edge of P.



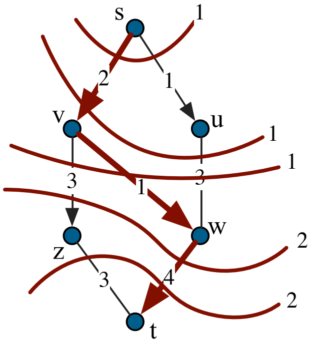
Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Proposition

Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s,t-path. P is a shortest path if

(i) all edges on P are equality edges, and

(ii) every active cut $\delta(U)$ has exactly one edge of P.



Note: Both conditions are satisfied in the example on the right.

Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Proposition

Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s, t-path. P is a shortest path if

(i) all edges on P are equality edges, and

(ii) every active cut $\delta(U)$ has exactly one edge of P.

Proof: Let's suppose that P and y satisfy (i) and (ii) of the proposition.

Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Proposition

Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s, t-path. P is a shortest path if

(i) all edges on P are equality edges, and

(ii) every active cut $\delta(U)$ has exactly one edge of P.

Proof: Let's suppose that P and y satisfy (i) and (ii) of the proposition.Then,

$$\sum_{e \in P} c_e = \sum_{e \in P} (\sum(y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

because every edge on P is an equality edge by (i).

Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Proposition

Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s, t-path. P is a shortest path if

(i) all edges on P are equality edges, and

(ii) every active cut $\delta(U)$ has exactly one edge of P.

Proof: Let's suppose that P and y satisfy (i) and (ii) of the proposition. Then,

$$\sum_{e \in P} c_e = \sum_{e \in P} (\sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U))$$

because every edge on P is an equality edge by (i). The right-hand side equals

$$\sum (y_U \cdot |P \cap \delta(U)| \,:\, \delta(U))$$

Revisited: Shortest Path Optimality Conditions

Proposition

Let y be a feasible dual solution, and P and s,t-path. P is a shortest path if

(i) all edges on P are equality edges, and

(ii) every active cut $\delta(U)$ has exactly one edge of P.

Note: Both conditions are satisfied in the example on the right!

Proof: Let's suppose that P and y satisfy (i) and (ii) of the proposition.Then,

$$\sum_{e \in P} c_e = \sum_{e \in P} (\sum (y_U \ : \ e \in \delta(U))$$

because every edge on P is an equality edge by (i). The right-hand side equals

$$\sum (y_U \cdot |P \cap \delta(U)| \ : \ \delta(U))$$

But, by (ii), $y_U > 0$ only if $|P \cap \delta(U)| = 1$. Hence:

$$\sum_{e \in P} c_e = \sum_U y_U$$

$\square$

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**
3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$
6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
7: **end while**
8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Note: The algorithm terminates since one vertex is added to U in every step and V is finite.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V,E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s,t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
  Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
  $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
  $U := U \cup \{b\}$
  change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.

Note: The algorithm terminates since one vertex is added to U in every step and V is finite.

It suffices to show:

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
1: y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
2: while t ∉ U do
3:     Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
4:     y_U := slack_y(ab)
5:     U := U ∪ {b}
6:     change edge ab into an arc →ab
7: end while
8: return A directed st-path P.
```

Note: The algorithm terminates since one vertex is added to U in every step and V is finite.

It suffices to show:

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

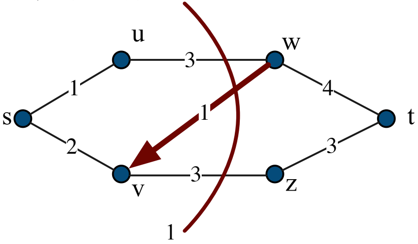
Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
  Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
  $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
  $U := U \cup \{b\}$
  change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.

Note: The algorithm terminates since one vertex is added to U in every step and V is finite.



It suffices to show:

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

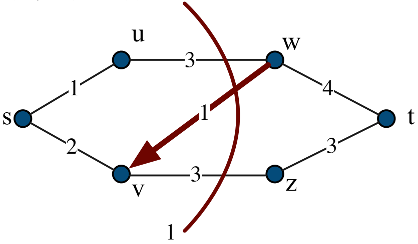
Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.
Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
  Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
  $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
  $U := U \cup \{b\}$
  change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.

Note: The algorithm terminates since one vertex is added to U in every step and V is finite.



It suffices to show:

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

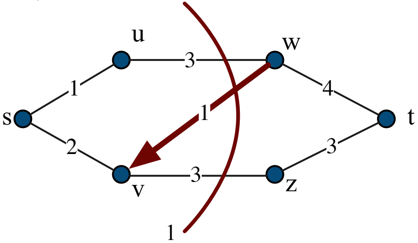
Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
  Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
  $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
  $U := U \cup \{b\}$
  change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.

Note: The algorithm terminates since one vertex is added to U in every step and V is finite.



It suffices to show:

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s,u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Suppose the invariants hold when the algorithm terminates. Then:

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Suppose the invariants hold when the algorithm terminates. Then:

- $t \in U$ and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, t-path P,

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Suppose the invariants hold when the algorithm terminates. Then:

- $t \in U$ and (I4) implies that there is a directed s,t-path P,
- y is feasible by (I1), and

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s,u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Suppose the invariants hold when the algorithm terminates. Then:

- $t \in U$ and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, t-path P,
- y is feasible by (I1), and
- arcs on P are equality arcs by (I2)

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Suppose the invariants hold when the algorithm terminates. Then:

- $t \in U$ and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, t-path P,
- y is feasible by (I1), and
- arcs on P are equality arcs by (I2)

To show: $\delta(U)$ active $\longrightarrow$ P has exactly one edge in $\delta(U)$.

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

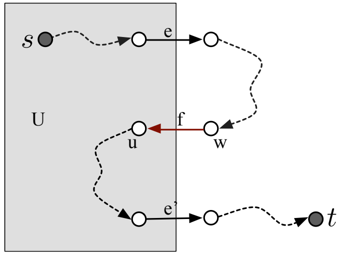
(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

For a contradiction suppose $\delta(U)$ active and P has more than one edge in $\delta(U)$

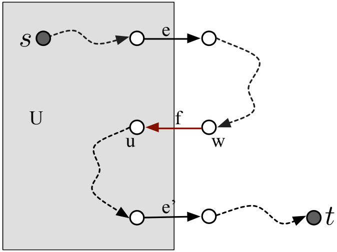
.



Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

For a contradiction suppose $\delta(U)$ active and P has more than one edge in $\delta(U)$

Let e and e' be the first two edges on P that leave $\delta(U)$.

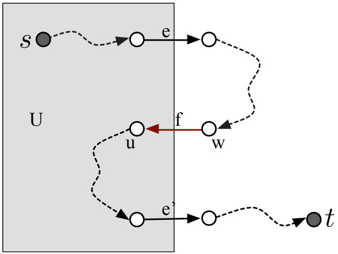


Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

For a contradiction suppose $\delta(U)$ active and P has more than one edge in $\delta(U)$

Let e and e' be the first two edges on P that leave $\delta(U)$.

Then, there must also be an arc f on P that enters U,

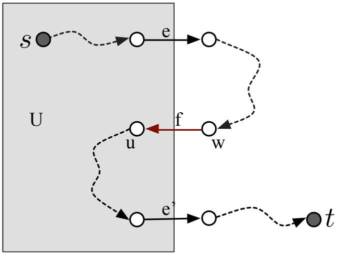


Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

For a contradiction suppose $\delta(U)$ active and P has more than one edge in $\delta(U)$

Let e and e' be the first two edges on P that leave $\delta(U)$.

Then, there must also be an arc f on P that enters U, but this contradicts (I3)!



Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
while t ∉ U do
    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
    y_U := slack_y(ab)
    U := U ∪ {b}
    change edge ab into an arc →ab
end while
return A directed st-path P.
```

Let's now prove the proposition!

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering, arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G=(V,E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s,t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
1: y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
2: while t ∉ U do
3:     Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
4:     y_U := slack_y(ab)
5:     U := U ∪ {b}
6:     change edge ab into an arc →ab
7: end while
8: return A directed st-path P.
```

Let's now prove the proposition!

Trivial: (I1) – (I5) hold after Step 1.

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering, arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s,u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$

2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**

3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$

4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$

5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$

6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$

7: **end while**

8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Let's now prove the proposition!

Trivial: (I1) – (I5) hold after Step 1.
Suppose (I1) – (I5) hold before Step 3.

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering, arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.
Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**
3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$
6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
7: **end while**
8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering, arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Let's now prove the proposition!

Trivial: (I1) – (I5) hold after Step 1.
Suppose (I1) – (I5) hold before Step 3.
We will show that they also hold after Step 6.

(I1) y is Dual Feasible

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$

2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**

3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$

4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$

5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$

6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$

7: **end while**

8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S) \; s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

(I1) y is Dual Feasible

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V,E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s,t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**
3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$
6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
7: **end while**
8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Shortest path dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \sum(y_S \,:\, \delta(S)\ s,t\text{-cut}) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \sum(y_S \,:\, e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Note: In Step 3-6, only y_U for the current U changes.

(I1) y is Dual Feasible

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G=(V,E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s,t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**
3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$
6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
7: **end while**
8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \; : \; \delta(S) \; s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \; : \; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note: In Step 3-6, only y_U for the current U changes.

y_U appears only on the left-hand sides of constraints for edges in $\delta(U)$.

(I1) y is Dual Feasible

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
1: y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
2: while t ∉ U do
3:    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
4:    y_U := slack_y(ab)
5:    U := U ∪ {b}
6:    change edge ab into an arc →ab
7: end while
8: return A directed st-path P.
```

Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \;:\; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note: In Step 3-6, only y_U for the current U changes.

y_U appears only on the left-hand sides of constraints for edges in $\delta(U)$.

The smallest slack of any of these constraints is precisely the increase in y_U.

(I1) y is Dual Feasible

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
1: y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
2: while t ∉ U do
3:    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
4:    y_U := slack_y(ab)
5:    U := U ∪ {b}
6:    change edge ab into an arc →ab
7: end while
8: return A directed st-path P.
```

Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note: In Step 3-6, only y_U for the current U changes.

y_U appears only on the left-hand sides of constraints for edges in $\delta(U)$.

The smallest slack of any of these constraints is precisely the increase in y_U.

$\longrightarrow$ y remains feasible!

(I1) y is Dual Feasible

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G=(V,E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s,t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**
3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U, b \notin U$
4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$
6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
7: **end while**
8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ \delta(S) \ s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \ : \ e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note: In Step 3-6, only y_U for the current U changes.

y_U appears only on the left-hand sides of constraints for edges in $\delta(U)$.

The smallest slack of any of these constraints is precisely the increase in y_U.

$\longrightarrow$ y remains feasible!

Also: The constraint of the newly created arc holds with equality after the increase

(I1) y is Dual Feasible

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**
3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U, b \notin U$
4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$
6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
7: **end while**
8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Shortest path dual:

$$\max \quad \sum (y_S \; : \; \delta(S) \; s,t\text{-cut})$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \sum (y_S \; : \; e \in \delta(S)) \leq c_e \quad (e \in E)$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note: In Step 3-6, only y_U for the current U changes.

y_U appears only on the left-hand sides of constraints for edges in $\delta(U)$.

The smallest slack of any of these constraints is precisely the increase in y_U.

$\longrightarrow$ y remains feasible!

Also: The constraint of the newly created arc holds with equality after the increase
$\longrightarrow$ (I2) continues to hold and constraints for arcs have slack 0.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
  Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
  $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
  $U := U \cup \{b\}$
  change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.

- the only new active cut created is $\delta(U)$

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
while t ∉ U do
    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
    y_U := slack_y(ab)
    U := U ∪ {b}
    change edge ab into an arc →ab
end while
return A directed st-path P.
```

- the only new active cut created is $\delta(U)$
- (I5) $\longrightarrow$ all old arcs have both ends in U

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
while t ∉ U do
    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
    y_U := slack_y(ab)
    U := U ∪ {b}
    change edge ab into an arc →ab
end while
return A directed st-path P.
```

- the only new active cut created is $\delta(U)$
- (I5) $\longrightarrow$ all old arcs have both ends in U
- one new arc has tail in U, and head outside U

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$

2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**

3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$

4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$

5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$

6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$

7: **end while**

8: **return** A directed st-path P.

- the only new active cut created is $\delta(U)$
- (I5) $\longrightarrow$ all old arcs have both ends in U
- one new arc has tail in U, and head outside U

$\longrightarrow$ (I3) holds after Step 6

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Note: Algorithms adds arc ab in current step, and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, a-path P.

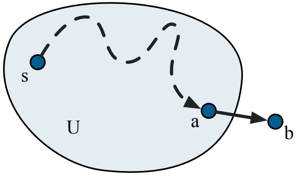
Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

- (I1) y is a feasible dual,
- (I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),
- (I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,
- (I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and
- (I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Note: Algorithms adds arc ab in current step, and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, a-path P.



Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

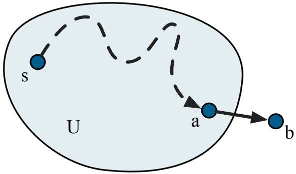
(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Note: Algorithms adds arc ab in current step, and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, a-path P.



(I5) $\longrightarrow$ arcs different from ab have both ends in U

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

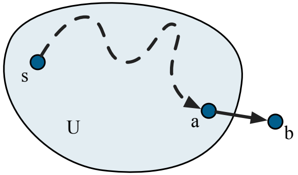
(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Note: Algorithms adds arc ab in current step, and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, a-path P.



(I5) $\longrightarrow$ arcs different from ab have both ends in U
$\longrightarrow$ since b is outside U, it cannot be on P, and thus, P together with ab is a directed s, b-path

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

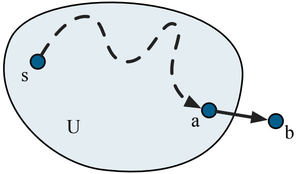
(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm

Note: Algorithms adds arc ab in current step, and (I4) implies that there is a directed s, a-path P.



(I5) $\longrightarrow$ arcs different from ab have both ends in U

$\longrightarrow$ since b is outside U, it cannot be on P, and thus, P together with ab is a directed s, b-path

$\longrightarrow$ (I4) holds at the end of loop

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

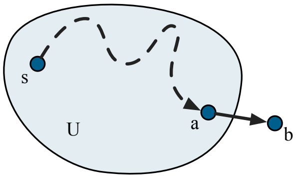
(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm



Finally, the only new arc added is ab. As b is added to U, (I5) continues to hold.

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

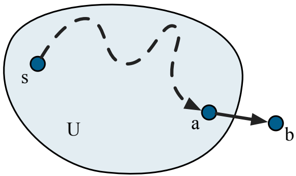
(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Correctness of the Shortest Path Algorithm



Finally, the only new arc added is ab. As b is added to U, (I5) continues to hold.

We are now done!

Proposition

The Shortest Path Algorithm maintains throughout its execution that:

(I1) y is a feasible dual,

(I2) arcs are equality arcs (i.e., have 0 slack),

(I3) no active cut $\delta(U)$ has an entering arc: an arc wu with $w \notin U$, and $u \in U$,

(I4) for every $u \in U$ there is a directed s, u-path, and

(I5) arcs have both ends in U.

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
1: y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
2: while t ∉ U do
3:     Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
4:     y_U := slack_y(ab)
5:     U := U ∪ {b}
6:     change edge ab into an arc →ab
7: end while
8: return A directed st-path P.
```

Recap

- We saw that the shortest path algorithm

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
while t ∉ U do
    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
    y_U := slack_y(ab)
    U := U ∪ {b}
    change edge ab into an arc →ab
end while
return A directed st-path P.
```

Recap

- We saw that the shortest path algorithm
  (i) always produces an s, t-path P, and

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

1: $y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
2: **while** $t \notin U$ **do**
3: Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
4: $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
5: $U := U \cup \{b\}$
6: change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
7: **end while**
8: **return** A directed st-path P.

Recap

- We saw that the shortest path algorithm
  - (i) always produces an s, t-path P, and
  - (ii) a feasible dual solution y.

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

```
y_W := 0 for all st-cuts δ(W). Set U := {s}
while t ∉ U do
    Let ab be an edge in δ(U) of smallest slack for y where a ∈ U, b ∉ U
    y_U := slack_y(ab)
    U := U ∪ {b}
    change edge ab into an arc →ab
end while
return A directed st-path P.
```

Recap

- We saw that the shortest path algorithm
  (i) always produces an s, t-path P, and
  (ii) a feasible dual solution y.
- Moreover, the length of P equals the objective value of y, and hence, P must be a shortest s, t-path.

Algorithm 3.2 Shortest path.

Input: Graph $G = (V, E)$, costs $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, $s, t \in V$ where $s \neq t$.

Output: A shortest st-path P

$y_W := 0$ for all st-cuts $\delta(W)$. Set $U := \{s\}$
while $t \notin U$ **do**
  Let ab be an edge in $\delta(U)$ of smallest slack for y where $a \in U$, $b \notin U$
  $y_U := \text{slack}_y(ab)$
  $U := U \cup \{b\}$
  change edge ab into an arc $\overrightarrow{ab}$
end while
return A directed st-path P.

Recap

- We saw that the shortest path algorithm
  - (i) always produces an s,t-path P, and
  - (ii) a feasible dual solution y.
- Moreover, the length of P equals the objective value of y, and hence, P must be a shortest s,t-path.
- Implicitly, we therefore showed that the shortest path LP always has an optimal integer solution!

Module 4: Duality Theory (Weak Duality)

Recap: Shortest Path LP

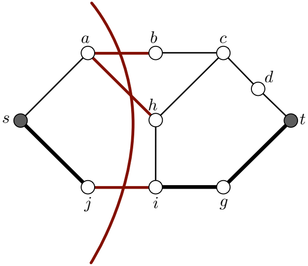
Solutions to a shortest path instance $G = (V, E)$, $s, t \in V$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, correspond to feasible $0, 1$-solutions for the LP

$$\min \sum \big(c_e x_e : e \in E\big)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \sum \big(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)\big) \geq 1$$

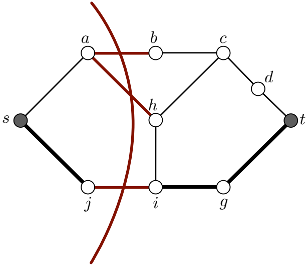
$$(U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U)$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$



Recap: Shortest Path LP

Solutions to a shortest path instance $G = (V, E)$, $s, t \in V$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, correspond to feasible $0, 1$-solutions for the LP



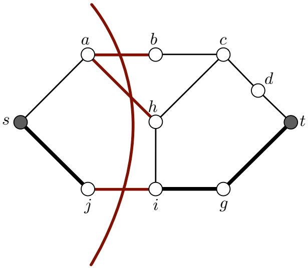
$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & \sum \big(c_e x_e : e \in E \big) \\ \text{s.t. } & \sum \big(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U) \big) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad\qquad (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

This LP is of the form:

$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\}$$

Recap: Shortest Path LP

Solutions to a shortest path instance $G = (V, E)$, $s, t \in V$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, correspond to feasible $0, 1$-solutions for the LP



$$\begin{aligned} \min \; & \sum \big(c_e x_e : e \in E \big) \\ \text{s.t.} \; & \sum \big(x_e \; : \; e \in \delta(U) \big) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

This LP is of the form:

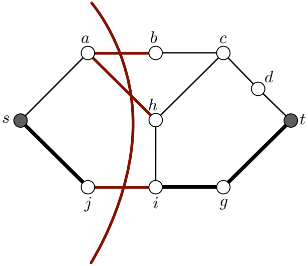
$$\min\{c^T x \; : \; Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\}$$

where

- $b = \mathbb{1}$;

Recap: Shortest Path LP

Solutions to a shortest path instance $G = (V, E)$, $s, t \in V$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, correspond to feasible $0, 1$-solutions for the LP



$$\min \sum \big(c_e x_e : e \in E\big)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \sum \big(x_e \,:\, e \in \delta(U)\big) \geq 1$$

$$(U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U)$$

$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

This LP is of the form:

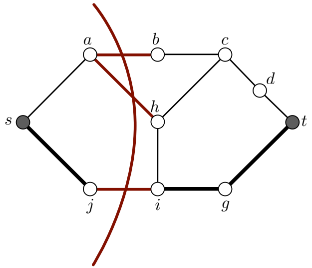
$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\}$$

where

- $b = \mathbb{1}$;
- A has a row for every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$, and a column for every edge e; and

Recap: Shortest Path LP

Solutions to a shortest path instance $G = (V, E)$, $s, t \in V$, $c_e \geq 0$ for all $e \in E$, correspond to feasible $0, 1$-solutions for the LP



$$\begin{aligned} \min \ & \sum \big(c_e x_e : e \in E\big) \\ \text{s.t.} \ & \sum \big(x_e \ : \ e \in \delta(U)\big) \geq 1 \\ & \qquad (U \subseteq V, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

This LP is of the form:

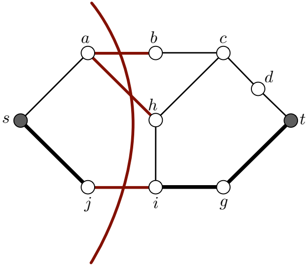
$$\min\{c^T x \ : \ Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\}$$

where

- $b = \mathbb{1}$;
- A has a row for every s, t-cut $\delta(U)$, and a column for every edge e; and
- $A_{Ue} = 1$ if $e \in \delta(U)$ and $A_{Ue} = 0$ otherwise.

Recap: Shortest Path Dual

$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \quad \text{(P)}$$

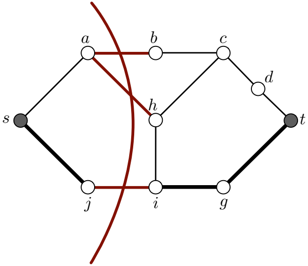


Recap: Shortest Path Dual

$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \ge b, x \ge \mathbb{0}\} \quad \text{(P)}$$

The dual of (P) is given by

$$\max\{b^T y \,:\, A^T y \le c, y \ge \mathbb{0}\} \quad \text{(D)}$$



Recap: Shortest Path Dual

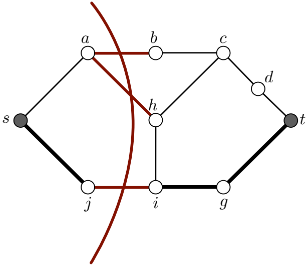
$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \quad \text{(P)}$$

The dual of (P) is given by

$$\max\{b^T y \,:\, A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \quad \text{(D)}$$

If (P) is a shortest path LP, then we can rewrite (D) as

$$\begin{aligned} \max \ & \sum (y_U \,:\, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ \text{s.t.} \ & \sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$



Recap: Shortest Path Dual

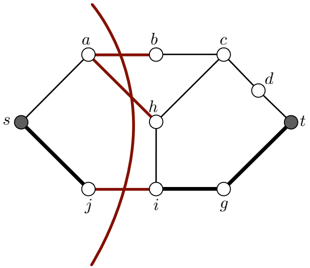
$$\min\{c^T x \;:\; Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

The dual of (P) is given by

$$\max\{b^T y \;:\; A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

If (P) is a shortest path LP, then we can rewrite (D) as

$$\begin{aligned} \max \;& \sum (y_U \;:\; s \in U, t \notin U) \\ \text{s.t. } & \sum (y_U \;:\; e \in \delta(U)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$



Theorem

If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D), then $b^T \bar{y} \leq c^T \bar{x}$.

Recap: Shortest Path Dual

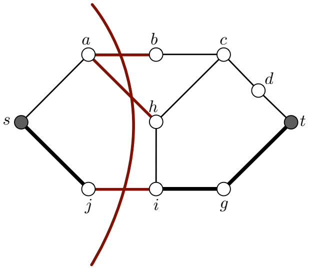
$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \quad \text{(P)}$$

The dual of (P) is given by

$$\max\{b^T y \,:\, A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \quad \text{(D)}$$

If (P) is a shortest path LP, then we can rewrite (D) as

$$\begin{aligned} \max \ & \sum (y_U \,:\, s \in U, t \notin U) \\ \text{s.t. } & \sum (y_U \,:\, e \in \delta(U)) \leq c_e \\ & \qquad (e \in E) \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$



Theorem

If $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D), then $b^T \bar{y} \leq c^T \bar{x}$.

Equivalent: y feasible widths and P an s,t-path $\longrightarrow$ $\mathbb{1}^T y \leq c(P)$

This Lecture

Question: Can we find lower-bounds on the optimal value of a general LP?

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \ ?\ b \\ & x \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

This Lecture

Question: Can we find lower-bounds on the optimal value of a general LP?

In the LP on the right,

$$Ax \; ? \; b$$

stands for a system of inequalities whose sign is one of $\leq, =$ or $\geq$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \; ? \; b \\ & x \; ? \; \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

This Lecture

Question: Can we find lower-bounds on the optimal value of a general LP?

In the LP on the right,

$$Ax \ ? \ b$$

stands for a system of inequalities whose sign is one of $\leq, =$ or $\geq$, and

$$x \ ? \ \mathbb{0}$$

indicates that variables are either non-negative, non-positive, or free.

$$\begin{aligned} \max \ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \ ? \ b \\ & x \ ? \ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Recall: in the primal-dual pair

$$\min\{c^T x \, : \, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\max\{b^T y \, : \, A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

This Lecture

Question: Can we find lower-bounds on the optimal value of a general LP?

In the LP on the right,

$$Ax \; ? \; b$$

stands for a system of inequalities whose sign is one of $\leq, =$ or $\geq$, and

$$x \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$$

indicates that variables are either non-negative, non-positive, or free.

$$\begin{aligned} \max \; & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \; ? \; b \\ & x \; ? \; \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Recall: in the primal-dual pair

$$\min\{c^T x \; : \; Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\max\{b^T y \; : \; A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

- each non-negative variable, x_e, in (P) corresponds to a '$\leq$'-constraint in (D), and

This Lecture

Question: Can we find lower-bounds on the optimal value of a general LP?

In the LP on the right,

$$Ax \;?\; b$$

stands for a system of inequalities whose sign is one of $\leq, =$ or $\geq$, and

$$x \;?\; \mathbb{0}$$

indicates that variables are either non-negative, non-positive, or free.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \;?\; b \\ & x \;?\; \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Recall: in the primal-dual pair

$$\min\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \geq b, x \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\max\{b^T y \,:\, A^T y \leq c, y \geq \mathbb{0}\} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

- each non-negative variable, x_e, in (P) corresponds to a '$\leq$'-constraint in (D), and
- each '$\geq$'-constraint in (P) corresponds to a non-negative variable y_U in (D).

Weak Duality in General

Consider the primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \ ?\ b \\ & x \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Weak Duality in General

Consider the primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \ ?\ b \\ & x \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Its dual LP is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \ ?\ c \\ & y \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Weak Duality in General

Consider the primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \ ?\ b \\ & x \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Its dual LP is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \ ?\ c \\ & y \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Question: What are the question marks?

Weak Duality in General

Consider the primal LP

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \ ?\ b \\ & x \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Its dual LP is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \ ?\ c \\ & y \ ?\ \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Question: What are the question marks?

A: As before:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{primal variables} &\equiv \text{dual constraints} \\ \text{primal constraints} &\equiv \text{dual variables} \end{aligned}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$					$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$
		$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable		
max	$c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min	$b^\top y$
subject to		$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to	
	$Ax \; ? \; b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		$A^\top y \; ? \; c$
	$x \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint		$y \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$
		≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
Ax ? b	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y$? c
x ? $\mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	y ? $\mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 1:

$$\max\ (1,0,2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \; ? \; b$ $x \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\geq$ constraint ≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable	≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable $\geq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\leq$ constraint	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \; ? \; c$ $y \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$

Example 1:

$$\max \ (1,0,2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

Its dual LP:

$$\min \ (3,4)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y \; ? \; \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(P_{\max})$			$(P_{\min})$
$\max\ c^\top x$ subject to $Ax ? b$, $x ? \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	$\min\ b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y ? c$, $y ? \mathbb{0}$
	$=$ constraint	free variable	
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 1:

$$\max\ (1,0,2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

Its dual LP:

$$\min\ (3,4)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y\ ?\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \text{ free}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$
max $\quad c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \, ? \, b$ $x \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\geq$ constraint ≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable	≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable $\geq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\leq$ constraint	min $\quad b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \, ? \, c$ $y \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$

Example 1:

$$\max\ (1,0,2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$x_1, x_2 \geq 0, x_3$ free

Its dual LP:

$$\min\ (3,4)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \geq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$y_1 \geq 0, y_2$ free

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

(P_{max})		(P_{min})	
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax ? b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y ? c$
$x ? \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y ? \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 2:

$$\min d^T y \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } W^T y \geq e$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $\quad c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $\quad b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \; ? \; b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \; ? \; c$
$x \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 2:

$$\min\ d^T y \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } W^T y \geq e$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

To compute dual LP, check right-hand side of table:

$$\max\ e^T x \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Wx \; ? \; d$$
$$x \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \, ? \, b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \, ? \, c$
$x \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 2:

$$\begin{aligned} &\min\ d^T y \\ &\text{s.t. } W^T y \geq e \\ &y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

To compute dual LP, check right-hand side of table:

$$\begin{aligned} &\max\ e^T x \\ &\text{s.t. } Wx \ ? \ d \\ &x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax\ ?\ b$, $x\ ?\ \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y\ ?\ c$, $y\ ?\ \mathbb{0}$
	$=$ constraint	free variable	
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 2:

$$\min\ d^T y \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } W^T y \geq e$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

To compute dual LP, check right-hand side of table:

$$\max\ e^T x \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Wx \leq d$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

Example 2:

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & d^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & W^T y \geq e \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Substitute:

- $d \longrightarrow c$
- $e \longrightarrow b$
- $y \longrightarrow x$
- $W^T \longrightarrow A$
- $x \longrightarrow y$

To compute dual LP, check right-hand side of table:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & e^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & W x \leq d \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

Example 2:

$$\min\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \geq b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Substitute:

- $d \longrightarrow c$
- $e \longrightarrow b$
- $y \longrightarrow x$
- $W^T \longrightarrow A$
- $x \longrightarrow y$

To compute dual LP, check right-hand side of table:

$$\max\ b^T x \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \leq c$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

Example 2:

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \geq b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Substitute:

- $d \longrightarrow c$
- $e \longrightarrow b$
- $y \longrightarrow x$
- $W^T \longrightarrow A$
- $x \longrightarrow y$

To compute dual LP, check right-hand side of table:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & b^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \leq c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

This is consistent with the earlier discussion we had!

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(P_{\max})$				
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \mathbin{?} b$ $x \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$ $y \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$	
	$=$ constraint	free variable		
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		
	free variable	$=$ constraint		
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Example 3:

$$\max\ (12, 26, 20)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 6 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \text{ free}, x_3 \geq 0$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \, ? \, b$ $x \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \, ? \, c$ $y \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$
	$=$ constraint	free variable	
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 3:

$$\max\ (12, 26, 20)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 6 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \text{ free}, x_3 \geq 0$$

Its dual LP:

$$\min\ (-2, 2, 13)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 1 & 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} y \ ? \ \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 26 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \ ? \ \mathbb{0}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(P_{\max})$			
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \, ? \, b$, $x \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \, ? \, c$, $y \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$
	$=$ constraint	free variable	
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Header of the last two columns: $(P_{\min})$

Example 3:

$$\max\ (12, 26, 20)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t. } \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 6 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \text{ free}, x_3 \geq 0$$

Its dual LP:

$$\min\ (-2, 2, 13)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t. } \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 1 & 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} y \; ? \; \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 26 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \text{ free}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \mathbin{?} b$, $x \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$, $y \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$
	$=$ constraint	free variable	
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Example 3:

$$\max\ (12, 26, 20)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 6 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \text{ free}, x_3 \geq 0$$

Its dual LP:

$$\min\ (-2, 2, 13)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 1 & 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \geq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 26 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \text{ free}$$

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$
max $c^\top x$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$
subject to	$=$ constraint	free variable	subject to
Ax **?** b	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	$A^\top y$ **?** c
x **?** $\mathbb{0}$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	y **?** $\mathbb{0}$
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Theorem

Let $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$ and $(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$ represent the above.

Primal-Dual Pairs

The following table shows how constraints and variables in primal and dual LPs correspond:

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $\quad c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $\quad b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \; ? \; b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \; ? \; c$
$x \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Theorem

Let $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$ and $(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$ represent the above. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T \bar{x} \leq b^T \bar{y}$$

If $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$, and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for $(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$.

Primal-Dual Pairs

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

Example 3 (continued):

$$\max\ (12, 26, 20)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 6 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \text{ free}, x_3 \geq 0$$

Its dual LP:

$$\min\ (-2, 2, 13)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 1 & 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \geq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 26 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \text{ free}$$

Feasible solutions: $\bar{x} = (5, -3, 0)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0, 4, -2)^T$.

Primal-Dual Pairs

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

Example 3 (continued):

$$\max\ (12, 26, 20)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 6 & 5 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ 13 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \text{ free}, x_3 \geq 0$$

Its dual LP:

$$\min\ (-2, 2, 13)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 2 & 6 & -1 \\ 1 & 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \geq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 26 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \text{ free}$$

Feasible solutions: $\bar{x} = (5, -3, 0)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0, 4, -2)^T$.
Since $(12, 26, 20)\bar{x} = (-2, 2, 13)\bar{y} = -18 \longrightarrow$ both are optimal!

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

(P_{max})					
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax\ ?\ b$, $x\ ?\ \mathbb{0}$		$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y\ ?\ c$, $y\ ?\ \mathbb{0}$	
		$=$ constraint	free variable		
		$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		
		≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		
		free variable	$=$ constraint		
		≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

General Primal LP:

$$\max c^T x$$
$$\text{s.t. } \mathrm{row}_i(A)x \leq b_i \ (i \in R_1)$$
$$\mathrm{row}_i(A)x \geq b_i \ (i \in R_2)$$
$$\mathrm{row}_i(A)x = b_i \ (i \in R_3)$$
$$x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1)$$
$$x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2)$$
$$x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3)$$

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$		
max	$c^\top x$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min	$b^\top y$
subject to		$=$ constraint	free variable	subject to	
	$Ax \mathbin{?} b$	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		$A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$
	$x \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		$y \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$
		free variable	$=$ constraint		
		≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

General Primal LP:

$$\begin{aligned} &\max c^T x \\ &\text{s.t. } \mathrm{row}_i(A)x \leq b_i \ (i \in R_1) \\ &\quad \mathrm{row}_i(A)x \geq b_i \ (i \in R_2) \\ &\quad \mathrm{row}_i(A)x = b_i \ (i \in R_3) \\ &\quad x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\ &\quad x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\ &\quad x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3) \end{aligned}$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$\begin{aligned} &\min b^T y \\ &\text{s.t. } \mathrm{col}_j(A)^T y \geq c_j \ (j \in C_1) \\ &\quad \mathrm{col}_j(A)^T y \leq c_j \ (j \in C_2) \\ &\quad \mathrm{col}_j(A)^T y = c_j \ (j \in C_3) \\ &\quad y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\ &\quad y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\ &\quad y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3) \end{aligned}$$

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$\begin{aligned} &\max\ c^T x \\ &\text{s.t. } \mathsf{row}_i(A)x \le b_i\ \ (i \in R_1) \\ &\qquad \mathsf{row}_i(A)x \ge b_i\ \ (i \in R_2) \\ &\qquad \mathsf{row}_i(A)x = b_i\ \ (i \in R_3) \\ &\qquad x_j \ge 0\ (j \in C_1) \\ &\qquad x_j \le 0\ (j \in C_2) \\ &\qquad x_j\ \text{free}\ (j \in C_3) \end{aligned}$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$\begin{aligned} &\min\ b^T y \\ &\text{s.t. } \mathsf{col}_j(A)^T y \ge c_j\ \ (j \in C_1) \\ &\qquad \mathsf{col}_j(A)^T y \le c_j\ \ (j \in C_2) \\ &\qquad \mathsf{col}_j(A)^T y = c_j\ \ (j \in C_3) \\ &\qquad y_i \ge 0\ (i \in R_1) \\ &\qquad y_i \le 0\ (i \in R_2) \\ &\qquad y_i\ \text{free}\ (i \in R_3) \end{aligned}$$

We can rewrite the above LPs using slack variables!

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\ & s_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\ & s_i = 0 \ (i \in R_3) \\ & x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\ & x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\ & x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3) \end{aligned}$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y + w = c \qquad (\star) \\ & w_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\ & w_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\ & w_j = 0 \ (j \in C_3) \\ & y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\ & y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\ & y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3) \end{aligned}$$

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & c^T x \\
\text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\
& s_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& s_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& s_i = 0 \ (i \in R_3) \\
& x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min\ & b^T y \\
\text{s.t. } & A^T y + w = c \qquad (\star) \\
& w_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& w_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& w_j = 0 \ (j \in C_3) \\
& y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the original primal and dual LPs

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\ & s_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\ & s_i = 0 \ (i \in R_3) \\ & x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\ & x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\ & x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3) \end{aligned}$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y + w = c \qquad (\star) \\ & w_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\ & w_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\ & w_j = 0 \ (j \in C_3) \\ & y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\ & y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\ & y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3) \end{aligned}$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the original primal and dual LPs
Let $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$ and $\bar{w} = c - A^T\bar{y}$.

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & c^T x \\
\text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\
& s_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& s_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& s_i = 0 \ (i \in R_3) \\
& x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min\ & b^T y \\
\text{s.t. } & A^T y + w = c \qquad (\star) \\
& w_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& w_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& w_j = 0 \ (j \in C_3) \\
& y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the original primal and dual LPs
Let $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$ and $\bar{w} = c - A^T\bar{y}$. It follows that

$$\bar{y}^T b = \bar{y}^T(A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) = (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s}$$

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & c^T x \\
\text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\
& s_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& s_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& s_i = 0 \ (i \in R_3) \\
& x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min\ & b^T y \\
\text{s.t. } & A^T y + w = c \qquad (\star) \\
& w_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& w_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& w_j = 0 \ (j \in C_3) \\
& y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the original primal and dual LPs
Let $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$ and $\bar{w} = c - A^T\bar{y}$. It follows that

$$
\bar{y}^T b = \bar{y}^T(A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) = (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s} \overset{(\star)}{=} (c - \bar{w})^T\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s} = c^T\bar{x} - \bar{w}^T\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s}.
$$

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\ & s_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\ & s_i = 0 \ (i \in R_3) \\ & x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\ & x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\ & x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3) \end{aligned}$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y + w = c \qquad (\star) \\ & w_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\ & w_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\ & w_j = 0 \ (j \in C_3) \\ & y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\ & y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\ & y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3) \end{aligned}$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the original primal and dual LPs
Let $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$ and $\bar{w} = c - A^T\bar{y}$. It follows that

$$\bar{y}^T b = \bar{y}^T(A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) = (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s} \overset{(\star)}{=}$$
$$(c - \bar{w})^T\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s} = c^T\bar{x} - \bar{w}^T\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s}.$$

We can show that $\bar{w}^T\bar{x} \leq 0$ and $\bar{y}^T\bar{s} \geq 0$

Proving the General Weak Duality Theorem

General Primal LP:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & c^T x \\
\text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\
& s_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& s_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& s_i = 0 \ (i \in R_3) \\
& x_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& x_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& x_j \text{ free } (j \in C_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Its dual according to the table:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min\ & b^T y \\
\text{s.t. } & A^T y + w = c \qquad (\star) \\
& w_j \leq 0 \ (j \in C_1) \\
& w_j \geq 0 \ (j \in C_2) \\
& w_j = 0 \ (j \in C_3) \\
& y_i \geq 0 \ (i \in R_1) \\
& y_i \leq 0 \ (i \in R_2) \\
& y_i \text{ free } (i \in R_3)
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the original primal and dual LPs
Let $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$ and $\bar{w} = c - A^T\bar{y}$. It follows that

$$
\bar{y}^T b = \bar{y}^T(A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) = (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s} \overset{(\star)}{=} (c - \bar{w})^T\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s} = c^T\bar{x} - \bar{w}^T\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T\bar{s}.
$$

We can show that $\bar{w}^T\bar{x} \leq 0$ and $\bar{y}^T\bar{s} \geq 0 \longrightarrow \quad \bar{y}^T b \geq c^T\bar{x}$

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

(i) (P_{max}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{min}) infeasible

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{max}}$) and ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{min}}$) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T \bar{x} \leq b^T \bar{y}$$

If $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{max}}$), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{min}}$).

(i) ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{max}}$) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{min}}$) infeasible

(ii) ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{min}}$) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{max}}$) infeasible

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

(i) (P_{max}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{min}) infeasible

(ii) (P_{min}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{max}) infeasible

(iii) (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) feasible $\longrightarrow$ both must have optimal solutions

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T \bar{x} \leq b^T \bar{y}$$

If $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

(i) (P_{max}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{min}) infeasible

(ii) (P_{min}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{max}) infeasible

(iii) (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) feasible $\longrightarrow$ both must have optimal solutions

Proof: (i) Suppose, for a contradiction, that $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (P_{min}).

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

(i) (P_{max}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{min}) infeasible

(ii) (P_{min}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{max}) infeasible

(iii) (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) feasible $\longrightarrow$ both must have optimal solutions

Proof: (i) Suppose, for a contradiction, that $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (P_{min}). By weak duality $\longrightarrow$ $c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$ for all $\bar{x}$ feasible for (P_{max}), and hence the latter is bounded.

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

(i) (P_{max}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{min}) infeasible

(ii) (P_{min}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{max}) infeasible

(iii) (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) feasible $\longrightarrow$ both must have optimal solutions

Proof: (i) Suppose, for a contradiction, that $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (P_{min}). By weak duality $\longrightarrow$ $c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$ for all $\bar{x}$ feasible for (P_{max}), and hence the latter is bounded.

(ii) Similar to (i)

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T \bar{x} \leq b^T \bar{y}$$

If $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for (P_{max}), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for (P_{min}).

(i) (P_{max}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{min}) infeasible

(ii) (P_{min}) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ (P_{max}) infeasible

(iii) (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) feasible $\longrightarrow$ both must have optimal solutions

Proof: (i) Suppose, for a contradiction, that $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (P_{min}). By weak duality $\longrightarrow$ $c^T \bar{x} \leq b^T \bar{y}$ for all $\bar{x}$ feasible for (P_{max}), and hence the latter is bounded.

(ii) Similar to (i)

(iii) weak duality $\longrightarrow$ both (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) bounded

Consequences of Weak Duality

Theorem

Let ($P_{\max}$) and ($P_{\min}$) represent the above table. If $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for the two LPs, then

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then $\bar{x}$ is optimal for ($P_{\max}$), and $\bar{y}$ is optimal for ($P_{\min}$).

(i) ($P_{\max}$) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ ($P_{\min}$) infeasible

(ii) ($P_{\min}$) is unbounded $\longrightarrow$ ($P_{\max}$) infeasible

(iii) ($P_{\max}$) and ($P_{\min}$) feasible $\longrightarrow$ both must have optimal solutions

Proof: (i) Suppose, for a contradiction, that $\bar{y}$ is feasible for ($P_{\min}$). By weak duality $\longrightarrow$ $c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$ for all $\bar{x}$ feasible for ($P_{\max}$), and hence the latter is bounded.

(ii) Similar to (i)

(iii) weak duality $\longrightarrow$ both ($P_{\max}$) and ($P_{\min}$) bounded

Fundamental Theorem of LP $\longrightarrow$ Both LPs must have an optimal solution! $\square$

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \; ? \; b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \; ? \; c$
$x \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \; ? \; \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Recap

- We can use the above table to compute duals of general LPs

(P_{max})		(P_{min})	
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \mathbin{?} b$ $x \mathbin{?} 0$	$\leq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\geq$ constraint ≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable	≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable $\geq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\leq$ constraint	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$ $y \mathbin{?} 0$

Recap

- We can use the above table to compute duals of general LPs
- Weak duality theorem: if $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for (P_{max}) and (P_{min}), then:

$$c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$$

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \;?\; b$ $x \;?\; \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \;?\; c$ $y \;?\; \mathbb{0}$
	$=$ constraint	free variable	
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Recap

- We can use the above table to compute duals of general LPs
- Weak duality theorem: if $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible for $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$ and $(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$, then:

$$c^T \bar{x} \leq b^T \bar{y}$$

Both are optimal if equality holds!

Module 4: Duality Theory (Strong Duality)

Recap: Weak Duality

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$					
max	$c^\top x$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min	$b^\top y$
subject to		$=$ constraint	free variable	subject to	
	$Ax \mathrel{?} b$	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		$A^\top y \mathrel{?} c$
	$x \mathrel{?} \mathbb{0}$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		$y \mathrel{?} \mathbb{0}$
		free variable	$=$ constraint		
		≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Header: $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$ spans the left three columns; $(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$ spans the right three columns.

Last lecture: we described a method to construct the dual of a general linear program.

Recap: Weak Duality

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$				
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \,?\, b$, $x \,?\, \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \,?\, c$, $y \,?\, \mathbb{0}$	$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$
	$=$ constraint	free variable		
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		
	free variable	$=$ constraint		
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Last lecture: we described a method to construct the dual of a general linear program.

E.g.: consider the primal LP, (P), on the right

$$\max\ (2,-1,3)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \leq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

Recap: Weak Duality

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$				
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \mathbin{?} b$, $x \mathbin{?} 0$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$, $y \mathbin{?} 0$	$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$
	$=$ constraint	free variable		
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		
	free variable	$=$ constraint		
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Last lecture: we described a method to construct the dual of a general linear program.

E.g.: consider the primal LP, (P), on the right – a max LP that falls in the left $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$ part of the table.

$$\max\ (2,-1,3)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \leq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

Recap: Weak Duality

($P_{\max}$)			($P_{\min}$)
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $\quad c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $\quad b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \mathbin{?} b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$
$x \mathbin{?} \mathbf{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \mathbin{?} \mathbf{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Last lecture: we described a method to construct the dual of a general linear program.

E.g.: consider the primal LP, (P), on the right – a max LP that falls in the left ($P_{\max}$) part of the table.

$\longrightarrow$ The dual of (P) is a min LP.

$$\max\ (2,-1,3)x \tag{P}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \leq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

Recap: Weak Duality

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
max $\quad c^\top x$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $\quad b^\top y$
subject to	$=$ constraint	free variable	subject to
$Ax \mathbin{?} b$	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	$A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$
$x \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$y \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

$$\max\ (2,-1,3)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \leq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

$$\min\ (2,1,-2)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} y \ ? \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \ ? \ \mathbb{0}$$

Recap: Weak Duality

(P_{max})			(P_{min})
max $c^\top x$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$
subject to	$=$ constraint	free variable	subject to
$Ax \,?\, b$	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	$A^\top y \,?\, c$
$x \,?\, 0$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$y \,?\, 0$
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

$$\max\ (2,-1,3)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \leq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

$$\min\ (2,1,-2)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} y \ ?\ \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \text{ free}, y_3 \leq 0$$

Recap: Weak Duality

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$			$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \,?\, b$, $x \,?\, 0$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \,?\, c$, $y \,?\, 0$
	$=$ constraint	free variable	
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	
	free variable	$=$ constraint	
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

$$\max\ (2,-1,3)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix} \leq \\ = \\ \geq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \leq 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

$$\min\ (2,1,-2)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \text{ free}, y_3 \leq 0$$

Recap: Weak Duality

$$\max\ (2,-1,3)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & -1\\ 0 & -2 & 1\\ 1 & 1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x \begin{matrix}\le\\ =\\ \ge\end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix}2\\ 1\\ -2\end{pmatrix}$$
$$x_1 \ge 0, x_2 \le 0, x_3 \text{ free}$$

$$\min\ (2,1,-2)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 1\\ 0 & -2 & 1\\ -1 & 1 & 0\end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix}\ge\\ \le\\ =\end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix}2\\ -1\\ 3\end{pmatrix}$$
$$y_1 \ge 0, y_2 \text{ free}, y_3 \le 0$$

Weak Duality Theorem

if $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D),

$$\implies c^T\bar{x} \le b^T\bar{y}$$

Recap: Weak Duality

$$\begin{array}{llcl} \max & (2,-1,3)x & & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x & \begin{matrix} \le \\ = \\ \ge \end{matrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x_1 \ge 0, x_2 \le 0, x_3 \text{ free} & & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{llcl} \min & (2,1,-2)y & & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t.} & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} y & \begin{matrix} \ge \\ \le \\ = \end{matrix} & \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & y_1 \ge 0, y_2 \text{ free}, y_3 \le 0 & & \end{array}$$

Weak Duality Theorem

if $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P) and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D),

$$\implies \quad c^T\bar{x} \le b^T\bar{y}$$

If $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$, then both $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are optimal.

This Lecture: Strong Duality

(P_{max})			(P_{min})	
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \mathbf{?}\, b$, $x \mathbf{?}\, \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \mathbf{?}\, c$, $y \mathbf{?}\, \mathbb{0}$	
	$=$ constraint	free variable		
	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		
	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		
	free variable	$=$ constraint		
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Question

Can we always find feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ to a primal-dual pair, (P_{max}), (P_{min}), such that $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$?

This Lecture: Strong Duality

(P_{max})			(P_{min})
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \,?\, b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \,?\, c$
$x \,?\, \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \,?\, \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Question

Can we always find feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ to a primal-dual pair, (P_{max}), (P_{min}), such that $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$?

Strong Duality Theorem

If (P_{max}) has an optimal solution $\bar{x}$, then (P_{min}) has an optimal solution $\bar{y}$ such that $c^T\bar{x} = b^T\bar{y}$.

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

Let's assume (P) has an optimal solution.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

Let's assume (P) has an optimal solution.

$\longrightarrow$ 2-Phase Simplex terminates with an optimal basis B

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

Let's assume (P) has an optimal solution.

$\longrightarrow$ 2-Phase Simplex terminates with an optimal basis B (Why?)

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \qquad \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \qquad \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned}$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

Let's assume (P) has an optimal solution.

$\longrightarrow$ 2-Phase Simplex terminates with an optimal basis B (Why?)

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

Let's assume (P) has an optimal solution.

$\longrightarrow$ 2-Phase Simplex terminates with an optimal basis B (Why?)

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$

$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

Let us prove the Strong Duality Theorem in the special case where (P) is in SEF.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Let's assume (P) has an optimal solution.

$\longrightarrow$ 2-Phase Simplex terminates with an optimal basis B (Why?)

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned}$$

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x & \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$

$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$

Recall that (P) and (P') are equivalent!

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$

$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$

Recall that (P) and (P') are equivalent!

$\longrightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is feasible in (P), and has same objective value in (P) and (P')

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$

$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$

Recall that (P) and (P') are equivalent!

$\longrightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is feasible in (P), and has same objective value in (P) and (P')

$$c^T \bar{x} \ = \qquad \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T \bar{x}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$

$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x && \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$

Recall that (P) and (P') are equivalent!

$\longrightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is feasible in (P), and has same objective value in (P) and (P')

$$\begin{aligned} c^T \bar{x} &= \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T \bar{x} \\ &= \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}_N^T \bar{x}_N \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x && \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y && \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$
$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x & \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$

Recall that (P) and (P') are equivalent!

$\longrightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is feasible in (P), and has same objective value in (P) and (P')

$$\begin{aligned} c^T \bar{x} &= \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T \bar{x} \\ &= \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}_N^T \bar{x}_N \\ &= b^T \bar{y} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$
$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x && \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x && \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y && \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned}$$

Recall that (P) and (P') are equivalent!

$\longrightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is feasible in (P), and has same objective value in (P) and (P')

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$
$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

$$\begin{aligned} c^T \bar{x} &= \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T \bar{x} \\ &= \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}_N^T \bar{x}_N \\ &= b^T \bar{y} \end{aligned}$$

Goal: Show that $\bar{y}$ is dual feasible.

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \qquad \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$ and $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \qquad \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \qquad \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$

$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\max\ z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \qquad \text{(P')}$$
$$\text{s.t. } x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$ and $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$.

Note that B is an optimal basis $\longrightarrow$ $\bar{c} \leq \mathbb{0}$

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \geq c$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$
$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \qquad \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$ and $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$.

Note that B is an optimal basis $\longrightarrow$ $\bar{c} \leq \mathbb{0}$

$$\longrightarrow \qquad c^T - \bar{y}^T A \leq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \qquad \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax = b \\ & x \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \qquad \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y \geq c \end{aligned}$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$

$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\max\ z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \qquad \text{(P')}$$
$$\text{s.t. } x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$ and $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$.

Note that B is an optimal basis $\longrightarrow$ $\bar{c} \leq \mathbb{0}$

$$\longrightarrow \qquad c^T - \bar{y}^T A \leq \mathbb{0}$$

Equivalently, $A^T \bar{y} \geq c$,

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \geq c$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$
$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality – for LPs in SEF

We can rewrite (P) for basis B:

$$\max\ z = \bar{y}^T b + \bar{c}^T x \qquad \text{(P')}$$
$$\text{s.t. } x_B + A_B^{-1} A_N x_N = A_B^{-1} b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

and: $\bar{x}_B = A_B^{-1} b$ and $\bar{x}_N = \mathbb{0}$ and $c^T \bar{x} = b^T \bar{y}$.

Note that B is an optimal basis $\longrightarrow$ $\bar{c} \leq \mathbb{0}$

$$\longrightarrow \qquad c^T - \bar{y}^T A \leq \mathbb{0}$$

Equivalently, $A^T \bar{y} \geq c$,
meaning $\bar{y}$ is dual feasible!

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \geq c$$

where:

$$\bar{y} = A_B^{-T} c_B$$
$$\bar{c}^T = c^T - \bar{y}^T A$$

Strong Duality Theorem

Strong Duality Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be a primal-dual pair of LPs. If (P) has an optimal solution, then (D) has one, and their objective values equal.

Strong Duality Theorem

Strong Duality Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be a primal-dual pair of LPs. If (P) has an optimal solution, then (D) has one, and their objective values equal.

Note: (P) is feasible and (D) is feasible $\longrightarrow$ (P) cannot be unbounded

Strong Duality Theorem

Strong Duality Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be a primal-dual pair of LPs. If (P) has an optimal solution, then (D) has one, and their objective values equal.

Note: (P) is feasible and (D) is feasible $\longrightarrow$ (P) cannot be unbounded

Fundamental Theorem of LP $\longrightarrow$ (P) has an optimal solution.

Strong Duality Theorem

Strong Duality Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be a primal-dual pair of LPs. If (P) has an optimal solution, then (D) has one, and their objective values equal.

Note: (P) is feasible and (D) is feasible $\longrightarrow$ (P) cannot be unbounded
Fundamental Theorem of LP $\longrightarrow$ (P) has an optimal solution.

Subtly different version via previous results:

Strong Duality Theorem – Feasibility Version

Let (P) and (D) be primal-dual pair of LPs. If both are feasible, then both have optimal solutions of the same objective value.

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution			
unbounded			
infeasible			

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(P) / (D)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①		
unbounded			possible ⑥
infeasible		possible ⑧	

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	
unbounded			possible ⑥
infeasible		possible ⑧	

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist
- ② follows directly from Weak Duality as follows:

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	
unbounded			possible ⑥
infeasible		possible ⑧	

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist
- ② follows directly from Weak Duality as follows:

  Suppose, for a contradiction, that (D) has an optimal solution $\bar{y}$.

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \geq c$$

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	
unbounded			possible ⑥
infeasible		possible ⑧	

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist
- ② follows directly from Weak Duality as follows:

  Suppose, for a contradiction, that (D) has an optimal solution $\bar{y}$.
  $c^T \bar{x} \leq b^T \bar{y}$ for all feasible primal solutions $\bar{x}$ by Weak Duality

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \geq c$$

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	
unbounded			possible ⑥
infeasible		possible ⑧	

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist
- ② follows directly from Weak Duality as follows:

  Suppose, for a contradiction, that (D) has an optimal solution $\bar{y}$.
  $c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$ for all feasible primal solutions $\bar{x}$ by Weak Duality $\longrightarrow$ (P) is bounded!

$$\max\ c^Tx \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^Ty \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^Ty \geq c$$

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	
unbounded	impossible ④	impossible ⑤	possible ⑥
infeasible		possible ⑧	

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist
- ② follows directly from Weak Duality as follows:

  Suppose, for a contradiction, that (D) has an optimal solution $\bar{y}$.
  $c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$ for all feasible primal solutions $\bar{x}$ by Weak Duality $\longrightarrow$ (P) is bounded!
  Similar arguments apply to ④ and ⑤

$$\max\ c^T x \quad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \quad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \geq c$$

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	impossible ③
unbounded	impossible ④	impossible ⑤	possible ⑥
infeasible	impossible ⑦	possible ⑧	

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist
- ② follows directly from Weak Duality as follows:

  Suppose, for a contradiction, that (D) has an optimal solution $\bar{y}$.
  $c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$ for all feasible primal solutions $\bar{x}$ by Weak Duality $\longrightarrow$ (P) is bounded!
  Similar arguments apply to ④ and ⑤
- ③, ⑦ follow directly from Strong Duality

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y \geq c$$

Possible Outcomes of Primal-Dual Pair (P), (D)

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	impossible ③
unbounded	impossible ④	impossible ⑤	possible ⑥
infeasible	impossible ⑦	possible ⑧	possible ⑨

- ①, ⑥, and ⑧ many examples exist
- ② follows directly from Weak Duality as follows:

  Suppose, for a contradiction, that (D) has an optimal solution $\bar{y}$.
  $c^T\bar{x} \leq b^T\bar{y}$ for all feasible primal solutions $\bar{x}$ by Weak Duality $\longrightarrow$ (P) is bounded!
  Similar arguments apply to ④ and ⑤
- ③, ⑦ follow directly from Strong Duality
- I'll leave ⑨ for you to do as an exercise!

$$\max\ c^Tx \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax = b$$
$$x \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^Ty \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^Ty \geq c$$

Recap

Strong Duality Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be a primal-dual pair of LPs. If (P) has an optimal solution, then (D) has one, and their objective values equal.

Recap

Strong Duality Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be a primal-dual pair of LPs. If (P) has an optimal solution, then (D) has one, and their objective values equal.

(D) \ (P)	optimal solution	unbounded	infeasible
optimal solution	possible ①	impossible ②	impossible ③
unbounded	impossible ④	impossible ⑤	possible ⑥
infeasible	impossible ⑦	possible ⑧	possible ⑨

Module 4: Duality Theory (Geometry of Duality)

Recap: Strong Duality

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

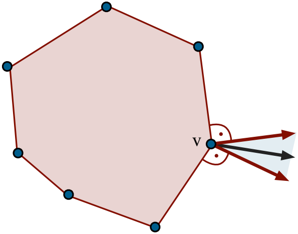
Strong Duality Theorem

For the above primal-dual pair of LPs, (P) and (D), if (P) has an optimal solution, then (D) has one and their objective values equal.

Recap: The Geometry of an LP

In Module 2, we saw that

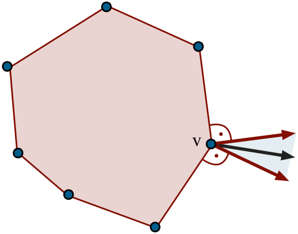
- The feasible region of an LP is a polyhedron.
- Basic solutions correspond to extreme points of this polyhedron.



Recap: The Geometry of an LP

In Module 2, we saw that

- The feasible region of an LP is a polyhedron.
- Basic solutions correspond to extreme points of this polyhedron.



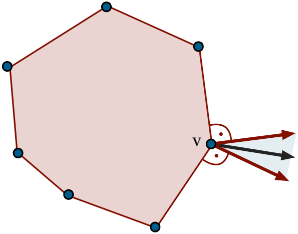
Question

When is an extreme point optimal?

Recap: The Geometry of an LP

In Module 2, we saw that

- The feasible region of an LP is a polyhedron.
- Basic solutions correspond to extreme points of this polyhedron.



Question

When is an extreme point optimal?

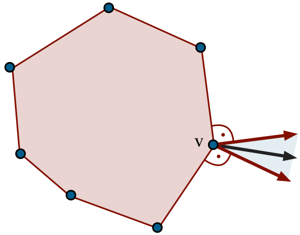
Module 2 and strong duality told us that Simplex computes

- a basic solution (if it exists), and
- a certificate of optimality.

Recap: The Geometry of an LP

In Module 2, we saw that

- The feasible region of an LP is a polyhedron.
- Basic solutions correspond to extreme points of this polyhedron.



Question

When is an extreme point optimal?

Module 2 and strong duality told us that Simplex computes

- a basic solution (if it exists), and
- a certificate of optimality.

Today we will investigate these certificates using geometry.

Revisiting Weak Duality

We can rewrite (P) using slack variables s:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

We can rewrite (P) using slack variables s:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

Note:

- (x, s) feasible for (P') $\longrightarrow$ x feasible for (P)

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

We can rewrite (P) using slack variables s:

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P')}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax + s = b$$
$$s \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y = c$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Note:

- (x, s) feasible for (P') $\longrightarrow$ x feasible for (P)
- x feasible for (P) $\longrightarrow (x, b - Ax)$ feasible for (P')

Revisiting Weak Duality

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P), and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P), and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)

$$\longrightarrow \quad (\bar{x}, b - A\bar{x}) \text{ feasible for (P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P), and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)

$$\longrightarrow \quad (\bar{x}, \underbrace{b - A\bar{x}}_{\bar{s}}) \text{ feasible for (P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \le b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P), and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)

$$\longrightarrow \quad (\bar{x}, \underbrace{b - A\bar{x}}_{\bar{s}}) \text{ feasible for (P')}$$

Recall the Weak Duality proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}^T b &= \bar{y}^T (A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) \\ &= (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P)} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \le b \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x & \text{(P')} \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y & \text{(D)} \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P), and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)

$$\longrightarrow \quad (\bar{x}, \underbrace{b - A\bar{x}}_{\bar{s}}) \text{ feasible for (P')}$$

Recall the Weak Duality proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}^T b &= \bar{y}^T (A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) \\ &= (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \\ &= c^T \bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \le b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P), and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)

$$\longrightarrow \quad (\bar{x}, \underbrace{b - A\bar{x}}_{\bar{s}}) \text{ feasible for (P')}$$

Recall the Weak Duality proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}^T b &= \bar{y}^T (A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) \\ &= (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \\ &= c^T \bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \end{aligned}$$

Strong Duality tells us that:

$$\bar{x},\ \bar{y} \text{ both optimal} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad c^T \bar{x} = \bar{y}^T b$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\max\ c^T x \\ &\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\max\ c^T x \\ &\text{s.t. } Ax + s = b \\ &\quad s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\min\ b^T y \\ &\text{s.t. } A^T y = c \\ &\quad y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is feasible for (P), and $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)

$$\longrightarrow \quad (\bar{x}, \underbrace{b - A\bar{x}}_{\bar{s}}) \text{ feasible for (P')}$$

Recall the Weak Duality proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}^T b &= \bar{y}^T (A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) \\ &= (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \\ &= c^T \bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \end{aligned}$$

Strong Duality tells us that:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{x},\ \bar{y} \text{ both optimal} \quad &\Longleftrightarrow \quad c^T \bar{x} = \bar{y}^T b \\ &\Longleftrightarrow \quad \bar{y}^T \bar{s} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \le b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Recall the Weak Duality proof:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{y}^T b &= \bar{y}^T (A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) \\ &= (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \\ &= c^T \bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s}\end{aligned}$$

$$0 = \bar{y}^T \bar{s} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \bar{y}_i \bar{s}_i \qquad (\star)$$

$$\max c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \le b$$

$$\max c^T x \qquad \text{(P')}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax + s = b$$
$$s \ge \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y = c$$
$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Recall the Weak Duality proof:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{y}^T b &= \bar{y}^T(A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) \\ &= (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \\ &= c^T \bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s}\end{aligned}$$

$$0 = \bar{y}^T \bar{s} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \bar{y}_i \bar{s}_i \qquad (\star)$$

By feasibility, $\bar{y} \geq \mathbb{0}$ and $\bar{s} \geq \mathbb{0}$

$$\begin{aligned} &\max\ c^T x \\ &\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\max\ c^T x \\ &\text{s.t. } Ax + s = b \\ &\quad s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\min\ b^T y \\ &\text{s.t. } A^T y = c \\ &\quad y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality

Recall the Weak Duality proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}^T b &= \bar{y}^T(A\bar{x} + \bar{s}) \\ &= (\bar{y}^T A)\bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \\ &= c^T \bar{x} + \bar{y}^T \bar{s} \end{aligned}$$

$$0 = \bar{y}^T \bar{s} = \sum_{i=1}^{m} \bar{y}_i \bar{s}_i \qquad (\star)$$

By feasibility, $\bar{y} \geq \mathbb{0}$ and $\bar{s} \geq \mathbb{0}$ and hence

$(\star)$ holds if and only if $\bar{y}_i = 0$ or $\bar{s}_i = 0$,

for every $1 \leq i \leq m$.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality – Recap

Given: $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ feasible solutions for (P) and (D)

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b$$

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P')}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax + s = b$$
$$s \geq \mathbb{0}$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y = c$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality – Recap

Given: $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ feasible solutions for (P) and (D)

Define: $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \le b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality – Recap

Given: $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ feasible solutions for (P) and (D)

Define: $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$

Then:

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ optimal $\iff$ $\bar{y}_i = 0$ or $\bar{s}_i = 0$

for all $1 \leq i \leq m$.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality – Recap

Given: $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ feasible solutions for (P) and (D)

Define: $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$

Then:

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ optimal $\iff$ $\underbrace{\bar{y}_i = 0 \text{ or } \bar{s}_i = 0}_{(\star)}$

for all $1 \leq i \leq m$.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality – Recap

Given: $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ feasible solutions for (P) and (D)

Define: $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$

Then:

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ optimal $\iff$ $\underbrace{\bar{y}_i = 0 \text{ or } \bar{s}_i = 0}_{(\star)}$

for all $1 \leq i \leq m$. We can rephrase $(\star)$ equivalently as

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or ith constraint of (P) holds with equality .

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Revisiting Weak Duality – Recap

Given: $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ feasible solutions for (P) and (D)

Define: $\bar{s} = b - A\bar{x}$

Then:

$$\bar{x} \text{ and } \bar{y} \text{ optimal} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \underbrace{\bar{y}_i = 0 \text{ or } \bar{s}_i = 0}_{(\star)}$$

for all $1 \leq i \leq m$. We can rephrase $(\star)$ equivalently as

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or ith constraint of (P) holds with equality (is tight).

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P')}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

Complementary Slackness – Special Case

Let $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ be feasible for (P) and (D).

Then $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are optimal if and only if

(i) $\bar{y}_i = 0$, or

(ii) the ith constraint of (P) is tight for $\bar{x}$,

for every row index i.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax + s = b \\ & s \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{P'}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{D}$$

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,-1,1)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0,2,1)^T$ are optimal!

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,-1,1)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0,2,1)^T$ are optimal!

Complementary Slackness

Feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ for (P) and (D) are optimal if and only if

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or the ith primal constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$, for all row indices i.

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,-1,1)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0,2,1)^T$ are optimal!

Complementary Slackness

Feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ for (P) and (D) are optimal if and only if

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or the ith primal constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$, for all row indices i.

It is easy to check if $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible.

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,-1,1)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0,2,1)^T$ are optimal!

Complementary Slackness

Feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ for (P) and (D) are optimal if and only if

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or the ith primal constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$, for all row indices i.

It is easy to check if $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible.

(i) $\bar{y}_1 = 0$ or $(1,2,-1)\bar{x} = 2$

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,-1,1)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0,2,1)^T$ are optimal!

Complementary Slackness

Feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ for (P) and (D) are optimal if and only if

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or the ith primal constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$, for all row indices i.

It is easy to check if $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible.

(i) $\bar{y}_1 = 0$ or $(1,2,-1)\bar{x} = 2$

(ii) $\bar{y}_2 = 0$ or $(3,1,2)\bar{x} = 4$

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,-1,1)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0,2,1)^T$ are optimal!

Complementary Slackness

Feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ for (P) and (D) are optimal if and only if

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or the ith primal constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$, for all row indices i.

It is easy to check if $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible.

(i) $\bar{y}_1 = 0$ or $(1,2,-1)\bar{x} = 2$

(ii) $\bar{y}_2 = 0$ or $(3,1,2)\bar{x} = 4$

(iii) $\bar{y}_3 = 0$ or $(-1,1,1)\bar{x} = -1$

Complementary Slackness Conditions – Example

Consider the following LP:

$$\max\ (5,3,5)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its dual is:

$$\min\ (2,4,-1)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,-1,1)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (0,2,1)^T$ are optimal!

Complementary Slackness

Feasible solutions $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ for (P) and (D) are optimal if and only if

$\bar{y}_i = 0$ or the ith primal constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$, for all row indices i.

It is easy to check if $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are feasible.

(i) $\bar{y}_1 = 0$ or $(1,2,-1)\bar{x} = 2$

(ii) $\bar{y}_2 = 0$ or $(3,1,2)\bar{x} = 4$

(iii) $\bar{y}_3 = 0$ or $(-1,1,1)\bar{x} = -1$

$\longrightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are optimal!

General Complementary Slackness

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$					
max	$c^\top x$	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min	$b^\top y$
subject to		$=$ constraint	free variable	subject to	
	$Ax \, ? \, b$	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		$A^\top y \, ? \, c$
	$x \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		$y \, ? \, \mathbb{0}$
		free variable	$=$ constraint		
		≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Suppose: $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$ and $(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$ are a pair of primal and dual LPs according to the above table

General Complementary Slackness

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $\quad c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $\quad b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \,?\, b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \,?\, c$
$x \,?\, \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \,?\, \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Suppose: $(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$ and $(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$ are a pair of primal and dual LPs according to the above table, with feasible solutions $\bar{x}$, and $\bar{y}$

General Complementary Slackness

(P_{max})			(P_{min})		
max $c^\top x$		$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	min $b^\top y$	
subject to		$=$ constraint	free variable	subject to	
	$Ax\ ?\ b$	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable		$A^\top y\ ?\ c$
	$x\ ?\ \mathbb{0}$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint		$y\ ?\ \mathbb{0}$
		free variable	$=$ constraint		
		≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint		

Suppose: (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) are a pair of primal and dual LPs according to the above table, with feasible solutions $\bar{x}$, and $\bar{y}$

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ satisfy the complementary slackness conditions if ...

for all variables x_j of (P_{max}):

(i) $\bar{x}_j = 0$, or

(ii) jth constraint of (P_{min}) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{y}$

General Complementary Slackness

(P_{max})			(P_{min})
max $c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \mathbin{?} b$ $x \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\geq$ constraint ≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable	≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable $\geq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\leq$ constraint	min $b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$ $y \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$

Suppose: (P_{max}) and (P_{min}) are a pair of primal and dual LPs according to the above table, with feasible solutions $\bar{x}$, and $\bar{y}$

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ satisfy the complementary slackness conditions if ...

for all variables x_j of (P_{max}):

(i) $\bar{x}_j = 0$, or

(ii) jth constraint of (P_{min}) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{y}$

for all variables y_i of (P_{min}):

(i) $\bar{y}_i = 0$, or

(ii) ith constraint of (P_{max}) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{x}$

General Complementary Slackness

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ satisfy the CS conditions if ...

for all variables x_j of (P_{max}):

(i) $\bar{x}_j = 0$, or

(ii) jth constraint of (P_{min}) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{y}$

for all variables y_i of (P_{min}):

(i) $\bar{y}_i = 0$, or

(ii) ith constraint of (P_{max}) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{x}$

General Complementary Slackness

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ satisfy the CS conditions if ...

for all variables x_j of ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{max}}$):

(i) $\bar{x}_j = 0$, or

(ii) jth constraint of ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{min}}$) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{y}$

for all variables y_i of ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{min}}$):

(i) $\bar{y}_i = 0$, or

(ii) ith constraint of ($\mathsf{P}_{\mathsf{max}}$) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{x}$

Note: The two or's above are inclusive!

General Complementary Slackness

$\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ satisfy the CS conditions if ...

for all variables x_j of (P_{max}):

(i) $\bar{x}_j = 0$, or

(ii) jth constraint of (P_{min}) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{y}$

for all variables y_i of (P_{min}):

(i) $\bar{y}_i = 0$, or

(ii) ith constraint of (P_{max}) is satisfied with equality for $\bar{x}$

Note: The two or's above are inclusive!

Complementary Slackness Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be an arbitrary primal-dual pair of LPs, and let $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ be feasible solutions. Then these solutions are optimal if and only if the CS conditions hold.

General CS Conditions – Example

($\mathrm{P}_{\max}$)			($\mathrm{P}_{\min}$)
	$\leq$ constraint	≥ 0 variable	
max $\quad c^\top x$	$=$ constraint	free variable	min $\quad b^\top y$
subject to	$\geq$ constraint	≤ 0 variable	subject to
$Ax \ ? \ b$	≥ 0 variable	$\geq$ constraint	$A^\top y \ ? \ c$
$x \ ? \ \mathbb{0}$	free variable	$=$ constraint	$y \ ? \ \mathbb{0}$
	≤ 0 variable	$\leq$ constraint	

Consider the following LP...

$$\max \ (-2,-1,0)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0$$

General CS Conditions – Example

$(\mathrm{P}_{\max})$		$(\mathrm{P}_{\min})$	
max $\quad c^\top x$ subject to $Ax \mathbin{?} b$ $x \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$	$\leq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\geq$ constraint ≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable	≥ 0 variable free variable ≤ 0 variable $\geq$ constraint $=$ constraint $\leq$ constraint	min $\quad b^\top y$ subject to $A^\top y \mathbin{?} c$ $y \mathbin{?} \mathbb{0}$

Consider the following LP...

$$\max \ (-2,-1,0)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0$$

... and its dual LP:

$$\min \ (5,7)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \leq \\ \geq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0$$

General CS Conditions – Example

$$\max\ (-2,-1,0)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0$$

$$\min\ (5,7)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \leq \\ \geq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0$$

Check: $\bar{x} = (-1,0,3)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (-1,1)^T$ are feasible for (P) and (D).

General CS Conditions – Example

$$\max\ (-2,-1,0)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0$$

$$\min\ (5,7)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \leq \\ \geq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0$$

Check: $\bar{x} = (-1, 0, 3)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (-1, 1)^T$ are feasible for (P) and (D).
Are they also optimal?

General CS Conditions – Example

$$\max\ (-2,-1,0)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 3 & 2\\ -1 & 4 & 2\end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix}\geq\\ \leq\end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix}5\\7\end{pmatrix}$$
$$x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0$$

$$\min\ (5,7)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & -1\\ 3 & 4\\ 2 & 2\end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix}\leq\\ \geq\\ =\end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix}-2\\-1\\0\end{pmatrix}$$
$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0$$

Check: $\bar{x} = (-1,0,3)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (-1,1)^T$ are feasible for (P) and (D). Are they also optimal?

Complementary Slackness Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be an arbitrary primal-dual pair of LPs, and let $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ be feasible solutions. Then these solutions are optimal if and only if the CS conditions hold.

General CS Conditions – Example

$$\max\ (-2,-1,0)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0$$

$$\min\ (5,7)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \leq \\ \geq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (-1,0,3)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (-1,1)^T$ are optimal

Primal conditions:

(i) $\bar{x}_1 = 0$ or the first (D) constraint is tight for $\bar{y}$.

(ii) $\bar{x}_2 = 0$ or the second (D) constraint is tight for $\bar{y}$.

(iii) $\bar{x}_3 = 0$ or the third (D) constraint is tight for $\bar{y}$.

General CS Conditions – Example

$$\max\ (-2,-1,0)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \geq \\ \leq \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \leq 0, x_2 \geq 0$$

$$\min\ (5,7)y \qquad \text{(D)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} y \begin{matrix} \leq \\ \geq \\ = \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y_1 \leq 0, y_2 \geq 0$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (-1,0,3)^T$ and $\bar{y} = (-1,1)^T$ are optimal

Primal conditions:

(i) $\bar{x}_1 = 0$ or the first (D) constraint is tight for $\bar{y}$.

(ii) $\bar{x}_2 = 0$ or the second (D) constraint is tight for $\bar{y}$.

(iii) $\bar{x}_3 = 0$ or the third (D) constraint is tight for $\bar{y}$.

Dual conditions:

(i) $\bar{y}_1 = 0$ or the first (P) constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$.

(ii) $\bar{y}_2 = 0$ or the second (P) constraint is tight for $\bar{x}$.

Complementary Slackness – Geometry

Complementary Slackness Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be an arbitrary primal-dual pair of LPs, and let $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ be feasible solutions. Then these solutions are optimal if and only if the CS conditions hold.

Will now see a geometric interpretation of this theorem!

Complementary Slackness – Geometry

Complementary Slackness Theorem

Let (P) and (D) be an arbitrary primal-dual pair of LPs, and let $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ be feasible solutions. Then these solutions are optimal if and only if the CS conditions hold.

Will now see a geometric interpretation of this theorem!

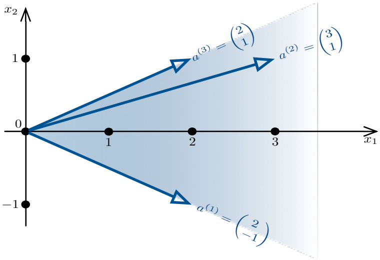
But some basics first!

Geometry – Cones of Vectors

Definition

Let $a^{(1)}, \ldots, a^{(k)}$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$. The cone generated by these vectors is given by

$$C = \{\lambda_1 a^{(1)} + \lambda_2 a^{(2)} + \ldots + \lambda_k a^{(k)} \ : \ \lambda \geq \mathbb{0}\}$$

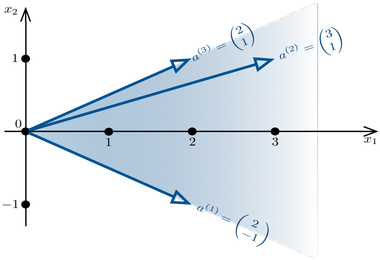


Geometry – Cones of Vectors

Definition

Let $a^{(1)}, \ldots, a^{(k)}$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$. The cone generated by these vectors is given by

$$C = \{\lambda_1 a^{(1)} + \lambda_2 a^{(2)} + \ldots + \lambda_k a^{(k)} \; : \; \lambda \geq \mathbb{0}\}$$

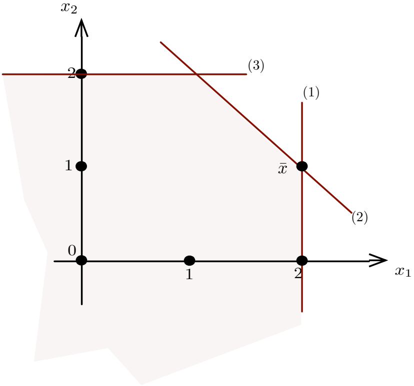


Example: The cone generated by $a^{(1)}, a^{(2)}$ and $a^{(3)}$ is the blue-shaded area.

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Consider the following polyhedron:

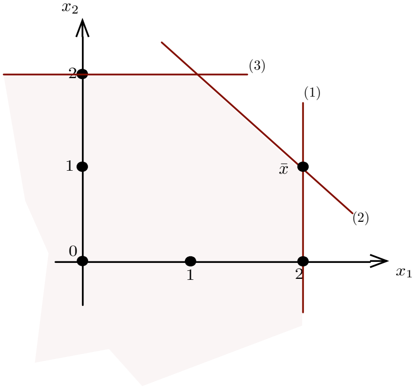
$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \ : \ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \}$$



Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Consider the following polyhedron:

$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \; : \; \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \}$$

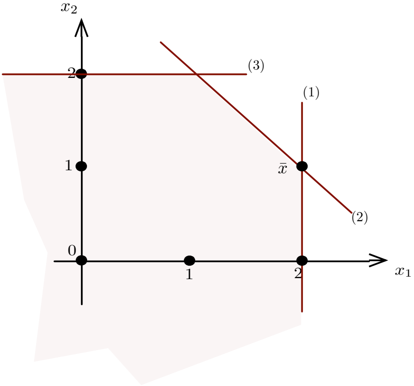


Consider: $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Consider the following polyhedron:

$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \ : \ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \}$$



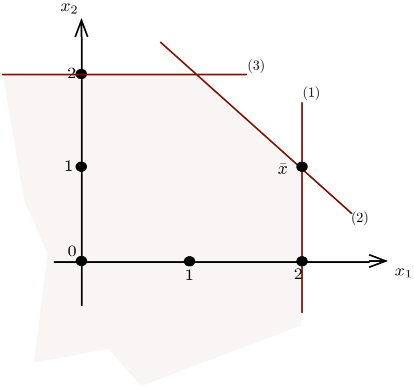
Consider: $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$

(i) $\bar{x} \in P \longrightarrow$ Check!

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Consider the following polyhedron:

$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \ : \ \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \}$$



Consider: $\bar{x} = (2, 1)^T$

(i) $\bar{x} \in P \longrightarrow$ Check!

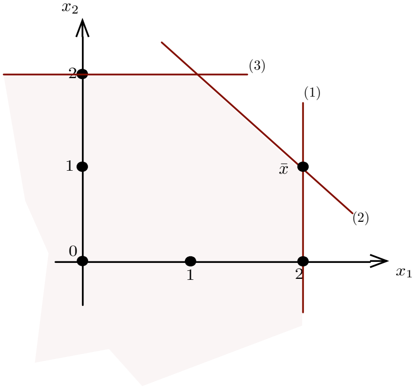
(ii) Tight constraints:

$$\text{row}_1(A)\bar{x} = b_1$$
$$\text{row}_2(A)\bar{x} = b_2$$

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Consider the following polyhedron:

$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \; : \; \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{A} x \leq \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}}_{b} \}$$



Consider: $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$

(i) $\bar{x} \in P \longrightarrow$ Check!

(ii) Tight constraints:

$$\text{row}_1(A)\bar{x} = b_1 \quad \longrightarrow \quad (1,0)\bar{x} = 2$$
$$\text{row}_2(A)\bar{x} = b_2 \quad \longrightarrow \quad (1,1)\bar{x} = 3$$

Cone of tight constraints:

Cone generated by rows of tight constraints

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

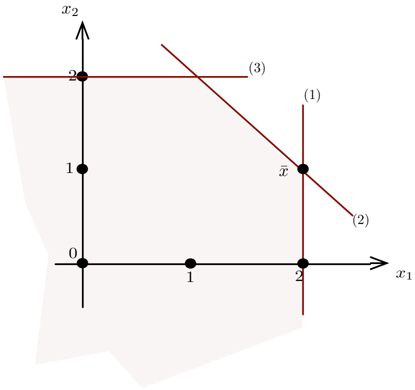
Cone of tight constraints:

Cone generated by rows of tight constraints

Tight constraints:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \quad (1)$$

$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \quad (2)$$



Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Cone of tight constraints:

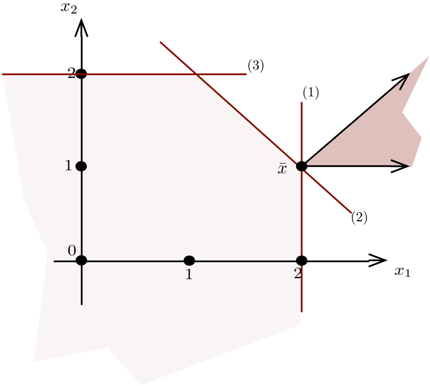
Cone generated by rows of tight constraints

Tight constraints:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$
$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

Cone of tight constraints:

$$\{\lambda_1(1,0)^T + \lambda_2(1,1)^T \,:\, \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \geq 0\}$$



Cone of tight constraints:

Cone generated by rows of tight constraints

Tight constraints:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$
$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

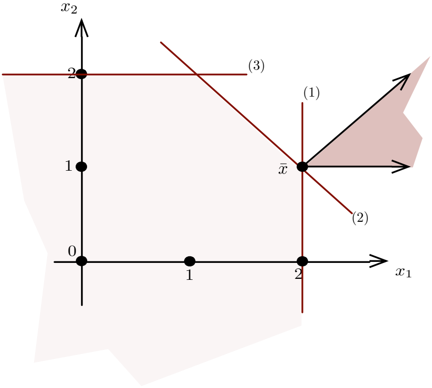
Cone of tight constraints:

$$\{\lambda_1(1,0)^T + \lambda_2(1,1)^T \,:\, \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \geq 0\}$$

Consider an LP of the form

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

and a feasible solution $\bar{x}$.



Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Cone of tight constraints:

Cone generated by rows of tight constraints

Tight constraints:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$
$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

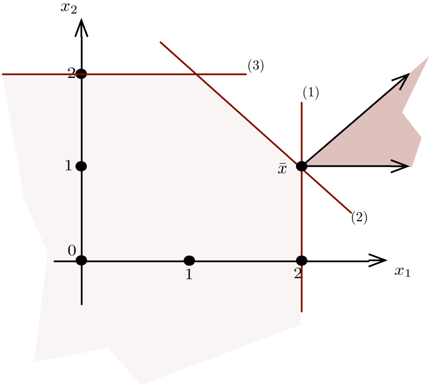
Cone of tight constraints:

$$\{\lambda_1(1,0)^T + \lambda_2(1,1)^T \,:\, \lambda_1, \lambda_2 \geq 0\}$$

Consider an LP of the form

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

and a feasible solution $\bar{x}$.



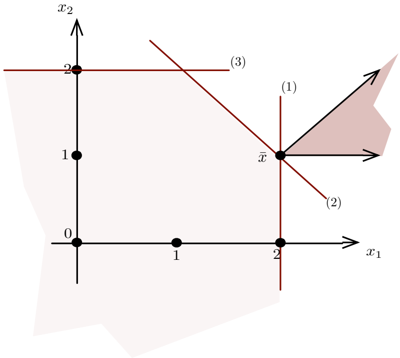
The cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$ is the cone generated by the rows of A corresponding to tight constraints at $\bar{x}$.

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \le b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.



$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \,:\, \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 1 & 1\\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}2\\3\\2\end{pmatrix}\}$$

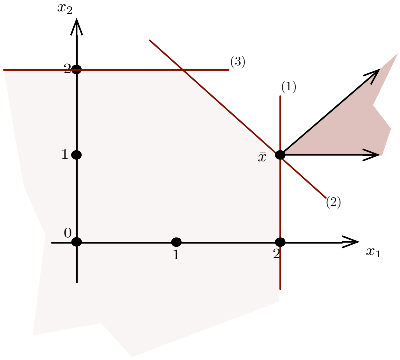
Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \le b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.



Example: Consider the LP

$$\max\{(3/2, 1/2)x \,:\, x \in P\}$$

$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \,: \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}\}$$

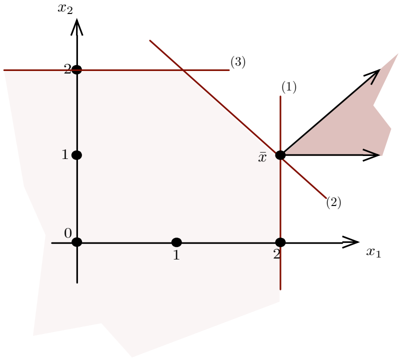
Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.



Example: Consider the LP

$$\max\{(3/2, 1/2)x \,:\, x \in P\}$$

$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \,:\, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}\}$$

Tight constraints at $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$
$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Example: Consider the LP

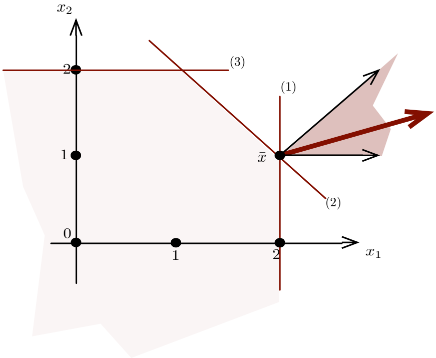
$$\max\{(3/2, 1/2)x \, : \, x \in P\} \qquad (\star)$$

Tight constraints at $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$
$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

Note: $(3/2, 1/2)^T$ in cone of tight constraints as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$



$$P = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 \, : \, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}\}$$

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Example: Consider the LP

$$\max\{(3/2, 1/2)x \,:\, x \in P\} \qquad (\star)$$

Tight constraints at $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$
$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

Note: $(3/2, 1/2)^T$ is in cone of tight constraints as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Therefore: $\bar{x}$ is an optimal solution!

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \le b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Example: Consider the LP

$$\max\{(3/2, 1/2)x \,:\, x \in P\} \qquad (\star)$$

Tight constraints at $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$

$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

Note: $(3/2, 1/2)^T$ is in cone of tight constraints as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Therefore: $\bar{x}$ is an optimal solution!

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

Proving the "if" direction of the above theorem amounts to

(i) finding a feasible solution $\bar{y}$ to the dual of $(\star)$, and

(ii) showing that $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ satisfy the CS conditions!

Geometry – Cone of Tight Constraints

Example: Consider the LP

$$\max\{(3/2, 1/2)x \,:\, x \in P\} \qquad (\star)$$

Tight constraints at $\bar{x} = (2,1)^T$:

$$(1,0)\bar{x} = 2 \qquad (1)$$
$$(1,1)\bar{x} = 3 \qquad (2)$$

Note: $(3/2, 1/2)^T$ is in cone of tight constraints as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Therefore: $\bar{x}$ is an optimal solution!

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \le b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

Proving the "if" direction of the above theorem amounts to

(i) finding a feasible solution $\bar{y}$ to the dual of $(\star)$, and

(ii) showing that $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ satisfy the CS conditions!

The above theorem follows from CS Theorem!

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad\qquad (\star)$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 1 & 1\\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}2\\ 3\\ 2\end{pmatrix}$$

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\begin{aligned} &\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x && (\star) \\ &\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\begin{aligned} &\min\ (2, 3, 2)y && (\lozenge) \\ &\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\quad y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned}$$

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad (\star)$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 1 & 1\\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}2\\3\\2\end{pmatrix}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\min\ (2, 3, 2)y \qquad (\Diamond)$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

We know that:

$$\begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\1\end{pmatrix}$$

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad (\star)$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\1 & 1\\0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}2\\3\\2\end{pmatrix}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\min\ (2, 3, 2)y \qquad (\Diamond)$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 0\\0 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

We know that:

$$\begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\1\end{pmatrix}$$

Hence: $\bar{y} = (1, 1/2, 0)^T$ is feasible for $(\Diamond)$.

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad (\star)$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 1 & 1\\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}2\\3\\2\end{pmatrix}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\min\ (2, 3, 2)y \qquad (\Diamond)$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix}$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

We know that:

$$\begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\1\end{pmatrix}$$

Hence: $\bar{y} = (1, 1/2, 0)^T$ is feasible for $(\Diamond)$.

Also: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if the constraint i is tight at $\bar{x}$.

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad (\star)$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 1 & 1\\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}2\\ 3\\ 2\end{pmatrix}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\min\ (2, 3, 2)y \qquad (\Diamond)$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix}3/2\\ 1/2\end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

We know that:

$$\begin{pmatrix}3/2\\ 1/2\end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\ 0\end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\ 1\end{pmatrix}$$

Hence: $\bar{y} = (1, 1/2, 0)^T$ is feasible for $(\Diamond)$.

Also: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if the constraint i is tight at $\bar{x}$.
$\longrightarrow$ Dual CS Conditions hold!

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad (\star)$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 1 & 1\\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}2\\3\\2\end{pmatrix}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\min\ (2, 3, 2)y \qquad (\Diamond)$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \ge \mathbb{0}$$

We know that:

$$\begin{pmatrix}3/2\\1/2\end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix}1\\1\end{pmatrix}$$

Hence: $\bar{y} = (1, 1/2, 0)^T$ is feasible for $(\Diamond)$.

Also: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if the constraint i is tight at $\bar{x}$.
$\longrightarrow$ Dual CS Conditions hold!

How about primal CS conditions?

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad (\star)$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\min\ (2, 3, 2)y \qquad (\Diamond)$$

$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

We know that:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence: $\bar{y} = (1, 1/2, 0)^T$ is feasible for $(\Diamond)$.

Also: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if the constraint i is tight at $\bar{x}$.
$\longrightarrow$ Dual CS Conditions hold!

How about primal CS conditions?
$\longrightarrow$ they always hold as all constraints in the dual are equality constraints!

Geometric Optimality – Towards a Proof

If we write out the LP:

$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad (\star)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

We can write the dual of $(\star)$ as:

$$\min\ (2, 3, 2)y \qquad (\Diamond)$$

$$\text{s.t.} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} y = \begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

We know that:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3/2 \\ 1/2 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + 1/2 \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Hence: $\bar{y} = (1, 1/2, 0)^T$ is feasible for $(\Diamond)$.

Also: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if the constraint i is tight at $\bar{x}$.
$\longrightarrow$ Dual CS Conditions hold!

How about primal CS conditions?
$\longrightarrow$ they always hold as all constraints in the dual are equality constraints!

CS Theorem $\longrightarrow$ $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ optimal!

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is a solution to (P), and let $J(\bar{x})$ be the indices of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y = c$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \text{row}_i(A)x = b_i \qquad (\star)$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is a solution to (P), and let $J(\bar{x})$ be the indices of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$. i.e.,

$$\text{row}_i(A)\bar{x} = b_i$$

for $i \in J(\bar{x})$ and

$$\text{row}_i(A)\bar{x} < b_i$$

for $i \notin J(\bar{x})$.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \le b \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{D}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \text{row}_i(A)x = b_i \tag{$\star$}$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is a solution to (P), and let $J(\bar{x})$ be the indices of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$. i.e.,

$$\text{row}_i(A)\bar{x} = b_i$$

for $i \in J(\bar{x})$ and

$$\text{row}_i(A)\bar{x} < b_i$$

for $i \notin J(\bar{x})$.

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \le b \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \ge \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(D)}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \text{row}_i(A)x = b_i \qquad (\star)$$

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is a solution to (P), and let $J(\bar{x})$ be the indices of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$. i.e.,

$$\mathsf{row}_i(A)\bar{x} = b_i$$

for $i \in J(\bar{x})$ and

$$\mathsf{row}_i(A)\bar{x} < b_i$$

for $i \notin J(\bar{x})$.

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$, and thus

$$c = \sum_{i \in J(\bar{x})} \lambda_i \mathsf{row}_i(A)^T$$

for some $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. }\ & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. }\ & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{D}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathsf{row}_i(A)x = b_i \tag{$\star$}$$

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$, and thus for some $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$:

$$c = \sum_{i \in J(\bar{x})} \lambda_i \mathsf{row}_i(A)^T$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{D}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathsf{row}_i(A)x = b_i \tag{$\star$}$$

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$, and thus for some $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned} c &= \sum_{i \in J(\bar{x})} \lambda_i \mathsf{row}_i(A)^T \\ &= A^T \bar{y} \end{aligned}$$

Where we define:

$$\bar{y}_i = \begin{cases} \lambda_i \ : \ i \in J(\bar{x}) \\ 0 \ : \ \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min\ & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{D}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathsf{row}_i(A)x = b_i \tag{$\star$}$$

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$, and thus for some $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$:

$$\begin{aligned} c &= \sum_{i \in J(\bar{x})} \lambda_i \mathsf{row}_i(A)^T \\ &= A^T \bar{y} \end{aligned}$$

Where we define:

$$\bar{y}_i = \begin{cases} \lambda_i & : \; i \in J(\bar{x}) \\ 0 & : \; \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Since $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$: $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)!

$$\begin{aligned} \max \; & c^T x \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax \leq b \end{aligned} \tag{P}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \min \; & b^T y \\ \text{s.t. } & A^T y = c \\ & y \geq \mathbb{0} \end{aligned} \tag{D}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathsf{row}_i(A)x = b_i \tag{$\star$}$$

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$, and thus for some $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$:

$$c = \sum_{i \in J(\bar{x})} \lambda_i \mathsf{row}_i(A)^T$$
$$= A^T \bar{y}$$

Where we define:

$$\bar{y}_i = \begin{cases} \lambda_i & : \ i \in J(\bar{x}) \\ 0 & : \ \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Since $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$: $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)!

Also note: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if $\mathsf{row}_i(A)\bar{x} = b_i$

$$\max\ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b$$

$$\min\ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y = c$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathsf{row}_i(A)x = b_i \qquad (\star)$$

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$, and thus for some $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$:

$$c = \sum_{i \in J(\bar{x})} \lambda_i \text{row}_i(A)^T$$
$$= A^T \bar{y}$$

Where we define:

$$\bar{y}_i = \begin{cases} \lambda_i & : \; i \in J(\bar{x}) \\ 0 & : \; \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Since $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$: $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)!

Also note: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if $\text{row}_i(A)\bar{x} = b_i$
$\longrightarrow$ CS conditions $(\star)$ hold!

$$\max \; c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b$$

$$\min \; b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y = c$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \text{row}_i(A)x = b_i \qquad (\star)$$

Suppose c is in the cone of tight constraints at $\bar{x}$, and thus for some $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$:

$$c = \sum_{i \in J(\bar{x})} \lambda_i \text{row}_i(A)^T$$
$$= A^T \bar{y}$$

Where we define:

$$\bar{y}_i = \begin{cases} \lambda_i & : \ i \in J(\bar{x}) \\ 0 & : \ \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Since $\lambda \geq \mathbb{0}$: $\bar{y}$ is feasible for (D)!

Also note: $\bar{y}_i > 0$ only if $\text{row}_i(A)\bar{x} = b_i$
$\longrightarrow$ CS conditions ($\star$) hold!

$$\max \ c^T x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } Ax \leq b$$

$$\min \ b^T y \qquad \text{(D)}$$
$$\text{s.t. } A^T y = c$$
$$y \geq \mathbb{0}$$

(x, y) satisfy CS Conditions if for all variables y_i of (D):

$$y_i = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \text{row}_i(A)x = b_i \qquad (\star)$$

Hence: $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ are optimal!

Wrapping up...

We almost proved:

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

Wrapping up...

We almost proved:

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

Missing: $\bar{x}$ is optimal $\quad\longrightarrow\quad$ c is in the cone of tight constraints

Wrapping up...

We almost proved:

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

Missing: $\bar{x}$ is optimal $\quad \longrightarrow \quad$ c is in the cone of tight constraints

CS Theorem $\longrightarrow$ there is a feasible dual solution $\bar{y}$ that, together with $\bar{x}$, satisfies CS conditions.

Wrapping up...

We almost proved:

Theorem

Let $\bar{x}$ be a feasible solution to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \le b\}$$

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

Missing: $\bar{x}$ is optimal $\quad\longrightarrow\quad$ c is in the cone of tight constraints

CS Theorem $\longrightarrow$ there is a feasible dual solution $\bar{y}$ that, together with $\bar{x}$, satisfies CS conditions.

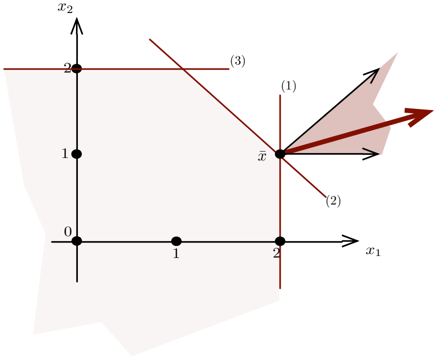
We can use CS conditions and $\bar{y}$ to show that c lies in cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$. This is an exercise!

Recap

Given a feasible solution $\bar{x}$ to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \leq b\}$$

$\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.



$$\max \; (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$$\text{s.t.} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

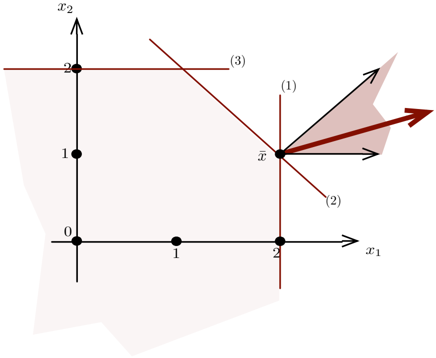
Recap

Given a feasible solution $\bar{x}$ to

$$\max\{c^T x \,:\, Ax \le b\}$$

$\bar{x}$ is optimal if and only if c is in the cone of tight constraints for $\bar{x}$.

This provides a nice geometric view of optimality certificates



$$\max\ (3/2, 1/2)x \qquad \text{(P)}$$
$$\text{s.t.}\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Module 5: Integer Programs (IP versus LP)

LP versus IP

LP versus IP

LINEAR PROGRAMMING	INTEGER PROGRAMMING
Can solve very large instances	

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	
The only possible outcomes are infeasible, unbounded, or optimal	

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	Some small instances cannot be solved
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	
The only possible outcomes are infeasible, unbounded, or optimal	

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	Some small instances cannot be solved
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	No fast algorithm exists
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	
The only possible outcomes are infeasible, unbounded, or optimal	

Remark

We cannot PROVE an algorithm that is guaranteed to be fast does not exist, but we can show that it is "highly unlikely".

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	Some small instances cannot be solved
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	No fast algorithm exists
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	Does not always exist
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	
The only possible outcomes are infeasible, unbounded, or optimal	

Remark

We cannot PROVE that sometimes there is no short certificate of infeasibility, but we can show that it is "highly unlikely".

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	Some small instances cannot be solved
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	No fast algorithm exists
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	Does not always exist
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	Does not always exist
The only possible outcomes are: infeasible, unbounded, or optimal	

Remark

We cannot PROVE that sometimes there is no short certificate of optimality, but we can show that it is "highly unlikely".

LP versus IP

LINEAR PROGRAMMING	INTEGER PROGRAMMING
Can solve very large instances	Some small instances cannot be solved
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	No fast algorithm exists
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	Does not always exist
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	Does not always exist
The only possible outcomes are infeasible, unbounded, or optimal	Can have other outcomes

LP versus IP

Linear programming	Integer programming
Can solve very large instances	Some small instances cannot be solved
Algorithms exist that are guaranteed to be fast	No fast algorithm exists
Short certificate of infeasibility (Farka's Lemma)	Does not always exist
Short certificate of optimality (Strong Duality)	Does not always exist
The only possible outcomes are infeasible, unbounded, or optimal	Can have other outcomes

Let us look at an example...

A Bad Example

A Bad Example

Proposition

The following IP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

is feasible, bounded, and has no optimal solution.

A Bad Example

Proposition

The following IP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad\qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ \qquad\quad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

is feasible, bounded, and has no optimal solution.

- It is feasible.

A Bad Example

Proposition

The following IP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

is feasible, bounded, and has no optimal solution.

- It is feasible. ✓

A Bad Example

Proposition

The following IP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

is feasible, bounded, and has no optimal solution.

- It is feasible. ✓
- 0 is an upper bound.

A Bad Example

Proposition

The following IP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad\qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ \qquad\quad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

is feasible, bounded, and has no optimal solution.

- It is feasible. ✓
- 0 is an upper bound. ✓

A Bad Example

Proposition

The following IP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

is feasible, bounded, and has no optimal solution.

- It is feasible. ✓
- 0 is an upper bound. ✓
- It has no optimal solution.

A Bad Example

Proposition

The following IP,

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

is feasible, bounded, and has no optimal solution.

- It is feasible. ✓
- 0 is an upper bound. ✓
- It has no optimal solution. ???

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\
& x_1, x_2 \text{ integer}
\end{array}
$$

No optimal solution

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2$$

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{ll}
\max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
& \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\
& x_1, x_2 \text{ integer}
\end{array}}
$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2$$

We will show:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

We will show:

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ \qquad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

We will show:

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. x_1', x_2' has larger value than x_1, x_2.

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \le & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \ge & 1 \end{array} \\ \quad x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}
$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

We will show:

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. x_1', x_2' has larger value than x_1, x_2.

$\Rightarrow$

contradiction !!!

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Proof

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x'_1, x'_2 are feasible.

Proof

$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ and $x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ ✓

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Proof

$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ and $x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ ✓

$$x_1' \stackrel{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}x_2'$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x'_1, x'_2 are feasible.

Proof

$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ and $x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ ✓

$$\begin{array}{lcl} x'_1 & \stackrel{?}{\leq} & \sqrt{2}x'_2 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 & \stackrel{?}{\leq} & \sqrt{2}\,(x_1 + 2x_2) \end{array} \qquad \Longleftrightarrow$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \le & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \ge & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Proof

$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \ge 1$ and $x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2 \ge 1$ ✓

$$\begin{array}{lcl} x_1' & \overset{?}{\le} & \sqrt{2}x_2' \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 & \overset{?}{\le} & \sqrt{2}\,(x_1 + 2x_2) = \sqrt{2}x_1 + 2\sqrt{2}x_2 \end{array} \qquad \iff$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 \leq \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ & x_1, x_2 \geq 1 \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Proof

$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ and $x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ ✓

$$\begin{array}{lll} x_1' & \stackrel{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}x_2' & \iff \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 & \stackrel{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}\,(x_1 + 2x_2) = \sqrt{2}x_1 + 2\sqrt{2}x_2 & \iff \\ x_1(2-\sqrt{2}) & \stackrel{?}{\leq} (2\sqrt{2}-2)x_2 & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 \leq \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ & x_1, x_2 \geq 1 \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Proof

$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ and $x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ ✓

$$\begin{array}{lll} x_1' & \overset{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}x_2' & \iff \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 & \overset{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}\,(x_1 + 2x_2) = \sqrt{2}x_1 + 2\sqrt{2}x_2 & \iff \\ x_1(2-\sqrt{2}) & \overset{?}{\leq} (2\sqrt{2}-2)x_2 & \iff \\ x_1 & \overset{?}{\leq} \frac{2\sqrt{2}-2}{2-\sqrt{2}}x_2 & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Proof

$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ and $x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ ✓

$$\begin{array}{lll} x_1' & \stackrel{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}x_2' & \iff \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 & \stackrel{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}\,(x_1 + 2x_2) = \sqrt{2}x_1 + 2\sqrt{2}x_2 & \iff \\ x_1(2 - \sqrt{2}) & \stackrel{?}{\leq} (2\sqrt{2} - 2)x_2 & \iff \\ x_1 & \stackrel{?}{\leq} \frac{2\sqrt{2}-2}{2-\sqrt{2}}x_2 = \sqrt{2}x_2 & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Proof

$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ and $x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 1$ ✓

$$\begin{array}{lll} x_1' & \overset{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}x_2' & \iff \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 & \overset{?}{\leq} \sqrt{2}\,(x_1 + 2x_2) = \sqrt{2}x_1 + 2\sqrt{2}x_2 & \iff \\ x_1(2-\sqrt{2}) & \overset{?}{\leq} (2\sqrt{2}-2)x_2 & \iff \\ x_1 & \overset{?}{\leq} \frac{2\sqrt{2}-2}{2-\sqrt{2}}x_2 = \sqrt{2}x_2 & \checkmark \end{array}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{lcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x'_1, x'_2 are feasible.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. x_1', x_2' has larger value than x_1, x_2.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. $x_1' - \sqrt{2}x_2' > x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. $x_1' - \sqrt{2}x_2' > x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$.

Proof

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. $x_1' - \sqrt{2}x_2' > x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$.

Proof

$$(2x_1 + 2x_2) - \sqrt{2}(x_1 + 2x_2)\sqrt{2} \overset{?}{>} x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & x_1 \leq \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ & x_1, x_2 \geq 1 \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. $x_1' - \sqrt{2}x_2' > x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$.

Proof

$$(2x_1 + 2x_2) - \sqrt{2}(x_1 + 2x_2)\sqrt{2} \stackrel{?}{>} x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$$

Simplifying (takes a little work), we obtain

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

No optimal solution

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x'_1 = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x'_2 = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x'_1, x'_2 are feasible.

Claim 2. $x'_1 - \sqrt{2}x'_2 > x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$.

Proof

$$(2x_1 + 2x_2) - \sqrt{2}(x_1 + 2x_2)\sqrt{2} \overset{?}{>} x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$$

Simplifying (takes a little work), we obtain

$$\sqrt{2}x_2 \overset{?}{>} x_1$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. $x_1' - \sqrt{2}x_2' > x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$.

Proof

$$(2x_1 + 2x_2) - \sqrt{2}(x_1 + 2x_2)\sqrt{2} \overset{?}{>} x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$$

Simplifying (takes a little work), we obtain

$$\sqrt{2}x_2 \overset{?}{>} x_1$$

- $\geq$ since x_1, x_2 are feasible for (IP)

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcl} x_1 & \leq & \sqrt{2}x_2 \\ x_1, x_2 & \geq & 1 \end{array} \\ & x_1, x_2 \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

NO OPTIMAL SOLUTION

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists optimal x_1, x_2. Let

$$x_1' = 2x_1 + 2x_2 \qquad x_2' = x_1 + 2x_2$$

Claim 1. x_1', x_2' are feasible.

Claim 2. $x_1' - \sqrt{2}x_2' > x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$.

Proof

$$(2x_1 + 2x_2) - \sqrt{2}(x_1 + 2x_2)\sqrt{2} \overset{?}{>} x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2$$

Simplifying (takes a little work), we obtain

$$\sqrt{2}x_2 \overset{?}{>} x_1$$

- $\geq$ since x_1, x_2 are feasible for (IP)
- $>$ otherwise $\sqrt{2} = \frac{x_1}{x_2}$ but $\sqrt{2}$ is not a rational number

Bad News/Good News

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

- IPs can formulate a huge number of practical problems.

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

- IPs can formulate a huge number of practical problems.
- Commercial codes solve many of these problems routinely.

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

- IPs can formulate a huge number of practical problems.
- Commercial codes solve many of these problems routinely.
- Some of the theory developed for LPs extends to IPs.

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

- IPs can formulate a huge number of practical problems.
- Commercial codes solve many of these problems routinely.
- Some of the theory developed for LPs extends to IPs.

This lecture will show:

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

- IPs can formulate a huge number of practical problems.
- Commercial codes solve many of these problems routinely.
- Some of the theory developed for LPs extends to IPs.

This lecture will show:

Integer Programming can, in principle, be reduced to Linear Programming.

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

- IPs can formulate a huge number of practical problems.
- Commercial codes solve many of these problems routinely.
- Some of the theory developed for LPs extends to IPs.

This lecture will show:

Integer Programming can, in principle, be reduced to Linear Programming.

Remark

This will NOT give us a practical procedure to solve IPs,

Bad News/Good News

Bad News:

- IPs are hard to solve.
- Theory for IPs is harder than for LPs.
- Results are not as powefull.

Good News:

- IPs can formulate a huge number of practical problems.
- Commercial codes solve many of these problems routinely.
- Some of the theory developed for LPs extends to IPs.

This lecture will show:

Integer Programming can, in principle, be reduced to Linear Programming.

Remark

This will NOT give us a practical procedure to solve IPs,

but it will suggest a strategy.

Definition

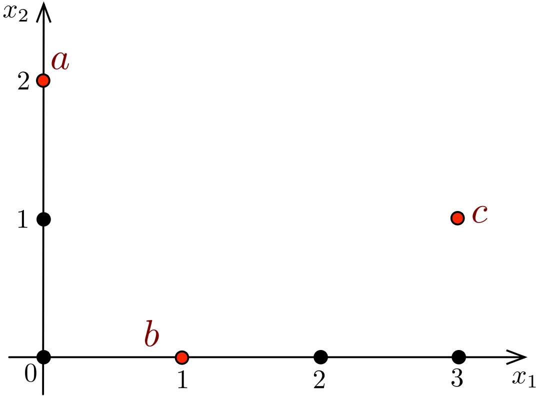
Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.

Definition

Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.

Definition

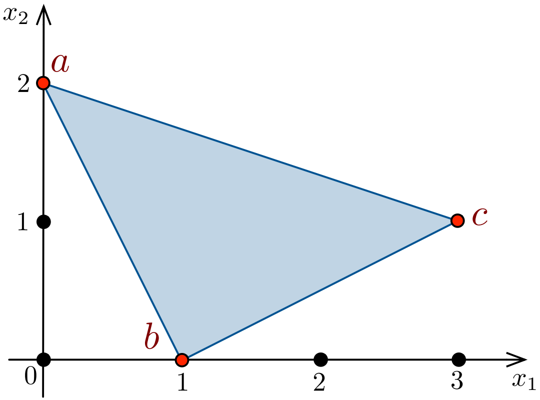
Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.



$C = \{a, b, c\}$

Definition

Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.

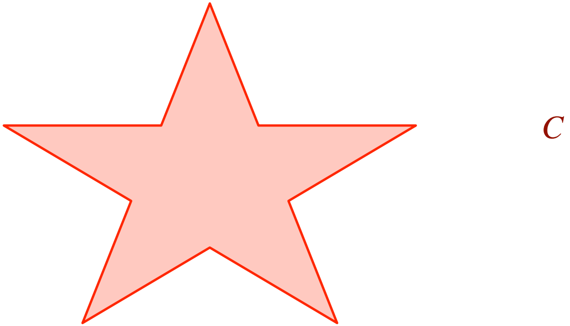


$C = \{a, b, c\}$

Convex hull of C

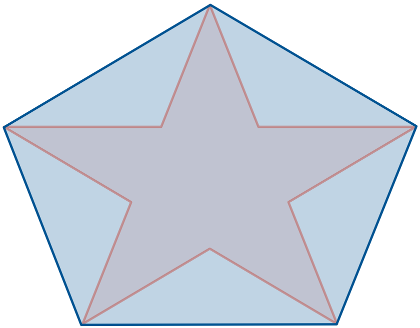
Definition

Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.



Definition

Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.

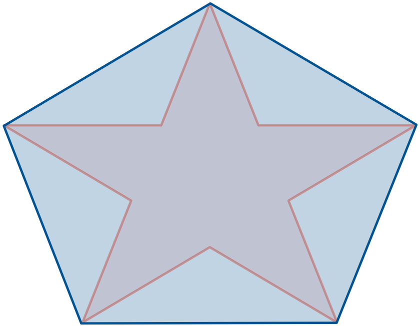


C

Convex hull of C

Definition

Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.

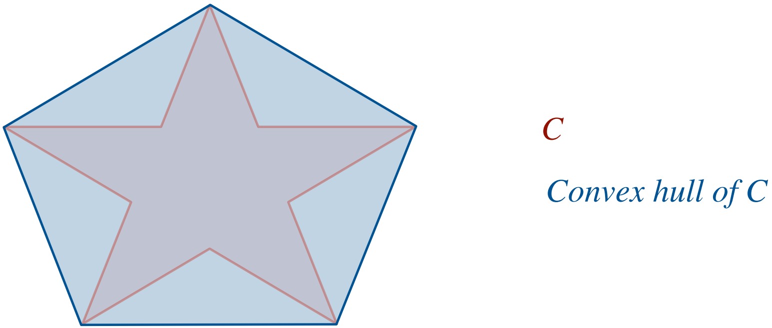


Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C?

Definition

Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.

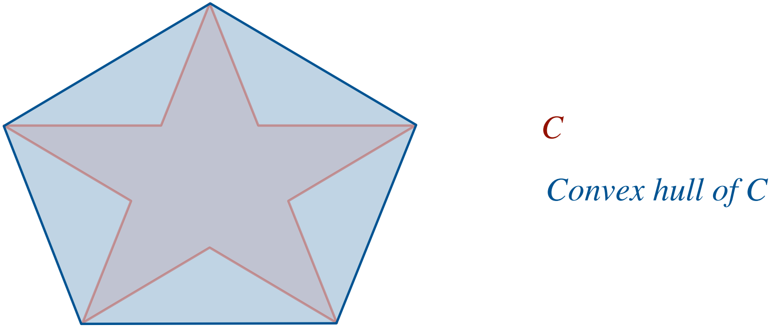


Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

Definition

Let C be a subset of $\Re^n$.
The convex hull of C is the *smallest convex set* that contains C.



Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

➡ The notion of a convex hull is well defined.

Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

Why?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C

Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C

Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$

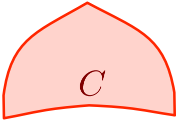
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



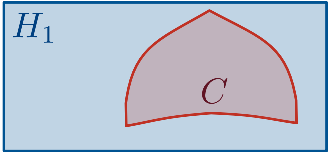
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



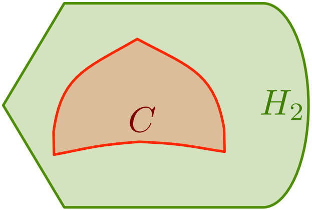
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

Why?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



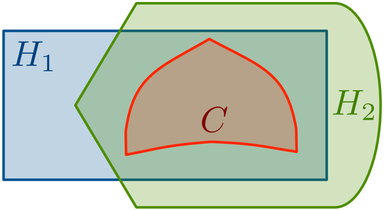
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



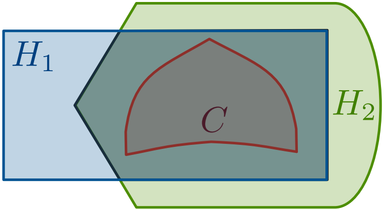
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



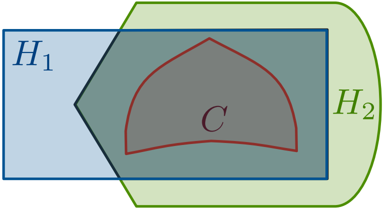
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



$\Rightarrow$

- $C \subseteq H_1 \cap H_2$,

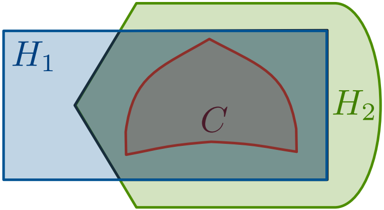
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



$\Rightarrow$

- $C \subseteq H_1 \cap H_2$,
- $H_1 \cap H_2$ is convex

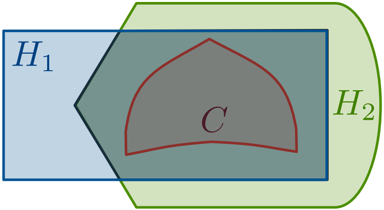
Question

Given $C \subseteq \Re^n$, is there a unique smallest convex set containing C? YES

WHY?

Suppose, for a contradiction, there exists:

- H_1 smallest convex set containing C
- H_2 smallest convex set containing C
- $H_1 \neq H_2$



$\Rightarrow$

- $C \subseteq H_1 \cap H_2$,
- $H_1 \cap H_2$ is convex

However, $H_1 \cap H_2$ is smaller than both H_1 and H_2. This is a contradiction.

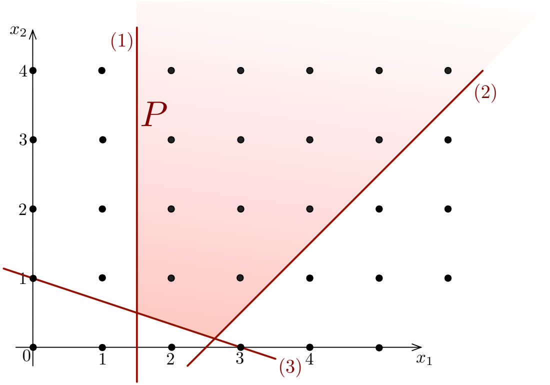
Convex Hulls and Integer Programs

Convex Hulls and Integer Programs

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 5/2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$

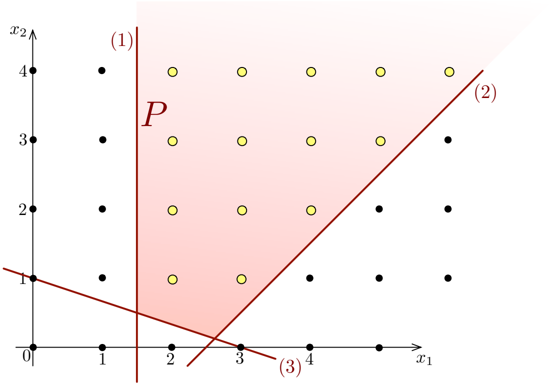
Convex Hulls and Integer Programs

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 5/2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$



Convex Hulls and Integer Programs

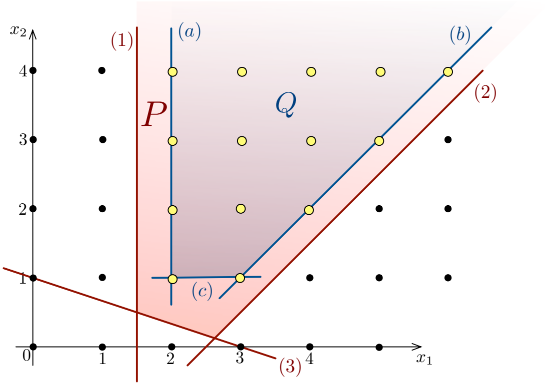
$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 5/2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$



Integer points in P

Convex Hulls and Integer Programs

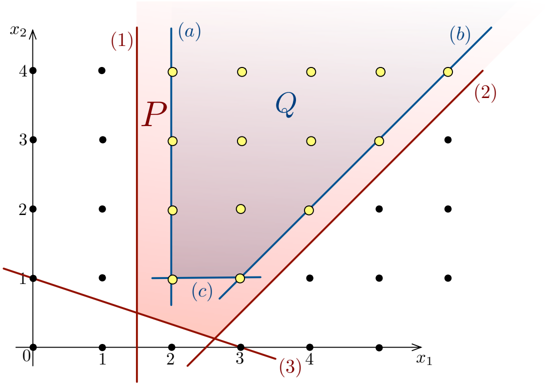
$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 5/2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$



Q convex hull of integer points in P

Convex Hulls and Integer Programs

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 5/2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$

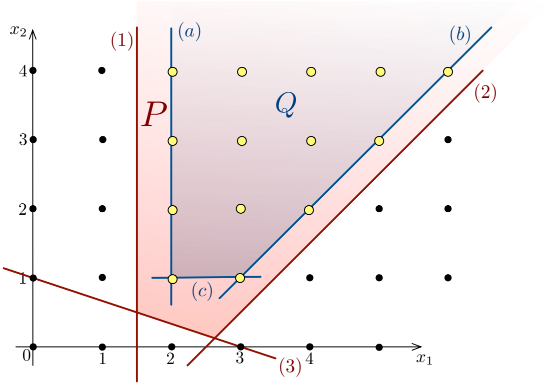


Q convex hull of integer points in P

$$Q = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (a) \\ (b) \\ (c) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$

Convex Hulls and Integer Programs

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 5/2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$



Q convex hull of integer points in P

$$Q = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} \leq \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (a) \\ (b) \\ (c) \end{matrix} \right\}.$$

POLYHEDRON

Meyer's Theorem

Consider $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ where A, b are rational.
Then, the convex hull of all integer points in P is a polyhedron.

Meyer's Theorem

Consider $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ where A, b are rational.
Then, the convex hull of all integer points in P is a polyhedron.

(We'll omit the proof)

Meyer's Theorem

Consider $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ where A, b are rational.
Then, the convex hull of all integer points in P is a polyhedron.

(We'll omit the proof)

Remark

The condition that all entries of A and b are rational numbers cannot be excluded from the hypothesis.

Meyer's Theorem

Consider $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ where A, b are rational.
Then, the convex hull of all integer points in P is a polyhedron.

(We'll omit the proof)

Remark

The condition that all entries of A and b are rational numbers cannot be excluded from the hypothesis.

Example

Consider

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : x_1 \leq \sqrt{2} x_2,\ x_1, x_2 \geq 1 \right\}.$$

Meyer's Theorem

Consider $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ where A, b are rational.
Then, the convex hull of all integer points in P is a polyhedron.

(We'll omit the proof)

Remark

The condition that all entries of A and b are rational numbers cannot be excluded from the hypothesis.

Example

Consider

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : x_1 \leq \sqrt{2} x_2,\ x_1, x_2 \geq 1 \right\}.$$

The convex hull of all integer points in P is NOT a polyhedron.

Meyer's Theorem

Consider $P = \{x : Ax \leq b\}$ where A, b are rational.
Then, the convex hull of all integer points in P is a polyhedron.

(We'll omit the proof)

Remark

The condition that all entries of A and b are rational numbers cannot be excluded from the hypothesis.

Example

Consider

$$P = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} : x_1 \leq \sqrt{2}x_2,\ x_1, x_2 \geq 1 \right\}.$$

The convex hull of all integer points in P is NOT a polyhedron.

<u>Goal</u>: Use Meyer's theorem to reduce the problem of solving *Integer Programs*, to the problem of solving *Linear Program*.

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,
- (IP) is unbounded if and only if (LP) is unbounded,

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \le b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \le b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,
- (IP) is unbounded if and only if (LP) is unbounded,
- an optimal solution to (IP) is an optimal solution to (LP), and

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,
- (IP) is unbounded if and only if (LP) is unbounded,
- an optimal solution to (IP) is an optimal solution to (LP), and
- an extreme optimal solution to (LP) is an optimal solution to (IP).

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,
- (IP) is unbounded if and only if (LP) is unbounded,
- an optimal solution to (IP) is an optimal solution to (LP), and
- an extreme optimal solution to (LP) is an optimal solution to (IP).

(We'll omit the proofs)

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,
- (IP) is unbounded if and only if (LP) is unbounded,
- an optimal solution to (IP) is an optimal solution to (LP), and
- an extreme optimal solution to (LP) is an optimal solution to (IP).

(We'll omit the proofs)

Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \le b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \le b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,
- (IP) is unbounded if and only if (LP) is unbounded,
- an optimal solution to (IP) is an optimal solution to (LP), and
- an extreme optimal solution to (LP) is an optimal solution to (IP).

(We'll omit the proofs)

Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Step 1. Compute A', b'.

Let A, b be rational.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\}. \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible sol. of (IP) is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Theorem

- (IP) is infeasible if and only if (LP) is infeasible,
- (IP) is unbounded if and only if (LP) is unbounded,
- an optimal solution to (IP) is an optimal solution to (LP), and
- an extreme optimal solution to (LP) is an optimal solution to (IP).

(We'll omit the proofs)

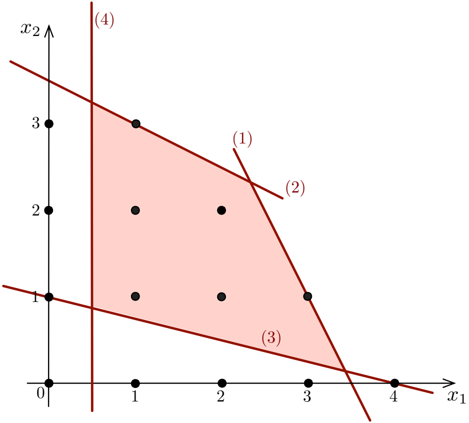
Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Step 1. Compute A', b'.

Step 2. Use Simplex to find an extreme optimal solution to (LP).

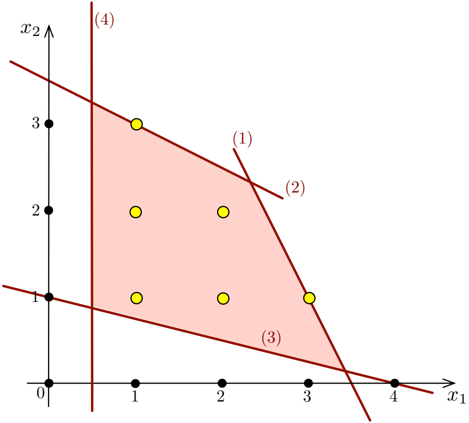
$$\max\left\{ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ -1 & -4 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 7 \\ -4 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \\ (4) \end{matrix} \qquad x \text{ integer} \right\} \tag{IP}$$

$$\max \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ -1 & -4 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 7 \\ -4 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \\ (4) \end{matrix} \quad x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



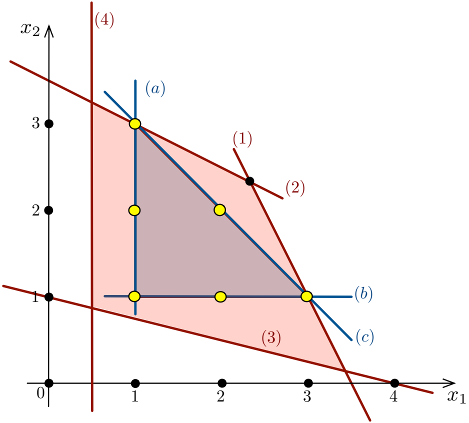
Feasible region of the LP relaxation of (IP)

$$\max\left\{ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ -1 & -4 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 7 \\ -4 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \\ (4) \end{matrix} \quad x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



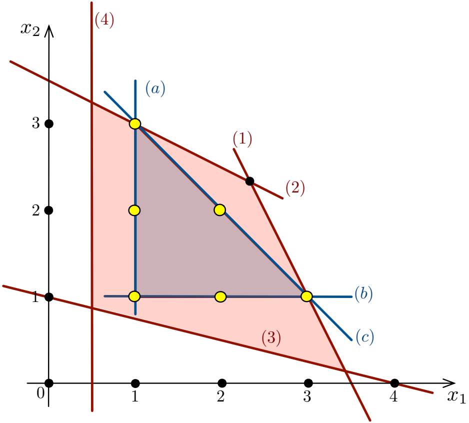
The feasible region of (IP)

$$\max \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x : \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ -1 & -4 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 7 \\ -4 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \\ (4) \end{matrix} \quad x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



The convex hull of the feasible region of (IP)

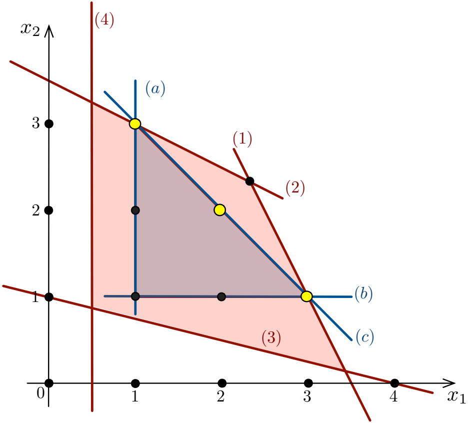
$$\max\left\{ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ -1 & -4 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 7 \\ -4 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \\ (4) \end{matrix} \quad x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



The convex hull of the feasible region of (IP)

$$\max\left\{ \begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (a) \\ (b) \\ (c) \end{matrix} \right\} \qquad \text{(LP)}$$

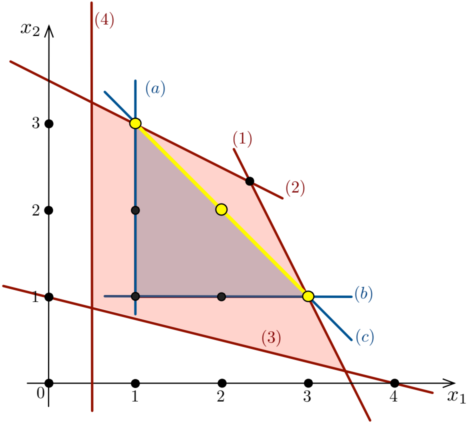
$$\max\left\{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix}2 & 1\\ 1 & 2\\ -1 & -4\\ -1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}7\\ 7\\ -4\\ -\frac{1}{2}\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(1)\\(2)\\(3)\\(4)\end{matrix} \quad x \text{ integer}\right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



Optimal solutions of (IP)

$$\max\left\{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0\\ 0 & -1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}-1\\ -1\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(a)\\(b)\\(c)\end{matrix}\right\} \qquad \text{(LP)}$$

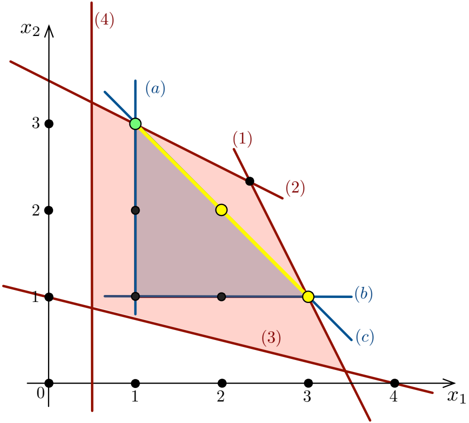
$$\max\left\{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix}2 & 1\\ 1 & 2\\ -1 & -4\\ -1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}7\\ 7\\ -4\\ -\frac{1}{2}\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(1)\\(2)\\(3)\\(4)\end{matrix} \quad x \text{ integer}\right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



Optimal solutions of (LP)

$$\max\left\{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x : \begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0\\ 0 & -1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}-1\\ -1\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(a)\\(b)\\(c)\end{matrix} \right\} \qquad \text{(LP)}$$

$$\max\left\{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix}x : \begin{pmatrix}2 & 1\\ 1 & 2\\ -1 & -4\\ -1 & 0\end{pmatrix}x \le \begin{pmatrix}7\\ 7\\ -4\\ -\frac{1}{2}\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(1)\\(2)\\(3)\\(4)\end{matrix} \quad x \text{ integer}\right\} \tag{IP}$$



Extreme optimal solution of (LP)

$$\max\left\{\begin{pmatrix}1 & 1\end{pmatrix}x : \begin{pmatrix}-1 & 0\\ 0 & -1\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix}x \le \begin{pmatrix}-1\\ -1\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(a)\\(b)\\(c)\end{matrix}\right\} \tag{LP}$$

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\} \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible region is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Step 1. Compute A', b'.

Step 2. Use Simplex to find an extreme optimal solution.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\} \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible region is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Step 1. Compute A', b'.

Step 2. Use Simplex to find an extreme optimal solution.

Remark

This is NOT a practical way to solve an Integer Program.

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer}\} \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible region is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \le b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \le b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Step 1. Compute A', b'.

Step 2. Use Simplex to find an extreme optimal solution.

Remark

This is NOT a practical way to solve an Integer Program.

WHY NOT?

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer}\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$

The convex hull of the feasible region is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \leq b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \leq b'\} \qquad \text{(LP)}$$

Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Step 1. Compute A', b'.

Step 2. Use Simplex to find an extreme optimal solution.

Remark

This is NOT a practical way to solve an Integer Program.

WHY NOT?

- We do not know how to compute A', b', and

$$\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer}\} \tag{IP}$$

The convex hull of the feasible region is a polyhedron $\{x : A'x \le b'\}$.

$$\max\{c^\top x : A'x \le b'\} \tag{LP}$$

Conceptual way of solving (IP):

Step 1. Compute A', b'.

Step 2. Use Simplex to find an extreme optimal solution.

Remark

This is NOT a practical way to solve an Integer Program.

WHY NOT?

- We do not know how to compute A', b', and
- A', b' can be MUCH more complicated than A, b.

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Recap

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Recap

- Integer Programs are much harder to solve than Linear Programs.

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Recap

- Integer Programs are much harder to solve than Linear Programs.
- Linear Programming theory does not extend to Integer Programs.

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Recap

- Integer Programs are much harder to solve than Linear Programs.
- Linear Programming theory does not extend to Integer Programs.
- We defined the notion of convex hulls.

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Recap

- Integer Programs are much harder to solve than Linear Programs.
- Linear Programming theory does not extend to Integer Programs.
- We defined the notion of convex hulls.
- The convex hull of the integer points in a rational polyhedron is a polyhedron.

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Recap

- Integer Programs are much harder to solve than Linear Programs.
- Linear Programming theory does not extend to Integer Programs.
- We defined the notion of convex hulls.
- The convex hull of the integer points in a rational polyhedron is a polyhedron.
- Integer programming reduces to Linear programming,

Question

How do we fix these problems?

Idea

Construct an approximation of the convex hull of the solutions of (IP).

Recap

- Integer Programs are much harder to solve than Linear Programs.
- Linear Programming theory does not extend to Integer Programs.
- We defined the notion of convex hulls.
- The convex hull of the integer points in a rational polyhedron is a polyhedron.
- Integer programming reduces to Linear programming,
  but it is NOT a practical reduction.

Module 5: Integer Programs (Cutting Planes)

Overview

In this lecture, we will:

Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Overview

In this lecture, we will:

Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

Overview

In this lecture, we will:

Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

OUR FIRST INTEGER PROGRAM:

Overview

In this lecture, we will:

Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

OUR FIRST INTEGER PROGRAM:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s. t.}\ & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix} \\
& x \ge \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$

Overview

In this lecture, we will:

Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

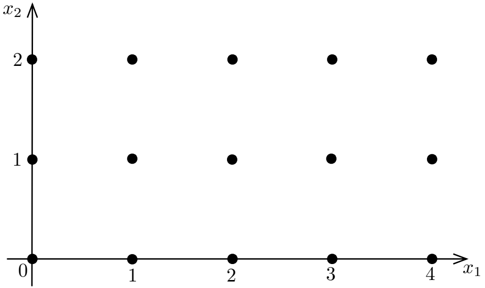
OUR FIRST INTEGER PROGRAM:

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}, \ x \text{ integer}$$



Overview

In this lecture, we will:

Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

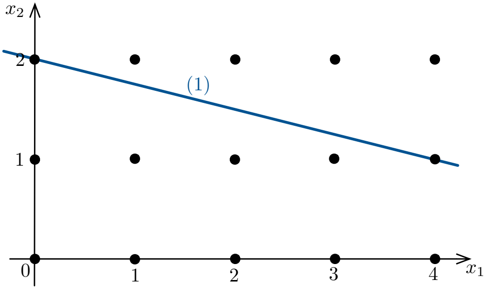
OUR FIRST INTEGER PROGRAM:

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}$$



Overview

In this lecture, we will:

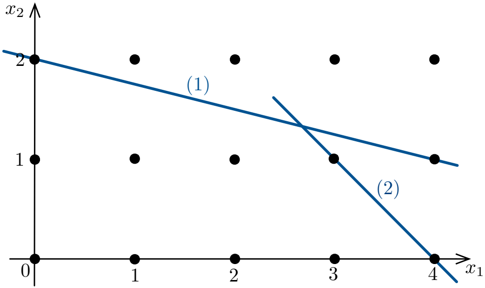
Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

Our First Integer Program:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s. t.}\ & \\
& \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1)\\(2)\end{matrix}\\
& x \ge \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$



Overview

In this lecture, we will:

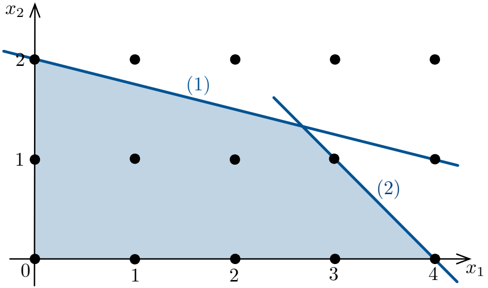
Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

OUR FIRST INTEGER PROGRAM:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\max \ \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix} \\
&\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}, \ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}$$



Overview

In this lecture, we will:

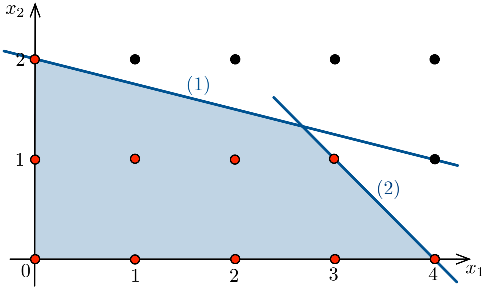
Investigate a class of algorithms known as cutting planes.

Remark

We restrict ourselves to pure Integer Programs.

Our First Integer Program:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\max\ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}8 \\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1) \\ (2)\end{matrix} \\
&\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}$$

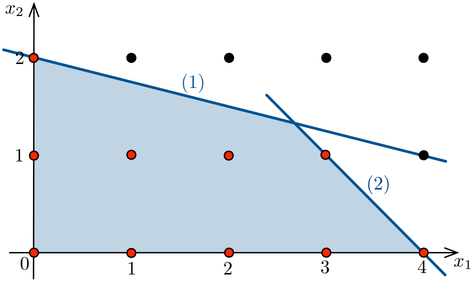


$$\max \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 4\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1)\\ (2)\end{matrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}$$

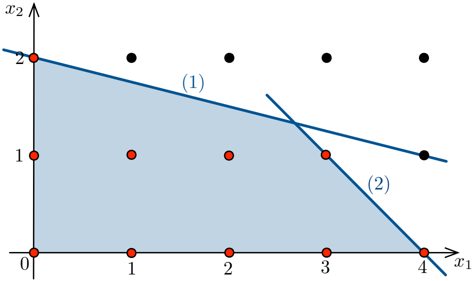


$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \ge \mathbf{0}, \; x \text{ integer}$$



Idea

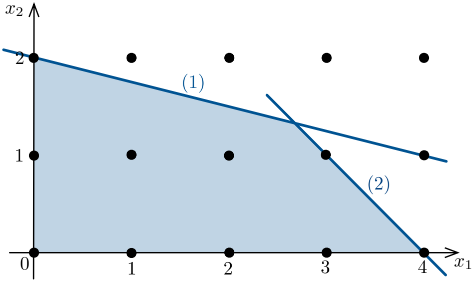
Solve the LP relaxation instead of the original IP.

$$\max \; \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$



Idea

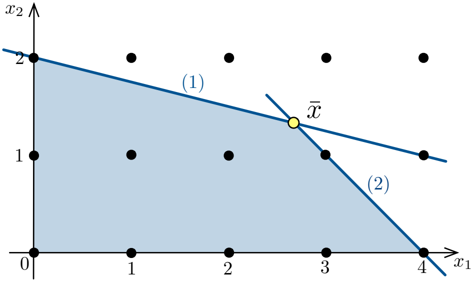
Solve the LP relaxation instead of the original IP.

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$



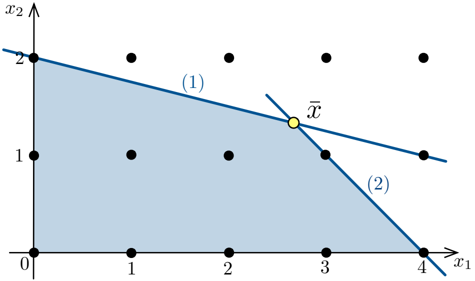
Using Simplex, we find that $\bar{x} = \left(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3}\right)^\top$ is optimal.

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

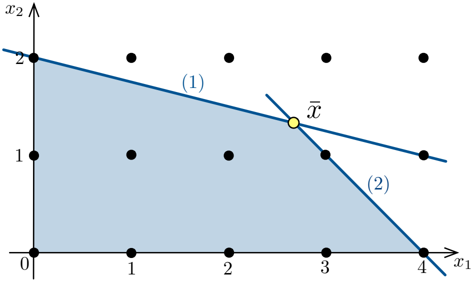
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$



Using Simplex, we find that $\bar{x} = \left(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3}\right)^\top$ is optimal. Not integer!

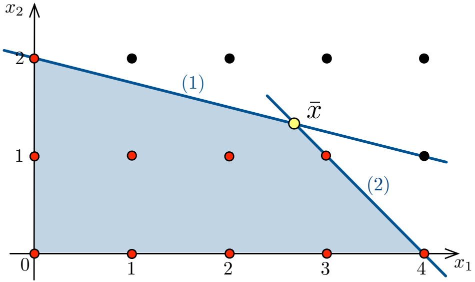
$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$
s. t.
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$
$$x \ge \mathbf{0}$$



Using Simplex, we find that $\bar{x} = \left(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3}\right)^\top$ is optimal. Not integer!

We now search for a constraint $\alpha^\top x \le \beta$ that

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$
s. t.
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$
$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

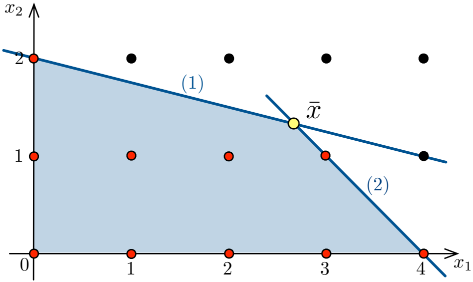


Using Simplex, we find that $\bar{x} = \left(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3}\right)^\top$ is optimal. Not integer!

We now search for a constraint $\alpha^\top x \leq \beta$ that

- is satisfied for all feasible solutions to the IP, and

$$\begin{aligned} &\max \ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x \\ &\text{s. t.} \\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}8 \\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1) \\ (2)\end{matrix} \\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

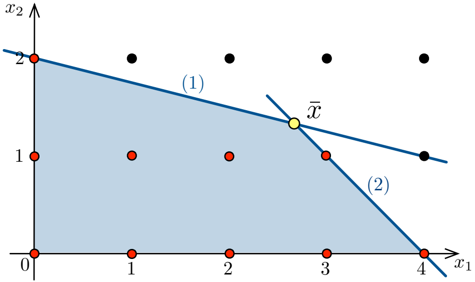


Using Simplex, we find that $\bar{x} = \left(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3}\right)^\top$ is optimal. Not integer!

We now search for a constraint $\alpha^\top x \leq \beta$ that

- is satisfied for all feasible solutions to the IP, and
- is not satisfied for $\bar{x}$.

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$
s. t.
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$
$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$



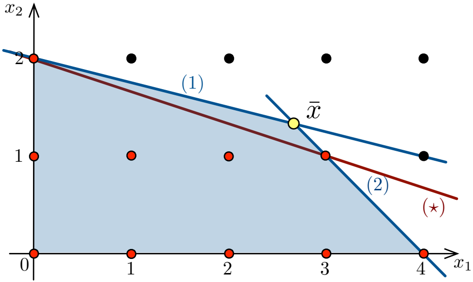
Using Simplex, we find that $\bar{x} = \left(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3}\right)^\top$ is optimal. NOT INTEGER!

We now search for a constraint $\alpha^\top x \leq \beta$ that

- is satisfied for all feasible solutions to the IP, and
- is not satisfied for $\bar{x}$.

We will call this constraint a cutting plane for $\bar{x}$.

$$\max \; \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$
s. t.
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$
$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$



Using Simplex, we find that $\bar{x} = \left(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3}\right)^\top$ is optimal. NOT INTEGER!

We now search for a constraint $\alpha^\top x \leq \beta$ that

- is satisfied for all feasible solutions to the IP, and
- is not satisfied for $\bar{x}$.

We will call this constraint a cutting plane for $\bar{x}$.

Example:

$$x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 6. \qquad (\star)$$

After adding $(\star)$ to our relaxation, we get

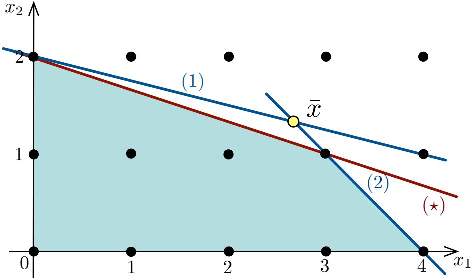
After adding ($\star$) to our relaxation, we get

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

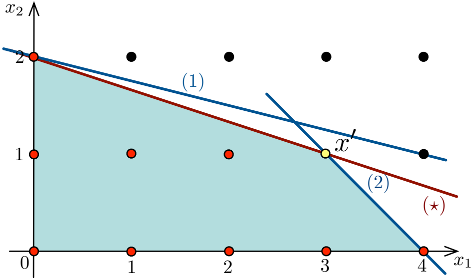
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \ge \mathbf{0}$$



After adding $(\star)$ to our relaxation, we get

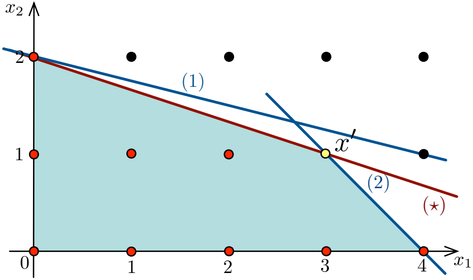
$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s. t.}\ & \\
& \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}8 \\ 4 \\ 6\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(1) \\ (2) \\ (3)\end{matrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}
$$



Using Simplex, we get: $x' = (3, 1)^\top$ is optimal.

After adding $(\star)$ to our relaxation, we get

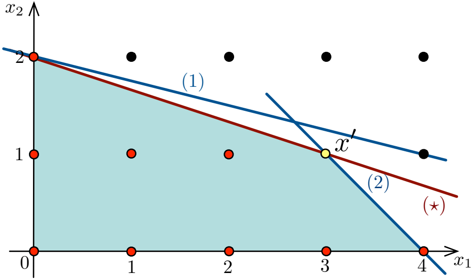
$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max \ \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{matrix} \\
&\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}
$$



Using Simplex, we get: $x' = (3, 1)^\top$ is optimal. INTEGER!

After adding $(\star)$ to our relaxation, we get

$$\max \ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x$$
s. t.
$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}8 \\ 4 \\ 6\end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{matrix}(1)\\(2)\\(3)\end{matrix}$$
$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

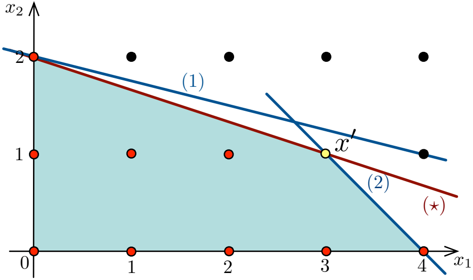


Using Simplex, we get: $x' = (3, 1)^\top$ is optimal. INTEGER!

Since x' is optimal for the IP relaxation, x' is also optimal for the IP!

After adding $(\star)$ to our relaxation, we get

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \ \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{array}{c} (1) \\ (2) \\ (3) \end{array} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$



Using Simplex, we get: $x' = (3, 1)^\top$ is optimal. INTEGER!

Since x' is optimal for the IP relaxation, x' is also optimal for the IP!

We have now solved our first IP.

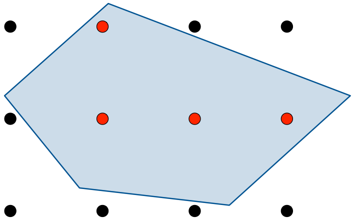
Cutting Plane Scheme

Cutting Plane Scheme

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$

Cutting Plane Scheme

$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



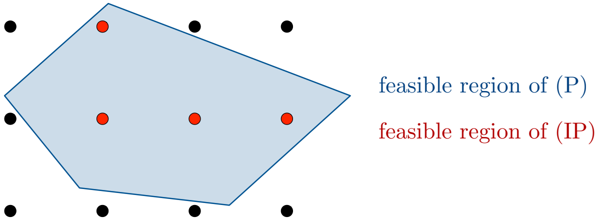
feasible region of (P)

feasible region of (IP)

- Let (P) denote $\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b\}$.

Cutting Plane Scheme

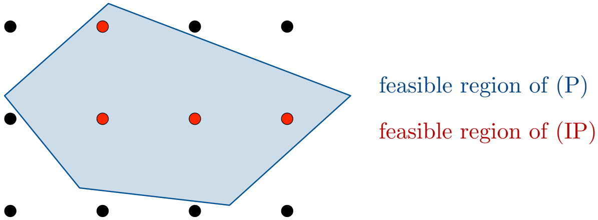
$$\max \left\{c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer}\right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



- Let (P) denote $\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b\}$.
- If (P) is infeasible, then STOP. (IP) is also infeasible.

Cutting Plane Scheme

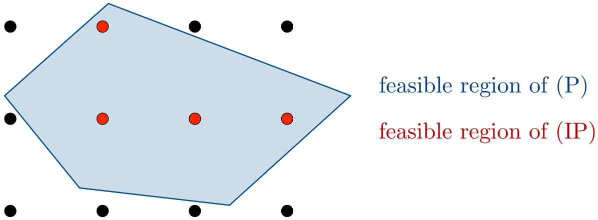
$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer}\right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



- Let (P) denote $\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b\}$.
- If (P) is infeasible, then STOP. (IP) is also infeasible.
- Let $\bar{x}$ be the optimal solution to (P).

Cutting Plane Scheme

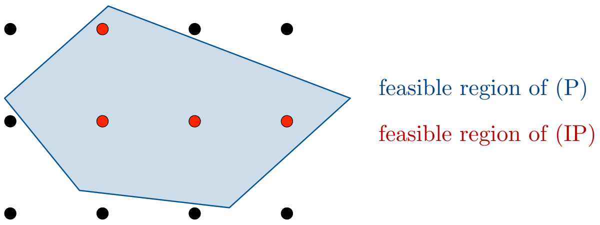
$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax \leq b, x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



- Let (P) denote $\max\{c^\top x : Ax \leq b\}$.
- If (P) is infeasible, then STOP. (IP) is also infeasible.
- Let $\bar{x}$ be the optimal solution to (P).
- If $\bar{x}$ is integral, then STOP. $\bar{x}$ is also optimal for (IP).

Cutting Plane Scheme

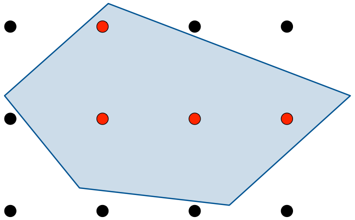
$$\max \left\{ c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer} \right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



- Let (P) denote $\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b\}$.
- If (P) is infeasible, then STOP. (IP) is also infeasible.
- Let $\bar{x}$ be the optimal solution to (P).
- If $\bar{x}$ is integral, then STOP. $\bar{x}$ is also optimal for (IP).
- Find a cutting plane $a^\top x \le \beta$ for $\bar{x}$.

Cutting Plane Scheme

$$\max\left\{c^\top x : Ax \le b, x \text{ integer}\right\} \qquad \text{(IP)}$$



feasible region of (P)

feasible region of (IP)

- Let (P) denote $\max\{c^\top x : Ax \le b\}$.
- If (P) is infeasible, then STOP. (IP) is also infeasible.
- Let $\bar{x}$ be the optimal solution to (P).
- If $\bar{x}$ is integral, then STOP. $\bar{x}$ is also optimal for (IP).
- Find a cutting plane $a^\top x \le \beta$ for $\bar{x}$.
- Add constraint $a^\top x \le \beta$ to the system $Ax \le b$.

Question

How can we find cutting planes?

Question

How can we find cutting planes?

SIMPLEX DOES THIS FOR US!

Question

How can we find cutting planes?

Simplex does this for us!

Definition

Let $a \in \Re$, then the floor of a, denoted $\lfloor a \rfloor$, is the largest integer $\leq a$.

Question

How can we find cutting planes?

SIMPLEX DOES THIS FOR US!

Definition

Let $a \in \Re$, then the floor of a, denoted $\lfloor a \rfloor$, is the largest integer $\leq a$.

Example

Question

How can we find cutting planes?

Simplex does this for us!

Definition

Let $a \in \Re$, then the floor of a, denoted $\lfloor a \rfloor$, is the largest integer $\leq a$.

Example

$$\lfloor 3.7 \rfloor \quad = \quad 3$$

Question

How can we find cutting planes?

SIMPLEX DOES THIS FOR US!

Definition

Let $a \in \Re$, then the floor of a, denoted $\lfloor a \rfloor$, is the largest integer $\leq a$.

Example

$$\begin{aligned} \lfloor 3.7 \rfloor &= 3 \\ \lfloor 62 \rfloor &= 62 \end{aligned}$$

Question

How can we find cutting planes?

SIMPLEX DOES THIS FOR US!

Definition

Let $a \in \Re$, then the floor of a, denoted $\lfloor a \rfloor$, is the largest integer $\leq a$.

Example

$$\begin{aligned} \lfloor 3.7 \rfloor &= 3 \\ \lfloor 62 \rfloor &= 62 \\ \lfloor -2.1 \rfloor &= -3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}, \ x \text{ integer}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \; \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{array}{c} (1) \\ (2) \end{array} \\ \qquad x \ge \mathbf{0},\; x \text{ integer} \end{array}}$$

Add a slack variable, $x_3 \ge 0$, and rewrite (1) as

$$x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 = 8.$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max \ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \leq \begin{pmatrix}8 \\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1) \\ (2)\end{matrix} \\
&\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$

Add a slack variable, $x_3 \geq 0$, and rewrite (1) as

$$x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 = 8.$$

Add another slack variable, $x_4 \geq 0$, and rewrite (2) as

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_4 = 4.$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max \ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}8 \\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1) \\ (2)\end{matrix} \\
&\qquad x \ge \mathbf{0}, \ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$

Add a slack variable, $x_3 \ge 0$, and rewrite (1) as

$$x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 = 8.$$

Add another slack variable, $x_4 \ge 0$, and rewrite (2) as

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_4 = 4.$$

Since x_1, x_2 are integers, $x_3 = 8 - x_1 - 4x_2$ and $x_4 = 4 - x_1 - x_2$ are integers.

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max\ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x \le \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1)\\ (2)\end{matrix} \\
&\qquad x \ge \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$

Add a slack variable, $x_3 \ge 0$, and rewrite (1) as

$$x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 = 8.$$

Add another slack variable, $x_4 \ge 0$, and rewrite (2) as

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_4 = 4.$$

Since x_1, x_2 are integers, $x_3 = 8 - x_1 - 4x_2$ and $x_4 = 4 - x_1 - x_2$ are integers.

Thus, we can rewrite the IP as

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max\ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \\
&\qquad x \ge \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$

Solving the IP

$$\max \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0},\ x \text{ integer}$$

Solving the IP

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \ & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s. t.} \ & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}, \ x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}
$$

We will now relax the integer program.

Solving the IP

$$\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

Solving the IP

$$\max \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

We will use the Simplex algorithm to solve this.

Solving the IP

$$\max \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5 & 0 & 0\end{pmatrix} x$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & 4 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

We will use the Simplex algorithm to solve this.

Get an optimal basis $B = \{1, 2\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

Solving the IP

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s. t.}\ & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

We will use the Simplex algorithm to solve this.

Get an optimal basis $B = \{1, 2\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$\begin{aligned} \max\ & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.}\ & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

Solving the IP

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\
&\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

We will use the Simplex algorithm to solve this.

Get an optimal basis $B = \{1, 2\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\max \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
&\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Solving the IP

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

We will use the Simplex algorithm to solve this.

Get an optimal basis $B = \{1, 2\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$. NOT INTEGER

Solving the IP

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \ \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

We will use the Simplex algorithm to solve this.

Get an optimal basis $B = \{1, 2\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$. Not integer

Let us use the canonical form to get a cutting plane for $\bar{x}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max\ & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.}\ & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \; & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} \; & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies,

$$x_1 - \frac{1}{3}x_3 + \frac{4}{3}x_4 = \frac{8}{3}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies,

$$x_1 - \frac{1}{3}x_3 + \frac{4}{3}x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \quad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies,

$$x_1 - \frac{1}{3}x_3 + \frac{4}{3}x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$x_1 + \left\lfloor -\frac{1}{3} \right\rfloor x_3 + \left\lfloor \frac{4}{3} \right\rfloor x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies,

$$x_1 - \frac{1}{3}x_3 + \frac{4}{3}x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$x_1 + \left\lfloor -\frac{1}{3} \right\rfloor x_3 + \left\lfloor \frac{4}{3} \right\rfloor x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \max \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies,

$$x_1 - \frac{1}{3}x_3 + \frac{4}{3}x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$x_1 + \left\lfloor -\frac{1}{3} \right\rfloor x_3 + \left\lfloor \frac{4}{3} \right\rfloor x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}$$

For every feasible solution to the IP, $x_1 - x_3 + x_4$ is integer.

$$
\boxed{
\begin{array}{l}
\max \; \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} \\
\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies,

$$
x_1 - \frac{1}{3} x_3 + \frac{4}{3} x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}
$$

$$
x_1 + \left\lfloor -\frac{1}{3} \right\rfloor x_3 + \left\lfloor \frac{4}{3} \right\rfloor x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}
$$

$$
x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq \frac{8}{3}
$$

For every feasible solution to the IP, $x_1 - x_3 + x_4$ is integer.

Hence, every feasible solution to the IP satisfies

$$
x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq \left\lfloor \frac{8}{3} \right\rfloor = 2
$$

$$
\begin{array}{l}
\max \ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} \\
\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the IP satisfies

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq 2 \tag{$\star$}$$

$$
\begin{array}{|l|}
\hline
\max \ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} \\
\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the IP satisfies

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq 2 \tag{$\star$}$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy ($\star$) as

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & -1 & -1\end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the IP satisfies

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq 2 \tag{$\star$}$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy ($\star$) as

$$\underbrace{x_1}_{8/3} - \underbrace{x_3}_{0} + \underbrace{x_4}_{0} = \frac{8}{3} > 2$$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the IP satisfies

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq 2 \qquad (\star)$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy $(\star)$ as

$$\underbrace{x_1}_{8/3} - \underbrace{x_3}_{0} + \underbrace{x_4}_{0} = \frac{8}{3} > 2$$

$\Rightarrow$ $(\star)$ is a cutting plane for $\bar{x}$.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the IP satisfies

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq 2 \tag{$\star$}$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy $(\star)$ as

$$\underbrace{x_1}_{8/3} - \underbrace{x_3}_{0} + \underbrace{x_4}_{0} = \frac{8}{3} > 2$$

$\Rightarrow$ $(\star)$ is a cutting plane for $\bar{x}$.

We can rewrite $(\star)$ as

$$x_1 - x_3 + x_4 + x_5 = 2 \qquad \text{where} \qquad x_5 \geq 0.$$

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{l}
\max \; \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} \\
\qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \end{pmatrix} \\
\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}}
$$

The basic solution is $\bar{x} = (8/3, 4/3, 0, 0)^\top$.

Every feasible solution to the IP satisfies

$$
x_1 - x_3 + x_4 \leq 2 \tag{$\star$}
$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy ($\star$) as

$$
\underbrace{x_1}_{8/3} - \underbrace{x_3}_{0} + \underbrace{x_4}_{0} = \frac{8}{3} > 2
$$

$\Rightarrow$ ($\star$) is a cutting plane for $\bar{x}$.

We can rewrite ($\star$) as

$$
x_1 - x_3 + x_4 + x_5 = 2 \qquad \text{where} \qquad x_5 \geq 0.
$$

We now add this to the relaxation.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} \quad & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

Solve this using the Simplex algorithm.

$$\max \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 12$$

s. t.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x \geq \mathbf{0}$$

Solve this using the Simplex algorithm.

Get optimal basis $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$\begin{array}{ll}\max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2\end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0}\end{array}$$

Solve this using the Simplex algorithm.

Get optimal basis $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$\begin{array}{ll}\max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2}\end{pmatrix} x + 11 \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 0 & 3/2 & -1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 & -3/2\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}3 \\ 1 \\ 1\end{pmatrix} \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0}\end{array}$$

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2\end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

Solve this using the Simplex algorithm.

Get optimal basis $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2}\end{pmatrix} x + 11 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & 0 & 3/2 & -1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 & -3/2\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}3 \\ 1 \\ 1\end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

The basic optimal solution is $x' = (3, 1, 1, 0, 0)^\top$.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

Solve this using the Simplex algorithm.

Get optimal basis $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2}\end{pmatrix} x + 11 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 3/2 & -1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 & -3/2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

The basic optimal solution is $x' = (3, 1, 1, 0, 0)^\top$. INTEGER!

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

Solve this using the Simplex algorithm.

Get optimal basis $B = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and rewrite in canonical form for B:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} x + 11 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 3/2 & -1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1/2 & 1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1/2 & -3/2 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{array}
$$

The basic optimal solution is $x' = (3, 1, 1, 0, 0)^\top$. INTEGER!

Since x' is optimal for the IP relaxation, x' is also optimal for the IP!

$(3,1,1,0,0)^\top$ is optimal for

$$\begin{aligned}
\max\ & \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.}\ & \\
& \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2\end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}, \quad x \text{ integer}
\end{aligned}$$

$(3,1,1,0,0)^\top$ is optimal for

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} x + 12 \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8/3 \\ 4/3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}, \quad x \text{ integer}
\end{array}
$$

$(3,1)^\top$ is optimal for

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 5 \end{pmatrix} x \\
\text{s. t.} & \\
& \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix} (1) \\ (2) \end{matrix} \\
& x \geq \mathbf{0}, \ x \text{ integer}
\end{array}
$$

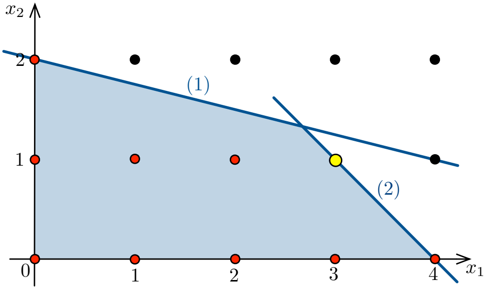
$(3,1,1,0,0)^\top$ is optimal for

$$\begin{aligned}&\max\ \begin{pmatrix}0 & 0 & -1 & -1 & 0\end{pmatrix} x + 12\\ &\text{s. t.}\\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 0 & -1/3 & 4/3 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 1/3 & -1/3 & 0\\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8/3\\ 4/3\\ 2\end{pmatrix}\\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0},\quad x \text{ integer}\end{aligned}$$

$\Rightarrow$

$(3,1)^\top$ is optimal for

$$\begin{aligned}&\max\ \begin{pmatrix}2 & 5\end{pmatrix} x\\ &\text{s. t.}\\ &\qquad \begin{pmatrix}1 & 4\\ 1 & 1\end{pmatrix} x = \begin{pmatrix}8\\ 4\end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{matrix}(1)\\ (2)\end{matrix}\\ &\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0},\quad x \text{ integer}\end{aligned}$$



Getting Cutting Planes in General

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$
\boxed{\begin{aligned}
&\max \quad \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\
&\text{s. t.} \\
&\qquad x_B + A_N x_N = b \\
&\qquad x \geq \mathbf{0}
\end{aligned}}
$$

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$$

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER.

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} \quad & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

We know that every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} A_{ij} x_j = b_i.$$

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \max \quad & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} \quad & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

We know that every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} A_{ij} x_j \leq b_i.$$

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

We know that every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} A_{ij} x_j \leq b_i. \quad \Longrightarrow \quad x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq b_i.$$

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable.

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} A_{ij} x_j \leq b_i. \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j}_{\text{integer for all } x \text{ integer}} \leq b_i.$$

Getting Cutting Planes in General

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable.

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to the LP relaxation satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} A_{ij} x_j \leq b_i. \quad \Longrightarrow \quad \underbrace{x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j}_{\text{integer for all } x \text{ integer}} \leq b_i.$$

Hence, every feasible solution to IP satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq \lfloor b_i \rfloor$$

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to IP satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq \lfloor b \rfloor \qquad (\star)$$

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to IP satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq \lfloor b \rfloor \qquad (\star)$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy $(\star)$ as

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to IP satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq \lfloor b \rfloor \qquad (\star)$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy ($\star$) as

$$\underbrace{x_{r(i)}}_{b_i} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor \underbrace{x_j}_{=0}$$

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to IP satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq \lfloor b \rfloor \qquad (\star)$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy ($\star$) as

$$\underbrace{x_{r(i)}}_{b_i} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor \underbrace{x_j}_{=0} = b_i$$

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \max \quad \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} \\ \qquad x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ \qquad x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to IP satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq \lfloor b \rfloor \tag{$\star$}$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy ($\star$) as

$$\underbrace{x_{r(i)}}_{b_i} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor \underbrace{x_j}_{=0} = b_i > \lfloor b_i \rfloor .$$

Solve the relaxation and get the LP in a canonical form for B.

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & \bar{c}^\top x + \bar{z} \\ \text{s. t.} & \\ & x_B + A_N x_N = b \\ & x \geq \mathbf{0} \end{array}}$$

$N = \{j : j \notin B\}$

$\bar{x}$ basic ($\bar{x}_N = \mathbf{0}, \bar{x}_B = b$)

$r(i)$ index of i^{th} basic variable

Suppose $\bar{x}$ is NOT INTEGER. Then, b_i is fractional for some value i.

Every feasible solution to IP satisfies

$$x_{r(i)} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor x_j \leq \lfloor b \rfloor \qquad (\star)$$

However, $\bar{x}$ does not satisfy $(\star)$ as

$$\underbrace{x_{r(i)}}_{b_i} + \sum_{j \in N} \lfloor A_{ij} \rfloor \underbrace{x_j}_{=0} = b_i > \lfloor b_i \rfloor .$$

$\Rightarrow$ $(\star)$ is a cutting plane for $\bar{x}$.

The Good and the Bad

The Good and the Bad

THE GOOD NEWS:

- The Simplex based cutting plane algorithm eventually will terminate.

The Good and the Bad

The Good News:

- The Simplex based cutting plane algorithm eventually will terminate.

The Bad News

- If implemented in this way, it will be terribly slow.

The Good and the Bad

THE GOOD NEWS:

- The Simplex based cutting plane algorithm eventually will terminate.

THE BAD NEWS

- If implemented in this way, it will be terribly slow.

WAYS WE CAN IMPROVE THE ALGORITHM

The Good and the Bad

The Good News:

- The Simplex based cutting plane algorithm eventually will terminate.

The Bad News

- If implemented in this way, it will be terribly slow.

Ways we can Improve the Algorithm

- Do not use the 2-phase Simplex to reoptimize; work with the dual.

The Good and the Bad

The Good News:

- The Simplex based cutting plane algorithm eventually will terminate.

The Bad News

- If implemented in this way, it will be terribly slow.

Ways we can Improve the Algorithm

- Do not use the 2-phase Simplex to reoptimize; work with the dual.
- Add more than one cutting plane at at time.

The Good and the Bad

The Good News:

- The Simplex based cutting plane algorithm eventually will terminate.

The Bad News

- If implemented in this way, it will be terribly slow.

Ways we can Improve the Algorithm

- Do not use the 2-phase Simplex to reoptimize; work with the dual.
- Add more than one cutting plane at at time.
- Combine it with a divide and conquer strategy (branch and bound).

Recap

Recap

- We solve the LP relaxation of an integer program and get a solution;

Recap

- We solve the LP relaxation of an integer program and get a solution;
- If the solution is integer, it is optimal for the integer program;

Recap

- We solve the LP relaxation of an integer program and get a solution;
- If the solution is integer, it is optimal for the integer program;
- Otherwise, we add a cutting plane.

Recap

- We solve the LP relaxation of an integer program and get a solution;
- If the solution is integer, it is optimal for the integer program;
- Otherwise, we add a cutting plane.
- Cutting planes can be obtained from the final canonical form.

Recap

- We solve the LP relaxation of an integer program and get a solution;
- If the solution is integer, it is optimal for the integer program;
- Otherwise, we add a cutting plane.
- Cutting planes can be obtained from the final canonical form.
- Careful implementation is key to success.

Module 6: Nonlinear Programs (Convexity)

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

where

$f : \Re^n \to \Re$, and

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

where

$f : \Re^n \to \Re$, and

$g_i : \Re^n \to \Re$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

where

$f : \Re^n \to \Re$, and

$g_i : \Re^n \to \Re$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Remark

There aren't any restrictions regarding the type of functions.

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

where

$f : \Re^n \to \Re$, and

$g_i : \Re^n \to \Re$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Remark

There aren't any restrictions regarding the type of functions.

This is a very general model, but NLPs can be very hard to solve!

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{llrcl} \min & x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & & -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \le & 0 \\ & & x_2 - \frac{3}{2} & \le & 0 \\ & & x_1 - \frac{3}{2} & \le & 0 \\ & & -x_1 - 2 & \le & 0 \end{array}}$$

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{llrcl} \min & \underbrace{x_2}_{f(x)} & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & & -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\ & & x_2 - \frac{3}{2} & \leq & 0 \\ & & x_1 - \frac{3}{2} & \leq & 0 \\ & & -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0 \end{array}}$$

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcl} \min & x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & \underbrace{-x_1^2 - x_2 + 2}_{g_1(x)} & \leq & 0 \\ & x_2 - \frac{3}{2} & \leq & 0 \\ & x_1 - \frac{3}{2} & \leq & 0 \\ & -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0 \end{array}}$$

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcl} \min & x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\ & \underbrace{x_2 - \frac{3}{2}}_{g_2(x)} & \leq & 0 \\ & x_1 - \frac{3}{2} & \leq & 0 \\ & -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0 \end{array}}$$

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcl} \min & x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\ & x_2 - \frac{3}{2} & \leq & 0 \\ & \underbrace{x_1 - \frac{3}{2}}_{g_3(x)} & \leq & 0 \\ & -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0 \end{array}}$$

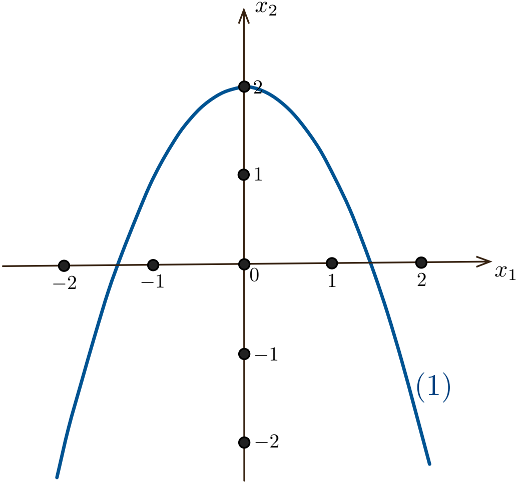
Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & f(x) \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

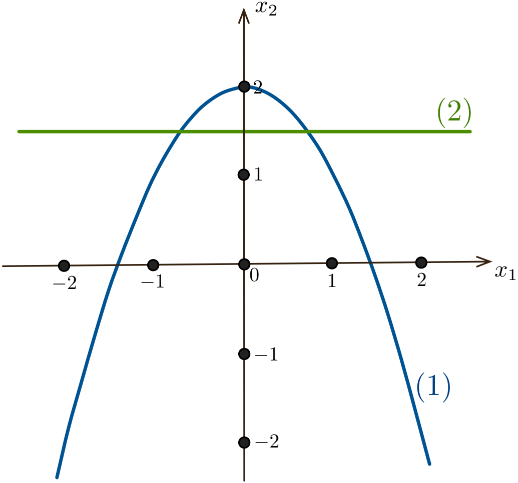
$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcl} \min & x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \le & 0 \\ & x_2 - \frac{3}{2} & \le & 0 \\ & x_1 - \frac{3}{2} & \le & 0 \\ & \underbrace{-x_1 - 2}_{g_4(x)} & \le & 0 \end{array}}$$

$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\min & x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_2 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_1 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0
\end{array}
$$



(1) $x_2 \geq 2 - x_1^2$.

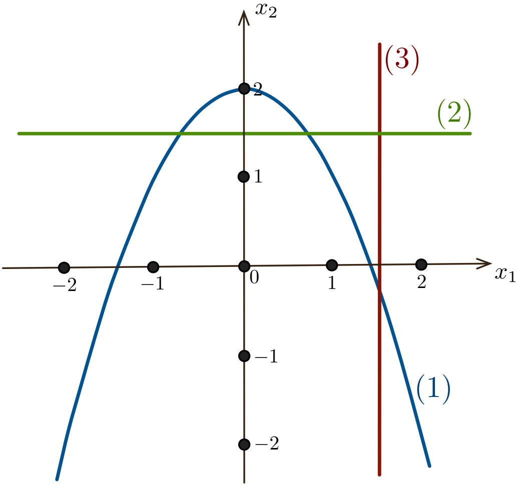
$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\min & x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_2 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_1 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0
\end{array}
$$



(1) $x_2 \geq 2 - x_1^2$.

(2) $x_2 \leq \frac{3}{2}$.

$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\min & x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_2 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_1 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0
\end{array}
$$

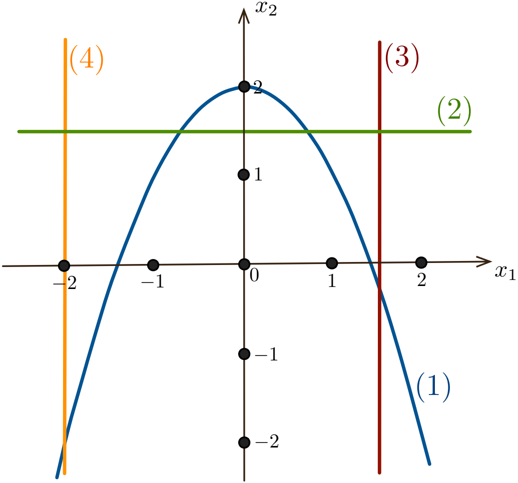


(1) $x_2 \geq 2 - x_1^2$.

(2) $x_2 \leq \frac{3}{2}$.

(3) $x_1 \leq \frac{3}{2}$.

$$\begin{array}{lrcl} \min & x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\ & x_2 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\ & x_1 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\ & -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0 \end{array}$$



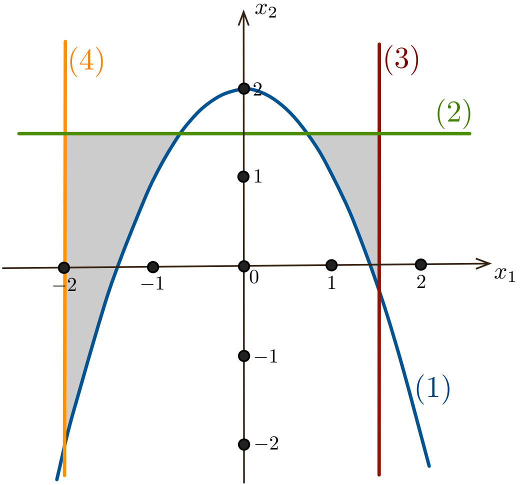
(1) $x_2 \geq 2 - x_1^2$.

(2) $x_2 \leq \frac{3}{2}$.

(3) $x_1 \leq \frac{3}{2}$.

(4) $x_1 \geq -2$.

$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\min & x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_2 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_1 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0
\end{array}
$$



Feasible region

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

Remark

We may assume $f(x)$ is a linear function, i.e., $f(x) = c^\top x$.

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

Remark

We may assume $f(x)$ is a linear function, i.e., $f(x) = c^\top x$.

We can rewrite (P) as

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & \lambda & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & \lambda \geq f(x) & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{Q}$$

Definition

A Nonlinear Program (NLP) is a problem of the form:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & f(x) & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Remark

We may assume $f(x)$ is a linear function, i.e., $f(x) = c^\top x$.

We can rewrite (P) as

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & \lambda & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & \lambda \geq f(x) & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(Q)}$$

The optimal solution to (Q) will have $\lambda = f(x)$.

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Linear Programs

$$\max \quad x_1 + x_2$$

s.t.

$$\begin{aligned} 2x_1 - x_2 &\geq 3 \\ x_1 - x_2 &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

$$x_1, x_2 \geq 0$$

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Linear Programs

$$\max \quad x_1 + x_2$$

s.t.

$$\begin{aligned} 2x_1 - x_2 &\geq 3 \\ x_1 - x_2 &= 4 \\ x_1, x_2 &\geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\min \quad -x_1 - x_2$$

s.t.

$$\begin{aligned} -2x_1 + x_2 + 3 &\leq 0 \\ x_1 - x_2 - 4 &\leq 0 \\ -x_1 + x_2 + 4 &\leq 0 \\ -x_1 &\leq 0 \\ -x_2 &\leq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Linear Programs

$$
\begin{aligned}
\max \quad & x_1 + x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \\
& \begin{aligned} 2x_1 - x_2 &\geq 3 \\ x_1 - x_2 &= 4 \end{aligned} \\
& x_1, x_2 \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & -x_1 - x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \\
& \begin{aligned} -2x_1 + x_2 + 3 &\leq 0 \\ x_1 - x_2 - 4 &\leq 0 \\ -x_1 + x_2 + 4 &\leq 0 \\ -x_1 &\leq 0 \\ -x_2 &\leq 0 \end{aligned}
\end{aligned}
$$

Nonlinear Programs can also generalize Integer Programs!

Nonlinear Programs Generalize **Integer** Programs

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax \le b \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

$0, 1$ IP

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax \le b \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

$0, 1$ IP

Idea

$x_j \in \{0,1\}$

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax \le b \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

$0, 1$ IP

Idea

$$x_j \in \{0,1\} \qquad \Longleftrightarrow \qquad x_j(1 - x_j) = 0$$

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax \le b \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

$0, 1$ IP

Idea

$x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad x_j(1 - x_j) = 0$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & -c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & \begin{array}{rcll} Ax & \le & b & \\ x_j(1-x_j) & \le & 0 & (j = 1, \ldots, n) \\ -x_j(1-x_j) & \le & 0 & (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array} \end{array}$$

Quadratic NLP

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax \leq b \\ & x_j \in \{0,1\} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

$0, 1$ IP

Idea

$x_j \in \{0,1\} \qquad \iff \qquad x_j(1 - x_j) = 0$

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -c^\top x & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & Ax & \leq & b & \\ & x_j(1 - x_j) & \leq & 0 & (j = 1, \ldots, n) \\ & -x_j(1 - x_j) & \leq & 0 & (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

Quadratic NLP

Remark

$0, 1$ IPs are hard to solve; thus, quadratic NLPs are also hard to solve.

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax \leq b \\ & x_j \text{ integer} \quad (j = 1, \dots, n) \end{array}}$$

pure IP

Nonlinear Programs Generalize **Integer** Programs

$$
\boxed{
\begin{array}{ll}
\max & c^\top x \\
\text{s.t.} & \\
 & Ax \le b \\
 & x_j \text{ integer} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n)
\end{array}
}
$$

pure IP

Idea

x_j integer

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\begin{array}{lll} \max & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & Ax \le b & \\ & x_j \text{ integer} & (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

pure IP

Idea

x_j integer $\iff$ $\sin(\pi x_j) = 0.$

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & Ax \leq b \\ & x_j \text{ integer} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

pure IP

Idea

x_j integer $\iff$ $\sin(\pi x_j) = 0$.

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -c^\top x & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & Ax & \leq & b & \\ & \sin(\pi x_j) & = & 0 & (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{array}$$

Nonlinear Programs Generalize Integer Programs

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & Ax \le b \\ & x_j \text{ integer} \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{aligned}$$

pure IP

Idea

x_j integer $\iff$ $\sin(\pi x_j) = 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & -c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & Ax \le b \\ & \sin(\pi x_j) = 0 \quad (j = 1, \ldots, n) \end{aligned}$$

Remark

IPs are hard to solve; thus, NLPs are also hard to solve.

Question

What makes solving an NLP hard?

Question

What makes solving an NLP hard?

$\boxed{\text{Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem}}$

Question

What makes solving an NLP hard?

$\boxed{\textsc{Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem}}$

- Find a feasible solution x.

Question

What makes solving an NLP hard?

META STRATEGY FOR SOLVING AN OPTIMIZATION PROBLEM

- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.

Question

What makes solving an NLP hard?

META STRATEGY FOR SOLVING AN OPTIMIZATION PROBLEM

- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.

Question

What makes solving an NLP hard?

Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem

- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.

Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem

- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.

Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem

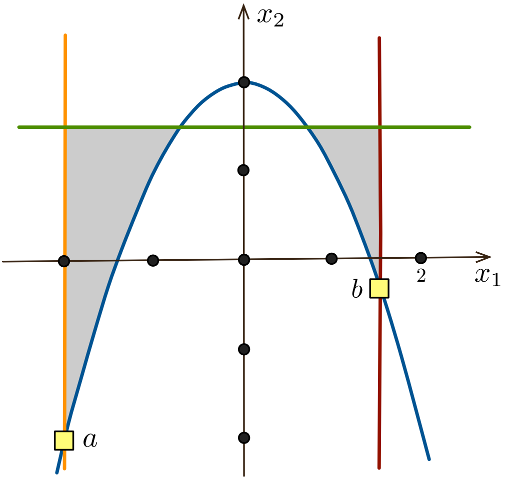
- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\min \quad & x_2 \\
\text{s.t.} \quad & \\
-x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 &\leq 0 \\
x_2 - 3/2 &\leq 0 \\
x_1 - 3/2 &\leq 0 \\
-x_1 - 2 &\leq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem

- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.

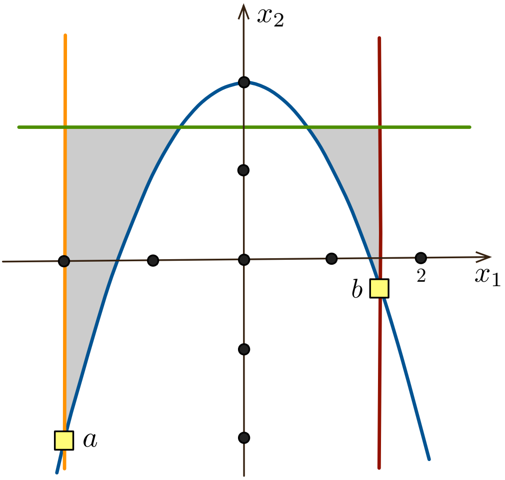
$$
\begin{array}{lrcl}
\min & x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_1^2 - x_2 + 2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_2 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& x_1 - 3/2 & \leq & 0 \\
& -x_1 - 2 & \leq & 0
\end{array}
$$



Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem

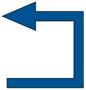
- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.

a is an optimal solution



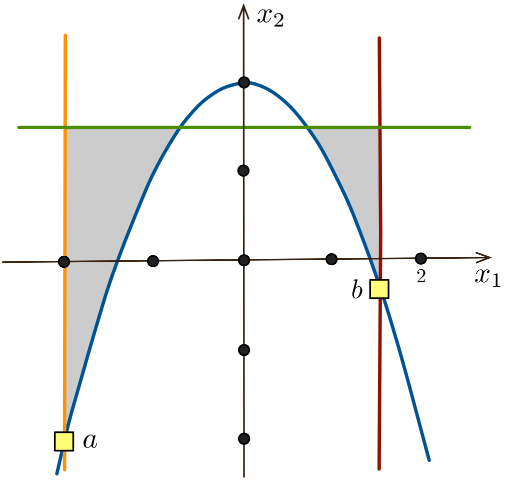
Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem

- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.



a is an optimal solution

no better solution around b



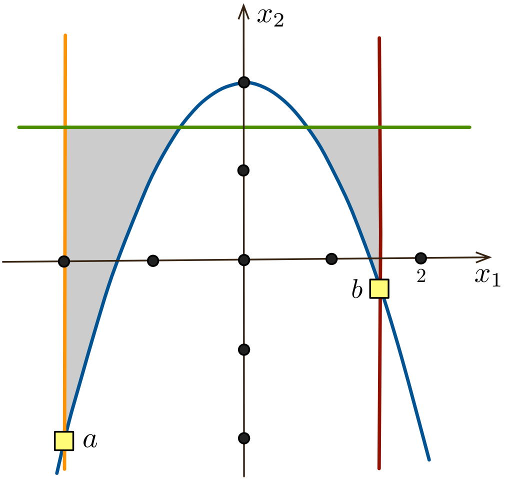
Meta strategy for solving an optimization problem

- Find a feasible solution x.
- If x is optimal, STOP.
- Starting with x, find a "better" feasible solution.

a is an optimal solution

no better solution around b

b is a local optimum



Definition

Consider

$$\min\left\{f(x) : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

Definition

Consider

$$\min \{f(x) : x \in S\}. \qquad \text{(P)}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum

Definition

Consider

$$\min\{f(x) : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum if there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

Definition

Consider

$$\min \{f(x) : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum if there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\forall x' \in S \quad \text{where} \quad ||x' - x|| \leq \delta \quad \text{we have} \quad f(x) \leq f(x').$$

Definition

Consider

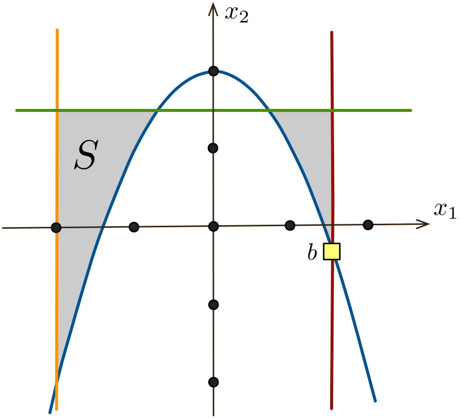
$$\min \{f(x) : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum if there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\forall x' \in S \quad \text{where} \quad ||x' - x|| \leq \delta \quad \text{we have} \quad f(x) \leq f(x').$$

$\min\{x_2 : x \in S\}$

b is a local optimum



Definition

Consider

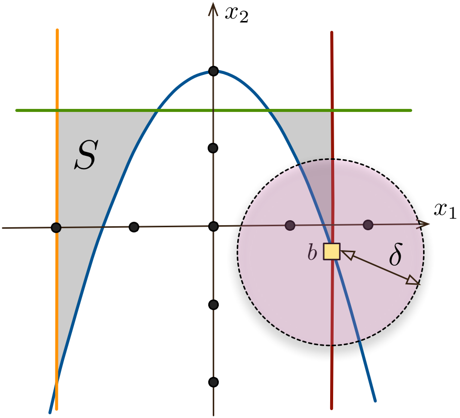
$$\min \{f(x) : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum if there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\forall x' \in S \quad \text{where} \quad ||x' - x|| \leq \delta \quad \text{we have} \quad f(x) \leq f(x').$$

$\min\{x_2 : x \in S\}$

b is a local optimum



Convexity Helps

Definition

Consider

$$\min \{f(x) : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum if there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\forall x' \in S \quad \text{where} \quad ||x' - x|| \leq \delta \quad \text{we have} \quad f(x) \leq f(x').$$

Convexity Helps

Definition

Consider

$$\min\{f(x) : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum if there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\forall x' \in S \quad \text{where} \quad ||x' - x|| \leq \delta \quad \text{we have} \quad f(x) \leq f(x').$$

Proposition

Consider

$$\min\{c^\top x : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

Convexity Helps

Definition

Consider

$$\min \{f(x) : x \in S\}. \tag{P}$$

$x \in S$ is a local optimum if there exists $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\forall x' \in S \quad \text{where} \quad ||x' - x|| \leq \delta \quad \text{we have} \quad f(x) \leq f(x').$$

Proposition

Consider

$$\min \left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

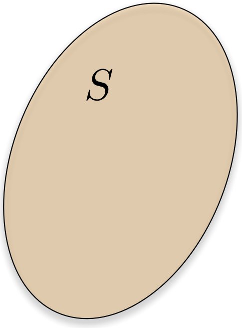
Proposition

Consider

$$\min \left\{ c^\top x : x \in S \right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof



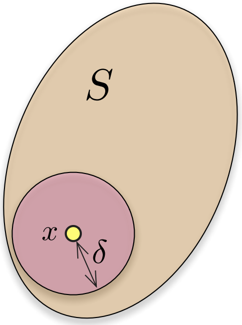
Proposition

Consider

$$\min \left\{ c^\top x : x \in S \right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof



Proposition

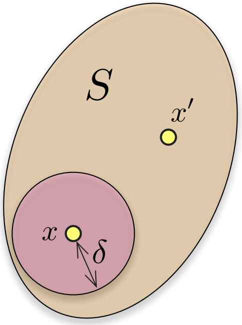
Consider

$$\min\left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.



Proposition

Consider

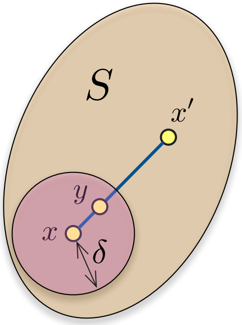
$$\min\left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.



Proposition

Consider

$$\min \left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

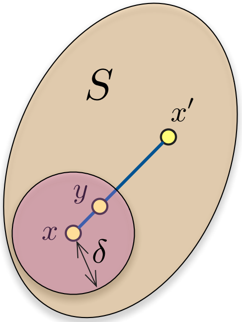
If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \leq \delta$.



Proposition

Consider

$$\min\left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

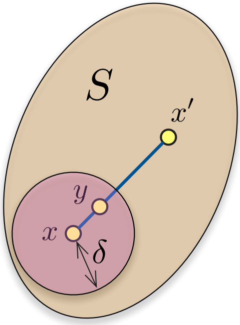
Proof

Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \leq \delta$.

Since S is convex, $y \in S$.



Proposition

Consider

$$\min\left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

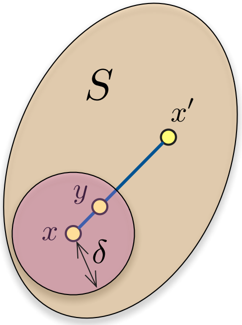
Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \leq \delta$.

Since S is convex, $y \in S$.

$$c^\top y$$



Proposition

Consider

$$\min\left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

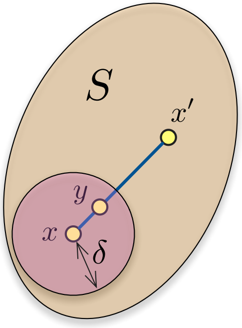
Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \leq \delta$.

Since S is convex, $y \in S$.

$$c^\top y = c^\top(\lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x)$$



Proposition

Consider

$$\min \left\{ c^\top x : x \in S \right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

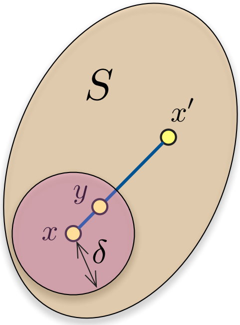
Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \leq \delta$.

Since S is convex, $y \in S$.

$$\begin{aligned} c^\top y &= c^\top(\lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x) \\ &= \underbrace{\lambda}_{>0} \underbrace{c^\top x'}_{<c^\top x} + (1-\lambda)c^\top x \end{aligned}$$



Proposition

Consider

$$\min\left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

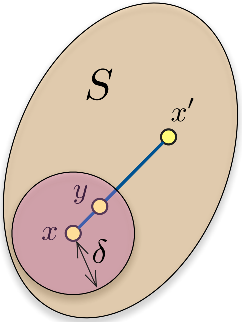
Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \le \delta$.

Since S is convex, $y \in S$.

$$\begin{aligned} c^\top y &= c^\top(\lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x) \\ &= \underbrace{\lambda}_{>0}\underbrace{c^\top x'}_{<c^\top x} + (1-\lambda)c^\top x \\ &< \lambda c^\top x + (1-\lambda)c^\top x \end{aligned}$$



Proposition

Consider

$$\min \left\{ c^\top x : x \in S \right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

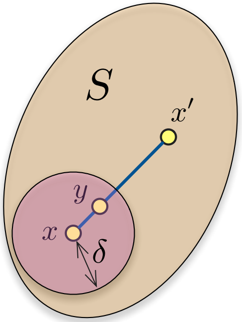
Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \leq \delta$.

Since S is convex, $y \in S$.

$$\begin{aligned} c^\top y &= c^\top(\lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x) \\ &= \underbrace{\lambda}_{>0} \underbrace{c^\top x'}_{<c^\top x} + (1-\lambda)c^\top x \\ &< \lambda c^\top x + (1-\lambda)c^\top x \\ &= c^\top x \end{aligned}$$



Proposition

Consider

$$\min\left\{c^\top x : x \in S\right\}. \tag{P}$$

If S is convex and x is a local optimum, then x is optimal.

Proof

Suppose $\exists x' \in S$ with $c^\top x' < c^\top x$.

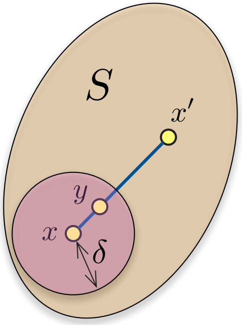
Let $y = \lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x$ for $\lambda > 0$ small.

As λ small $||y - x|| \leq \delta$.

Since S is convex, $y \in S$.

$$\begin{aligned} c^\top y &= c^\top(\lambda x' + (1-\lambda)x) \\ &= \underbrace{\lambda}_{>0}\underbrace{c^\top x'}_{<c^\top x} + (1-\lambda)c^\top x \\ &< \lambda c^\top x + (1-\lambda)c^\top x \\ &= c^\top x \end{aligned}$$

A contradiction.



Consider

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

Consider

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

Goal: Study a case where the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Consider

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

Goal: Study a case where the feasible region of (P) is convex.

- We will define convex functions

Consider

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

<u>Goal:</u> Study a case where the feasible region of (P) is convex.

- We will define convex functions
- We will prove

Proposition

If $g_1, \ldots, g_k$ are all convex, then the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \rightarrow \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \rightarrow \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \leq \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b)$$

Definition

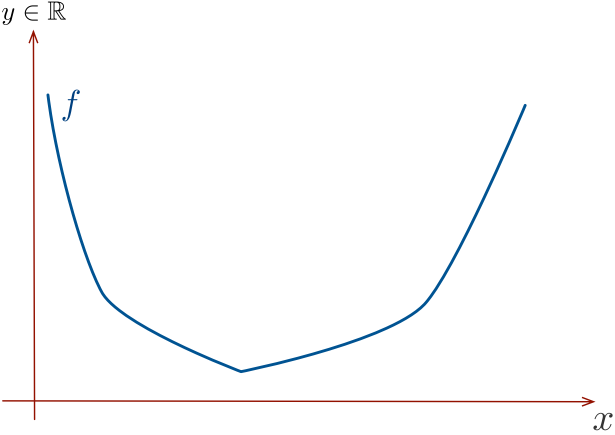
Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \le \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \le \lambda \le 1.$$

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \leq \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1.$$

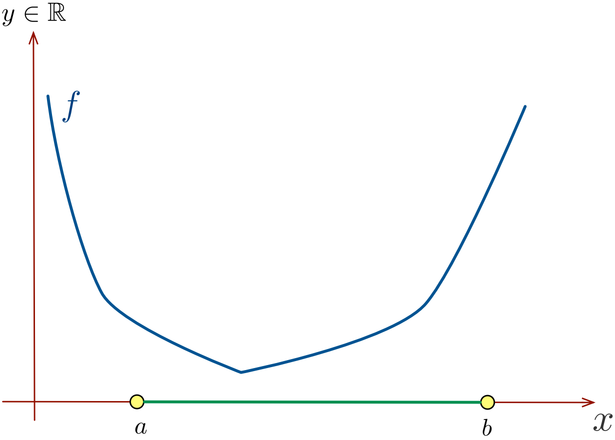


CONVEX FUNCTION!

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda) b\big) \leq \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1.$$

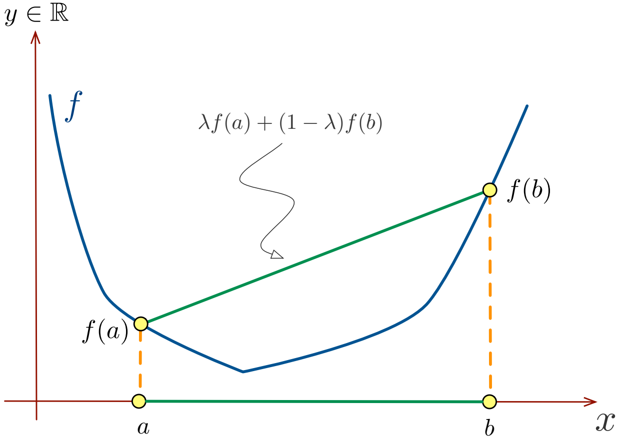


Convex function!

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \leq \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1.$$



CONVEX FUNCTION!

Definition

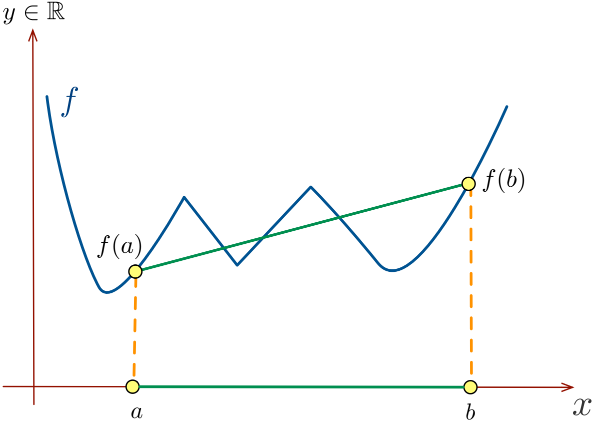
Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \le \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \le \lambda \le 1.$$

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

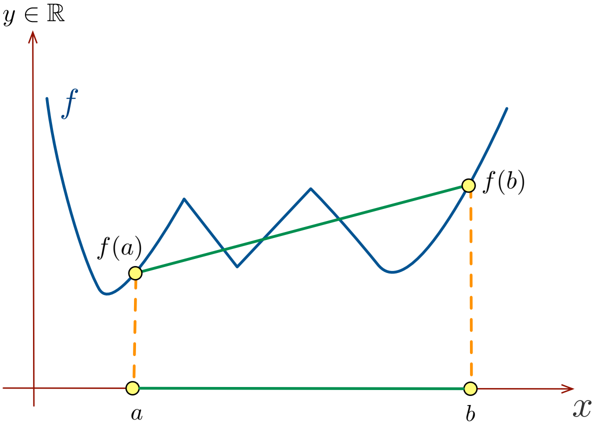
$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda) b\big) \leq \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1.$$



Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \le \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \le \lambda \le 1.$$



Not a convex function!

Definition

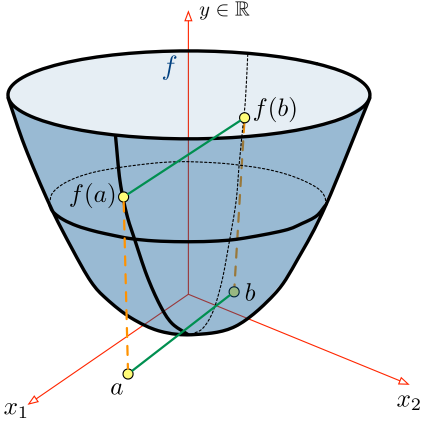
Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \le \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \le \lambda \le 1.$$

Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

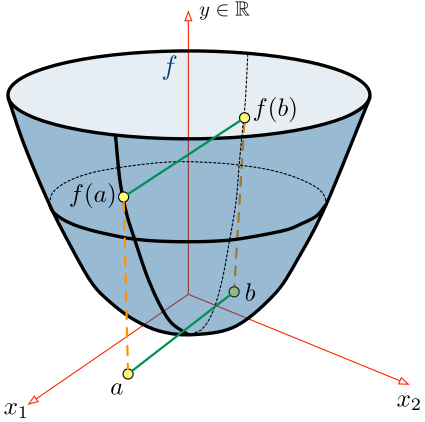
$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \leq \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1.$$



Definition

Function $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ is convex if for all $a, b \in \Re^n$,

$$f\big(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\big) \leq \lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b) \quad \text{for all} \quad 0 \leq \lambda \leq 1.$$



CONVEX FUNCTION!

Example

We claim that $f(x) = x^2$ is convex.

Example

We claim that $f(x) = x^2$ is convex.

Pick $a, b \in \Re$ and pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Example

We claim that $f(x) = x^2$ is convex.

Pick $a, b \in \Re$ and pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

<u>To check:</u>

$$[\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b]^2 \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda a^2 + (1-\lambda)b^2.$$

Example

We claim that $f(x) = x^2$ is convex.

Pick $a, b \in \Re$ and pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

<u>To check:</u>

$$[\lambda a + (1-\lambda) b]^2 \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda a^2 + (1-\lambda) b^2.$$

We may assume that $\lambda \neq 0, 1$.

Example

We claim that $f(x) = x^2$ is convex.

Pick $a, b \in \Re$ and pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

<u>To check:</u>

$$[\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b]^2 \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda a^2 + (1-\lambda)b^2.$$

We may assume that $\lambda \neq 0, 1$.

After simplifying

$$\lambda(1-\lambda)2ab \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda(1-\lambda)(a^2 + b^2),$$

Example

We claim that $f(x) = x^2$ is convex.

Pick $a, b \in \Re$ and pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

<u>To check:</u>

$$[\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b]^2 \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda a^2 + (1-\lambda)b^2.$$

We may assume that $\lambda \neq 0, 1$.

After simplifying

$$\lambda(1-\lambda)2ab \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda(1-\lambda)(a^2+b^2),$$

or, equivalently, as $\lambda, (1-\lambda) > 0$,

$$a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \stackrel{?}{\geq} 0,$$

Example

We claim that $f(x) = x^2$ is convex.

Pick $a, b \in \Re$ and pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To check:

$$[\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b]^2 \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda a^2 + (1-\lambda)b^2.$$

We may assume that $\lambda \neq 0, 1$.

After simplifying

$$\lambda(1-\lambda)2ab \stackrel{?}{\leq} \lambda(1-\lambda)(a^2+b^2),$$

or, equivalently, as $\lambda, (1-\lambda) > 0$,

$$a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \stackrel{?}{\geq} 0,$$

which is the case as $a^2 + b^2 - 2ab = (a-b)^2 \geq 0$.

Why Do We Care About Convex Functions?

Proposition

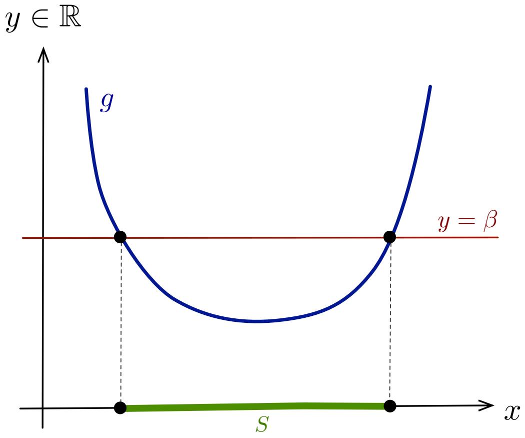
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

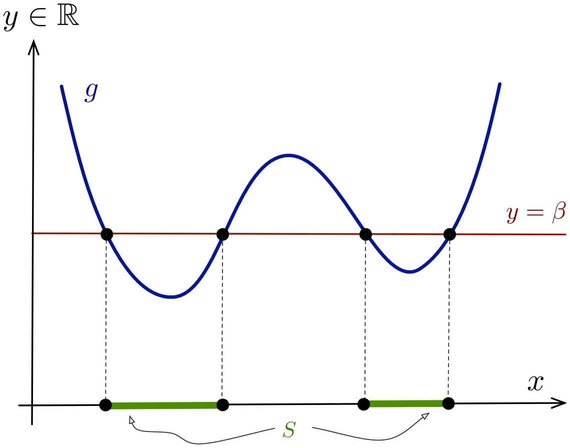
Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

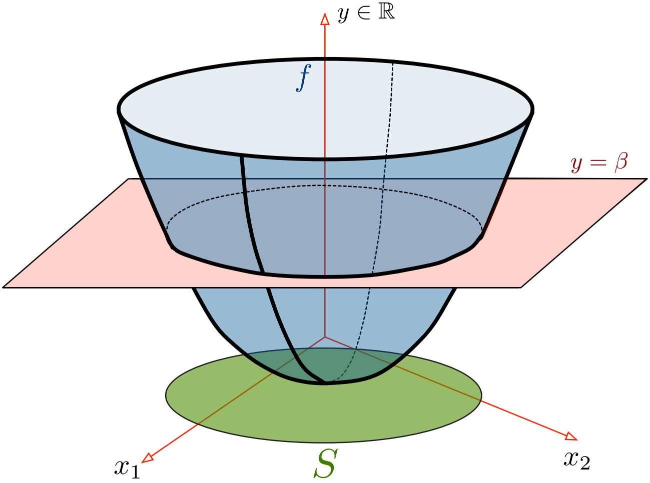
Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \rightarrow \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Let $x = \lambda a + (1 - \lambda)b$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Let $x = \lambda a + (1 - \lambda) b$.

Our goal is to show that $x \in S$, i.e., that $g(x) \leq \beta$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Let $x = \lambda a + (1 - \lambda)b$.

Our goal is to show that $x \in S$, i.e., that $g(x) \leq \beta$.

$$g(x) \quad = \quad g\left(\lambda a + (1 - \lambda)b\right)$$

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \rightarrow \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Let $x = \lambda a + (1 - \lambda)b$.

Our goal is to show that $x \in S$, i.e., that $g(x) \leq \beta$.

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= g\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\right) \\ &\leq \lambda g(a) + (1-\lambda)g(b) \qquad \text{(convexity of } g\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \leq \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Let $x = \lambda a + (1 - \lambda)b$.

Our goal is to show that $x \in S$, i.e., that $g(x) \leq \beta$.

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= g\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\right) \\ &\leq \underbrace{\lambda}_{\geq 0}\,\underbrace{g(a)}_{\leq \beta} + \underbrace{(1-\lambda)}_{\geq 0}\,\underbrace{g(b)}_{\leq \beta} \qquad (\text{since } a, b \in S) \end{aligned}$$

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\beta \in \Re$.

Then $S = \{x \in \Re^n : g(x) \le \beta\}$ is a convex set.

Proof

Pick $a, b \in S$.

Pick λ where $0 \le \lambda \le 1$.

Let $x = \lambda a + (1-\lambda)b$.

Our goal is to show that $x \in S$, i.e., that $g(x) \le \beta$.

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= g\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\right) \\ &\le \underbrace{\lambda}_{\ge 0}\underbrace{g(a)}_{\le\beta} + \underbrace{(1-\lambda)}_{\ge 0}\underbrace{g(b)}_{\le\beta} \qquad \text{(since } a, b \in S\text{)} \\ &\le \lambda\beta + (1-\lambda)\beta = \beta. \end{aligned}$$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

If all functions g_i are convex, then the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

If all functions g_i are convex, then the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Proof

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

If all functions g_i are convex, then the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Proof

Let $S_i = \{x : g_i(x) \leq 0\}$.

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

If all functions g_i are convex, then the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Proof

Let $S_i = \{x : g_i(x) \leq 0\}$.

By the previous result, S_i is convex.

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \qquad \text{(P)}$$

If all functions g_i are convex, then the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Proof

Let $S_i = \{x : g_i(x) \le 0\}$.

By the previous result, S_i is convex.

The feasible region of (P) is $S_1 \cap S_2 \cap \ldots \cap S_k$.

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}} \tag{P}$$

If all functions g_i are convex, then the feasible region of (P) is convex.

Proof

Let $S_i = \{x : g_i(x) \leq 0\}$.

By the previous result, S_i is convex.

The feasible region of (P) is $S_1 \cap S_2 \cap \ldots \cap S_k$.

Since the intersection of convex sets is convex, the result follows.

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function.

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

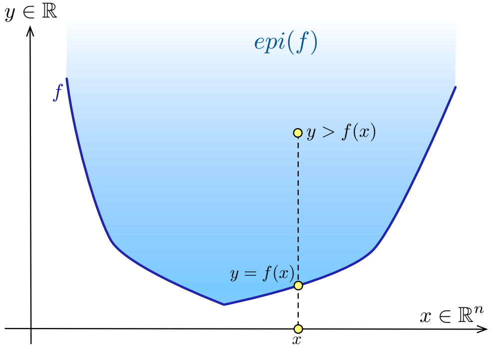
$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$

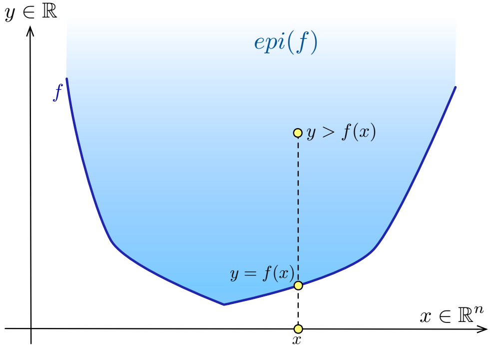


Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$



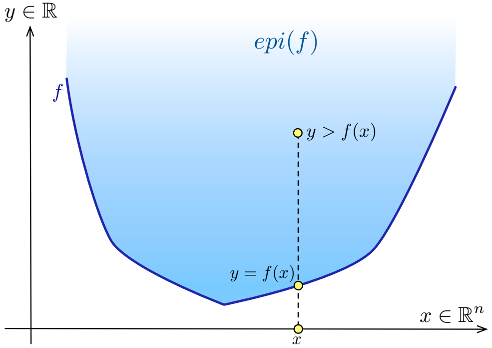
f is convex

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$



f is convex

$epi(f)$ is convex

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

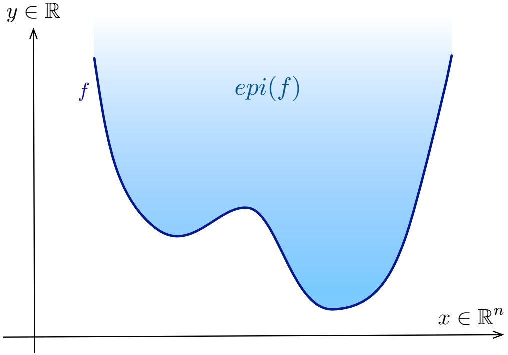
$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$

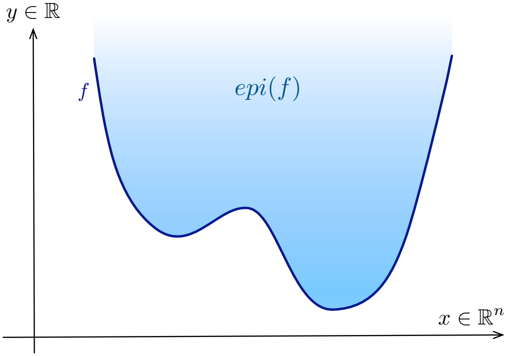


Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$



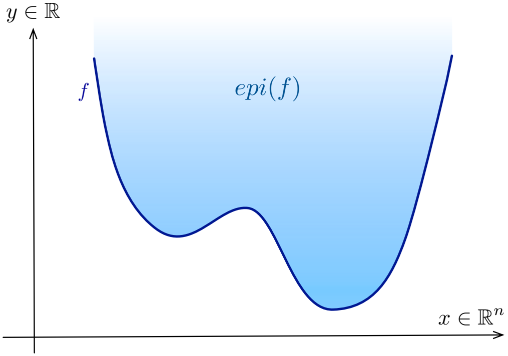
f is NOT convex

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$



f is NOT convex

$epi(f)$ is NOT convex

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

Convex Functions Versus Convex Sets

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. The epigraph of f is then given by,

$$epi(f) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} y \\ x \end{pmatrix} : x \in \Re^n, y \in \Re, y \geq f(x) \right\} \subseteq \Re^{n+1}.$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. f is convex $\Longrightarrow$ $epi(f)$ is convex.
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\Longrightarrow$ f is convex.

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad$ f is convex.

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad$ f is convex.

Proof

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad$ f is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$.

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \qquad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \rightarrow \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad$ f is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1 - \lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1-\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta \\ \lambda a + (1-\lambda) b \end{pmatrix} \tag{$\star$}$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1-\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta \\ \lambda a + (1-\lambda) b \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\star)$$

Consider

$$f\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda) b\right)$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1-\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta \\ \lambda a + (1-\lambda) b \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\star)$$

Consider

$$f\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\right) \quad \leq \quad \text{(convexity of } f\text{)}$$
$$\lambda f(a) + (1-\lambda) f(b)$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1-\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta \\ \lambda a + (1-\lambda) b \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\star)$$

Consider

$$f\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda) b\right) \quad \leq \quad \text{(convexity of } f\text{)}$$

$$\underbrace{\lambda}_{\geq 0} f(a) + \underbrace{(1-\lambda)}_{\geq 0} f(b)$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1-\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta \\ \lambda a + (1-\lambda)b \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\star)$$

Consider

$$f\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b\right) \leq \qquad \text{(convexity of } f\text{)}$$

$$\underbrace{\lambda}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{f(a)}_{\leq \alpha} + \underbrace{(1-\lambda)}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{f(b)}_{\leq \beta}$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \leq \lambda \leq 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1-\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta \\ \lambda a + (1-\lambda) b \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\star)$$

Consider

$$\begin{aligned} & f\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda) b\right) && \leq && \text{(convexity of } f\text{)} \\ & \underbrace{\lambda}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{f(a)}_{\leq \alpha} + \underbrace{(1-\lambda)}_{\geq 0} \underbrace{f(b)}_{\leq \beta} && \leq && \\ & \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta. \end{aligned}$$

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a function. Then

1. $\boxed{f \text{ is convex} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad epi(f) \text{ is convex.}}$
2. $epi(f)$ is convex $\quad \Longrightarrow \quad f$ is convex.

Proof

Pick $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} \in epi(f)$. Pick λ where $0 \le \lambda \le 1$.

To show: $epi(f)$ contains

$$\lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ a \end{pmatrix} + (1-\lambda) \begin{pmatrix} \beta \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta \\ \lambda a + (1-\lambda) b \end{pmatrix} \qquad (\star)$$

Consider

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\lambda a + (1-\lambda) b\right) \quad &\le \quad \text{(convexity of } f\text{)} \\ \underbrace{\lambda}_{\ge 0} \underbrace{f(a)}_{\le \alpha} + \underbrace{(1-\lambda)}_{\ge 0} \underbrace{f(b)}_{\le \beta} \quad &\le \\ \lambda\alpha + (1-\lambda)\beta. \end{aligned}$$

Thus $(\star)$ is in $epi(f)$.

Recap

Recap

1. NLPs are hard in general.

Recap

1. NLPs are hard in general.
2. We may assume the objective function of NLPs is linear.

Recap

1. NLPs are hard in general.
2. We may assume the objective function of NLPs is linear.
3. Local optimum = optimal sol when the feasible region is convex.

Recap

1. NLPs are hard in general.
2. We may assume the objective function of NLPs is linear.
3. Local optimum = optimal sol when the feasible region is convex.
4. We defined convex functions.

Recap

1. NLPs are hard in general.
2. We may assume the objective function of NLPs is linear.
3. Local optimum = optimal sol when the feasible region is convex.
4. We defined convex functions.
5. Convex functions yield a convex feasible region.

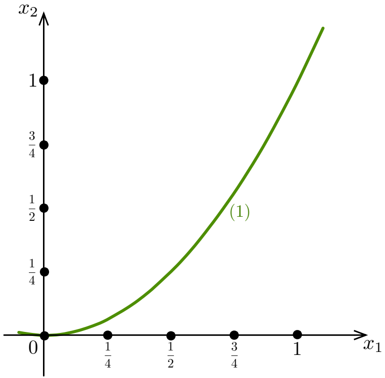
Recap

1. NLPs are hard in general.
2. We may assume the objective function of NLPs is linear.
3. Local optimum = optimal sol when the feasible region is convex.
4. We defined convex functions.
5. Convex functions yield a convex feasible region.
6. Convex functions and convex sets are related by epigraphs.

Module 6: Nonlinear Programs (the KKT theorem)

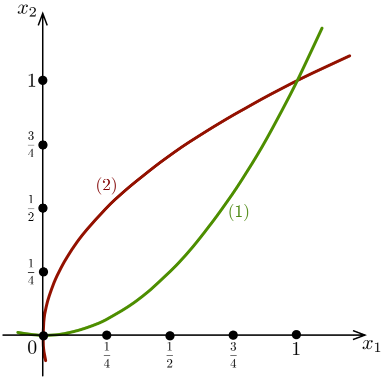
$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{lrcll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$



(1) $x_2 \geq x_1^2$;

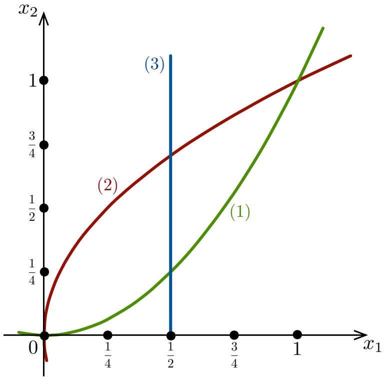
$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 \quad (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 \quad (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 \quad (3)
\end{array}
$$



(1) $x_2 \geq x_1^2$;

(2) $x_1 \geq x_2^2$;

$$
\begin{array}{lrcll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$

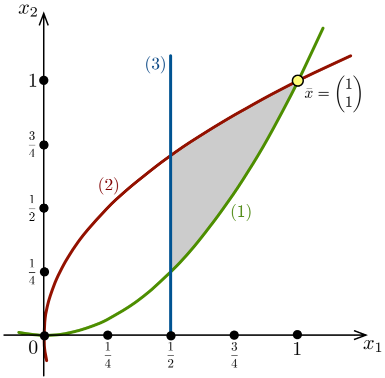


(1) $x_2 \geq x_1^2$;

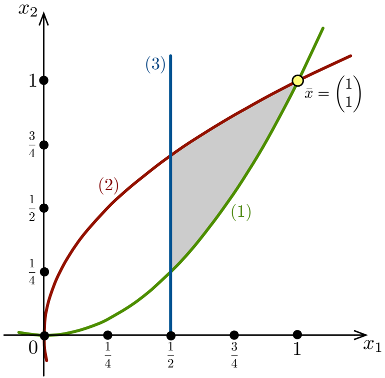
(2) $x_1 \geq x_2^2$;

(3) $x_1 \geq \frac{1}{2}$.

$$
\begin{array}{lrcll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$



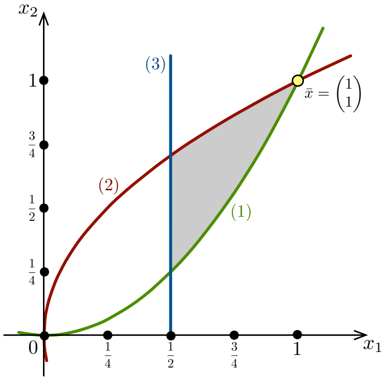
$$
\begin{array}{lrcll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$



Claim

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the NLP.

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq \ 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq \ 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq \ 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$

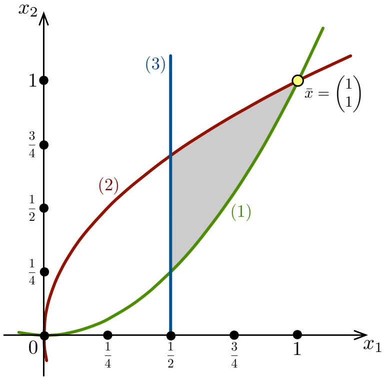


Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the NLP.

How do we prove this?

$$
\begin{array}{llcl}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 \quad (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 \quad (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 \quad (3)
\end{array}
$$



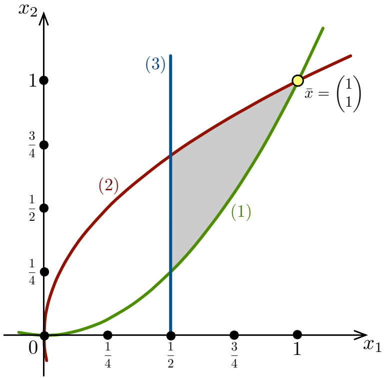
Claim

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the NLP.

How do we prove this?

Step 1. Find a relaxation of the NLP.

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$



Claim

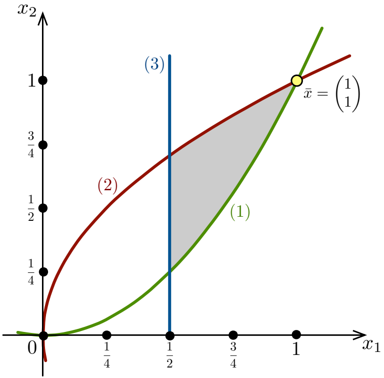
$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the NLP.

How do we prove this?

Step 1. Find a relaxation of the NLP.

Step 2. Prove $\bar{x}$ is optimal for the relaxation.

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}$$



Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the NLP.

How do we prove this?

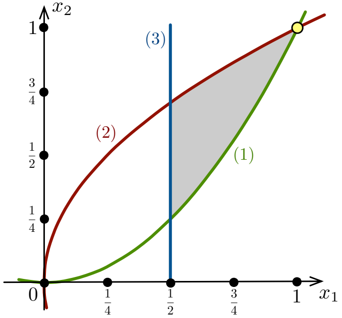
Step 1. Find a relaxation of the NLP.

Step 2. Prove $\bar{x}$ is optimal for the relaxation.

Step 3. Deduce that $\bar{x}$ is optimal for the NLP.

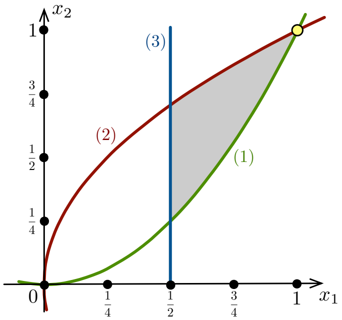
Original NLP

$$
\begin{array}{llcll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$



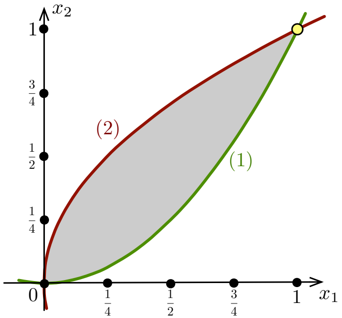
Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{llll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq 0 & (3) \end{array}$$



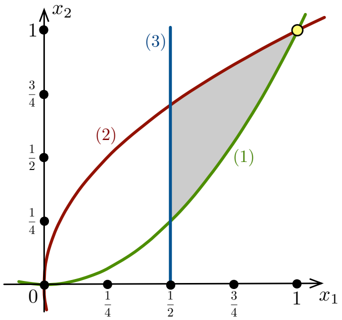
Relaxation

$$\begin{array}{llll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq 0 & (2) \end{array}$$



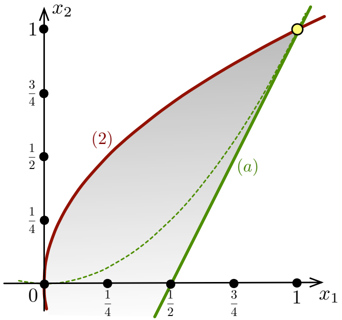
Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}$$



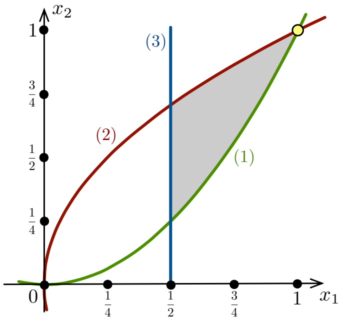
New relaxation

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \end{array}$$



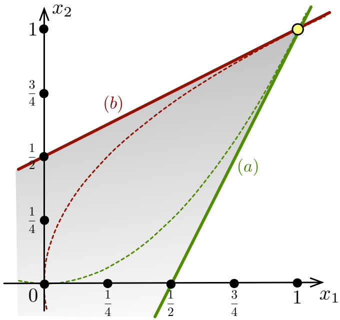
Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{lllll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}$$



New relaxation

$$\begin{array}{lllll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}$$



Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \max & x_1 + x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \max & x_1 + x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}}$$

Proof

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \max & x_1 + x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}}$$

Proof

Tight constraints for $\bar{x}$ are (a) and (b).

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \max & x_1 + x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}}$$

Proof

Tight constraints for $\bar{x}$ are (a) and (b).

Goal: Show that the objective function is in the cone of tight constraints.

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \max & x_1 + x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}$$

Proof

Tight constraints for $\bar{x}$ are (a) and (b).

Goal: Show that the objective function is in the cone of tight constraints.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \overset{?}{\in} cone \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Claim

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to

$$\begin{array}{lrcrl} \max & x_1 + x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}$$

Proof

Tight constraints for $\bar{x}$ are (a) and (b).

Goal: Show that the objective function is in the cone of tight constraints.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \overset{?}{\in} cone \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \quad \Longleftarrow$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = 1 \times \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + 1 \times \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \checkmark$$

Original NLP

$$
\begin{array}{lrcll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\
& -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\
& -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3)
\end{array}
$$

Relaxation

$$
\begin{array}{lrcll}
\min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\
\text{s.t.} & & & & \\
& 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\
& -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b)
\end{array}
$$

Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

Relaxation

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the relaxation

Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{llrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & & \\ & & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

Relaxation

$$\begin{array}{llrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & & \\ & & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the relaxation

$\Rightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is an optimal solution to the *original NLP*

Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

Relaxation

$$\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the relaxation

$\Rightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is an optimal solution to the *original NLP*

Question

Can we do this in general?

Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{llll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

Relaxation

$$\begin{array}{llll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & \\ & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq 1 & (a) \\ & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq 1 & (b) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the relaxation

$\Rightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is an optimal solution to the *original NLP*

Question

Can we do this in general? YES

Original NLP

$$\begin{array}{llrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & & \\ & & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

Relaxation

$$\begin{array}{llrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & & \\ & & 2x_1 - x_2 & \leq & 1 & (a) \\ & & -x_1 + 2x_2 & \leq & 1 & (b) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ is an optimal solution to the relaxation

$\Rightarrow$ $\bar{x}$ is an optimal solution to the *original NLP*

Question

Can we do this in general? YES

The key tool we'll use is subgradients.

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

$h(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

$h(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$

h is a lower bound for f

Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

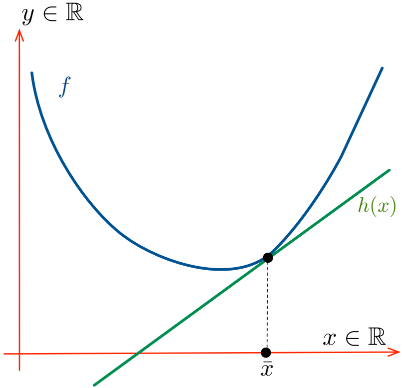
Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

$h(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$

h is a lower bound for f



Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

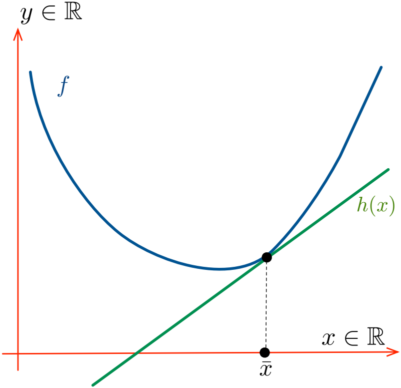
$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

$h(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$

h is a lower bound for f

unique subgradient



Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

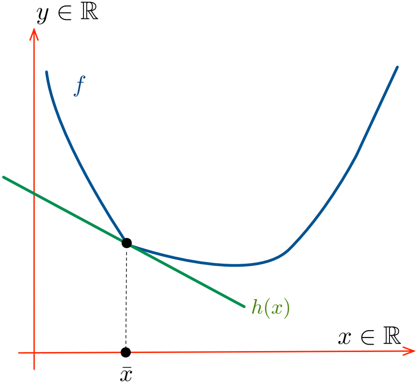
$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

$h(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$

h is a lower bound for f

first subgradient



Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

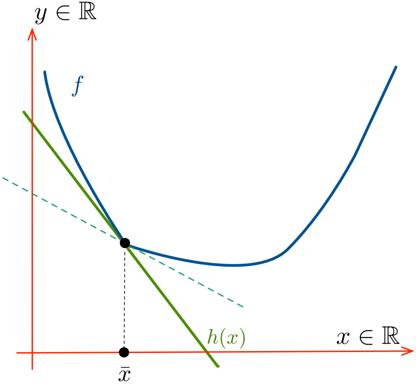
$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

$h(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$

h is a lower bound for f

second subgradient



Definition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Then, $s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

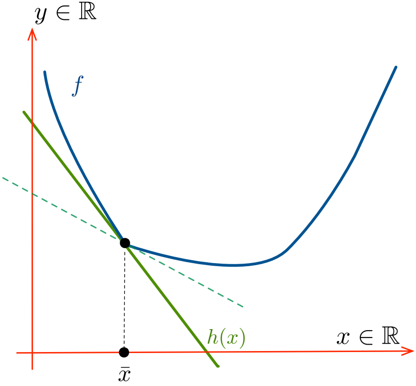
$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

$h(x)$ is affine

$h(\bar{x}) = f(\bar{x})$

h is a lower bound for f

NOT UNIQUE



Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \le f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$.

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1, 2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1,2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$h(x) \quad = \quad f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) =$$

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \le f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1,2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) = \\ &= 0 + \end{aligned}$$

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1,2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) = \\ &= 0 + (-1,2)(x - (1,1)^\top) = \end{aligned}$$

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \le f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1,2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) = \\ &= 0 + (-1,2)(x - (1,1)^\top) = -x_1 + 2x_2 - 1. \end{aligned}$$

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \le f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1,2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) = \\ &= 0 + (-1,2)(x - (1,1)^\top) = -x_1 + 2x_2 - 1. \end{aligned}$$

Check: $h(x) \le f(x)$ for all $x \in \Re^n$.

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1,2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) = \\ &= 0 + (-1,2)(x - (1,1)^\top) = -x_1 + 2x_2 - 1. \end{aligned}$$

Check: $h(x) \leq f(x)$ for all $x \in \Re^n$.

$$-x_1 + 2x_2 - 1 \overset{?}{\leq} -x_1 + x_2^2$$

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1, 2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) = \\ &= 0 + (-1, 2)(x - (1, 1)^\top) = -x_1 + 2x_2 - 1. \end{aligned}$$

Check: $h(x) \leq f(x)$ for all $x \in \Re^n$.

$$-x_1 + 2x_2 - 1 \overset{?}{\leq} -x_1 + x_2^2$$

or equivalently,

$$x_2^2 - 2x_2 + 1 \overset{?}{\geq} 0,$$

Definition

$s \in \Re^n$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$ if

$$h(x) := f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq f(x) \qquad \text{for all } x \in \Re^n.$$

Example

Consider $f : \Re^2 \to \Re$ where $f(x) = -x_1 + x_2^2$ and $\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$.

We claim that $(-1,2)^\top$ is a subgradient of f at $\bar{x}$.

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= f(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) = \\ &= 0 + (-1,2)(x - (1,1)^\top) = -x_1 + 2x_2 - 1. \end{aligned}$$

Check: $h(x) \leq f(x)$ for all $x \in \Re^n$.

$$-x_1 + 2x_2 - 1 \stackrel{?}{\leq} -x_1 + x_2^2$$

or equivalently,

$$x_2^2 - 2x_2 + 1 \stackrel{?}{\geq} 0,$$

which is the case as $x_2^2 - 2x_2 + 1 = (x_2 - 1)^2 \geq 0$.

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.

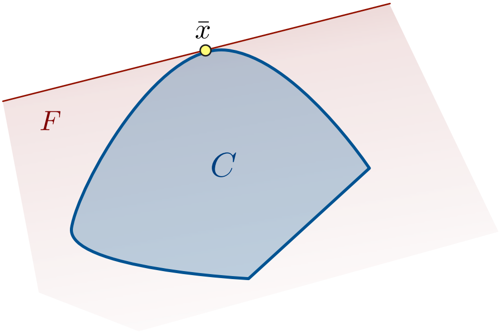
Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.



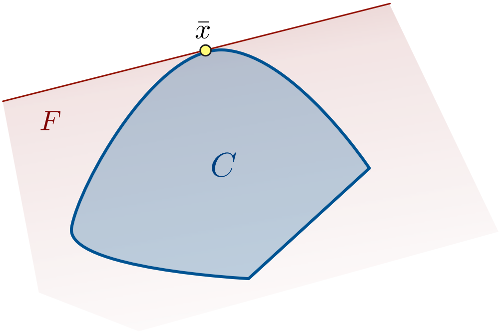
Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.



Unique supporting halfspace at $\bar{x}$.

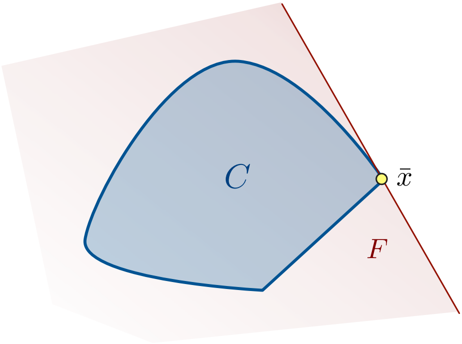
Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.



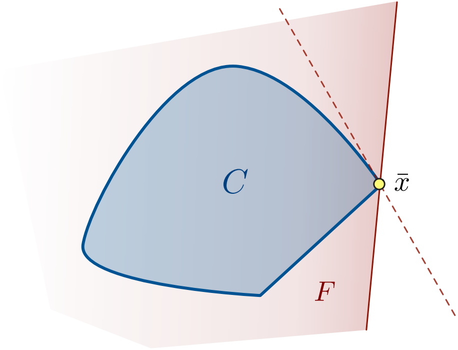
Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.



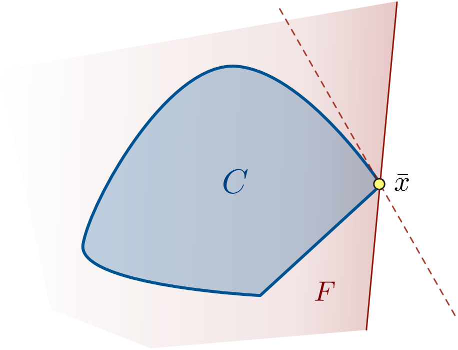
Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.



Non-unique supporting halfspace at $\bar{x}$.

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \le \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.

Question

What do we get when $n = 1$?

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.

Question

What do we get when $n = 1$?

- C is a segment (or a halfline)

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.

Question

What do we get when $n = 1$?

- C is a segment (or a halfline)
- F is a halfline

Definition

Let $C \in \Re^n$ be a convex set and let $\bar{x} \in C$.

The halfspace $F = \{x : s^\top x \leq \beta\}$ is supporting C at $\bar{x}$ if

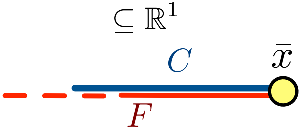
(1) $C \subseteq F$ and

(2) $s^\top \bar{x} = \beta$. That is, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.

Question

What do we get when $n = 1$?

- C is a segment (or a halfline)
- F is a halfline



Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top(x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Remark

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Remark

- C is convex, as g is a convex function,

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Remark

- C is convex, as g is a convex function,
- F is a halfspace, as $h(x)$ is an affine function, and

Subgradients and Supporting Halfspaces

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Remark

- C is convex, as g is a convex function,
- F is a halfspace, as $h(x)$ is an affine function, and
- $h(\bar{x}) = g(\bar{x}) = 0$ thus, $\bar{x}$ is on the boundary of F.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.
Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.
Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.
Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.
Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Example

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Example

$g(x) = x_2^2 - x_1$

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

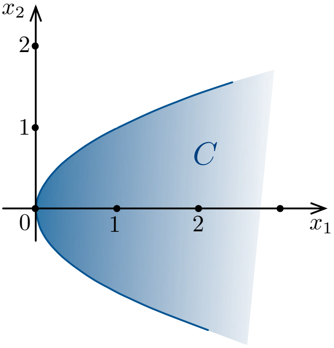
Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Example

$g(x) = x_2^2 - x_1$



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

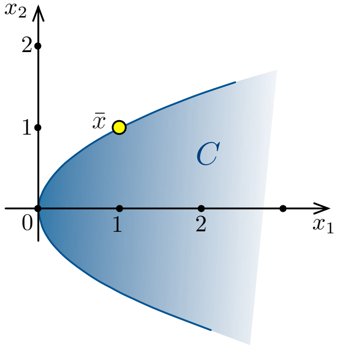
Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Example

$g(x) = x_2^2 - x_1$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

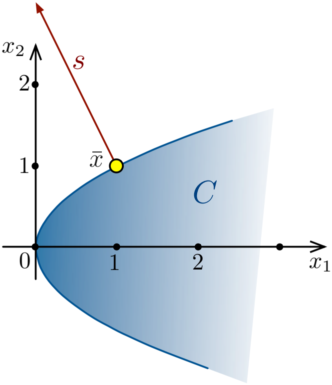
Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Example

$g(x) = x_2^2 - x_1$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$

$s = (-1, 2)^\top$ subgradient at $\bar{x}$



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

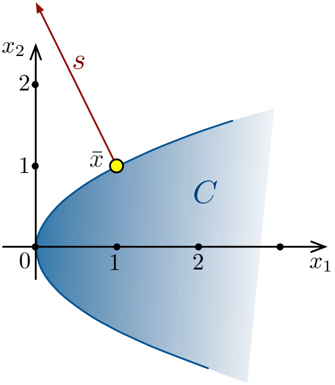
Example

$g(x) = x_2^2 - x_1$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$

$s = (-1, 2)^\top$ subgradient at $\bar{x}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
h(x) &= 0 + (-1, 2)\left[\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}\right] \\
&= -x_1 + 2x_2 - 1
\end{aligned}
$$



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Example

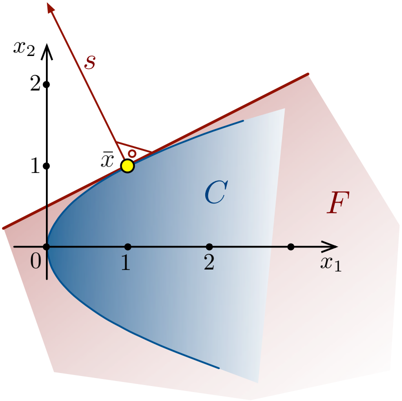
$g(x) = x_2^2 - x_1$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$

$s = (-1, 2)^\top$ subgradient at $\bar{x}$

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= 0 + (-1, 2) \left[\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right] \\ &= -x_1 + 2x_2 - 1 \end{aligned}$$

$F = \{x : -x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 1\}$



Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proposition

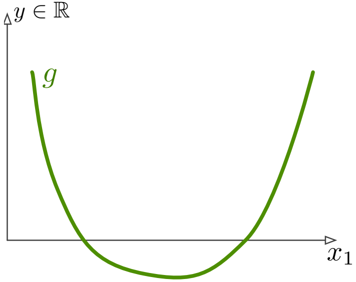
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

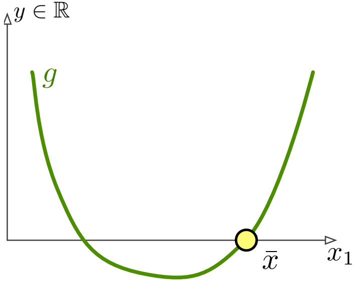
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

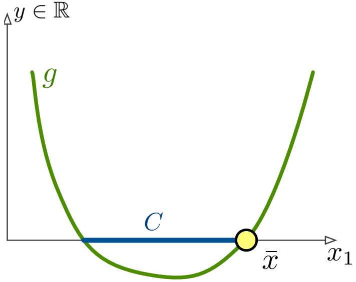
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top(x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

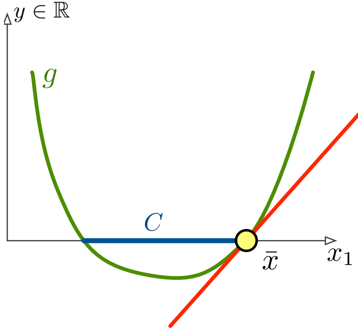
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

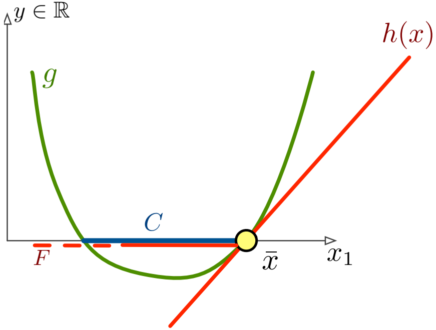
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

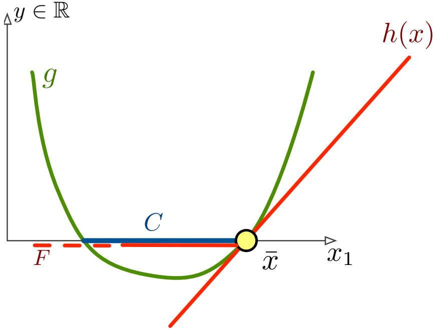
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

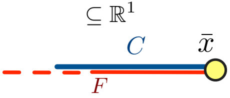
Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.





Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proposition

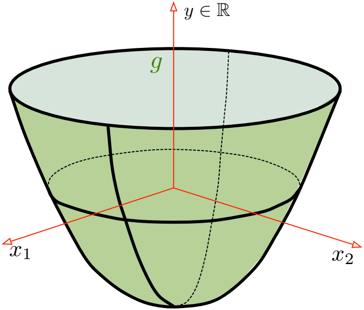
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top(x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

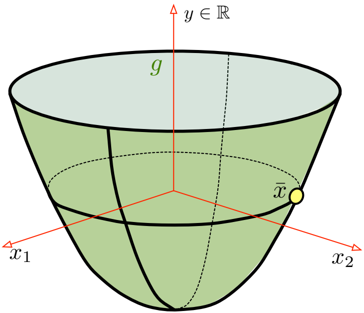
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

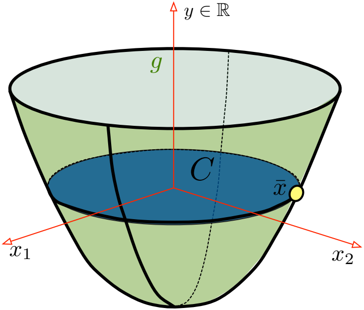
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top(x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

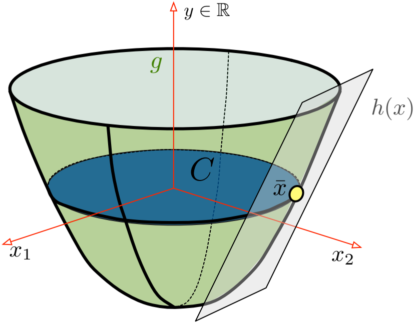
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.



Proposition

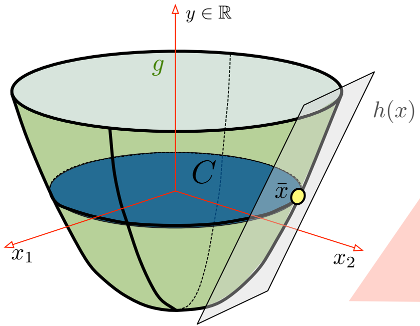
Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

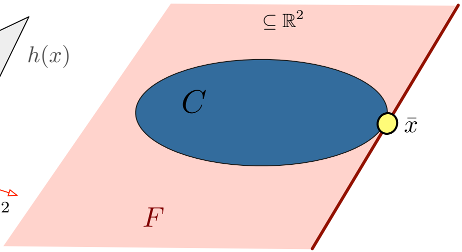
Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.





Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Claim: $C \subseteq F$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

<u>Claim</u>: $C \subseteq F$.

Let $x \in C$ and thus, $g(x) \leq 0$

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Claim: $C \subseteq F$.

Let $x \in C$ and thus, $g(x) \leq 0$

By definition of a subgradient, we know that $h(x) \leq g(x)$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Claim: $C \subseteq F$.

Let $x \in C$ and thus, $g(x) \leq 0$

By definition of a subgradient, we know that $h(x) \leq g(x)$.

It follows that $h(x) \leq g(x) \leq 0$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Claim: $C \subseteq F$.

Let $x \in C$ and thus, $g(x) \leq 0$

By definition of a subgradient, we know that $h(x) \leq g(x)$.

It follows that $h(x) \leq g(x) \leq 0$.

Hence, $x \in F$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Claim: $C \subseteq F$.

Let $x \in C$ and thus, $g(x) \leq 0$

By definition of a subgradient, we know that $h(x) \leq g(x)$.

It follows that $h(x) \leq g(x) \leq 0$.

Hence, $x \in F$.

Claim: $h(\bar{x}) = 0$

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top(x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Claim: $C \subseteq F$.

Let $x \in C$ and thus, $g(x) \leq 0$

By definition of a subgradient, we know that $h(x) \leq g(x)$.

It follows that $h(x) \leq g(x) \leq 0$.

Hence, $x \in F$.

Claim: $h(\bar{x}) = 0$

$h(\bar{x}) = g(\bar{x})$

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Proof

Claim: $C \subseteq F$.

Let $x \in C$ and thus, $g(x) \leq 0$

By definition of a subgradient, we know that $h(x) \leq g(x)$.

It follows that $h(x) \leq g(x) \leq 0$.

Hence, $x \in F$.

Claim: $h(\bar{x}) = 0$

$h(\bar{x}) = g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Question

Why is this relevant for us?

Proposition

Let $g : \Re^n \to \Re$ be convex and let $\bar{x}$ where $g(\bar{x}) = 0$.

Let s be a subgradient of g at $\bar{x}$.

Let $C = \{x : g(x) \leq 0\}$.

Let $F = \{x : h(x) := g(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0\}$.

Then, F is a supporting halfspace of C at $\bar{x}$.

Question

Why is this relevant for us?

$\Rightarrow$

We use it to construct relaxations of NLPs

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \dots, k) \end{array}}$$

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}
$$

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

g_1 is convex

$$
\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}
$$

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

g_1 is convex

$g_1(\bar{x}) = 0$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & (i = 1, \dots, k) \end{array}}$$

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

g_1 is convex

$g_1(\bar{x}) = 0$

s is a subgradient for g_1 at $\bar{x}$

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution
g_1 is convex
$g_1(\bar{x}) = 0$
s is a subgradient for g_1 at $\bar{x}$

If we replace the nonlinear constraint

$$g_1(x) \le 0$$

$$\begin{array}{lll} \min & c^\top x & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 & (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution
g_1 is convex
$g_1(\bar{x}) = 0$
s is a subgradient for g_1 at $\bar{x}$

If we replace the nonlinear constraint

$$g_1(x) \leq 0$$

with the linear constraint

$$h(x) = g_1(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \leq 0$$

we get a relaxation.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \qquad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution
g_1 is convex
$g_1(\bar{x}) = 0$
s is a subgradient for g_1 at $\bar{x}$

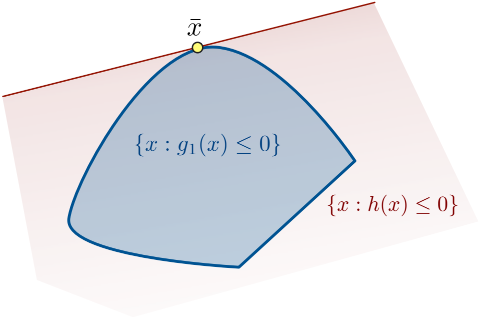
If we replace the nonlinear constraint

$$g_1(x) \le 0$$

with the linear constraint

$$h(x) = g_1(\bar{x}) + s^\top (x - \bar{x}) \le 0$$

we get a relaxation.



Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\min \quad c^\top x \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{aligned}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex
$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution
$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$
$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proposition

$$\min \quad c^\top x$$

s.t.

$$g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, k)$$

$g_1, \dots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Example

$$\min \quad -x_1 - x_2$$

s.t.

$$\begin{aligned} -x_2 + x_1^2 &\le 0 \quad (1)\\ -x_1 + x_2^2 &\le 0 \quad (2)\\ -x_1 + \tfrac{1}{2} &\le 0 \quad (3) \end{aligned}$$

$\bar{x} = (1,1)^\top$ feasible

Proposition

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{aligned}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone \left\{ s^{(i)} : i \in I \right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Example

$$\begin{aligned} \min \quad & -x_1 - x_2 \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 \leq 0 \quad (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 \leq 0 \quad (2) \\ & -x_1 + \tfrac{1}{2} \leq 0 \quad (3) \end{aligned}$$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$ feasible

$I = \{1, 2\}$

Proposition

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Example

$$\begin{array}{lrl} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 \leq 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 \leq 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} \leq 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$ feasible

$I = \{1, 2\}$

$(2, -1)^\top$ subgradient for g_1 at $\bar{x}$

Proposition

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone \left\{ s^{(i)} : i \in I \right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Example

$$\begin{array}{lrl} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 \le 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 \le 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} \le 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$ feasible

$I = \{1, 2\}$

$(2, -1)^\top$ subgradient for g_1 at $\bar{x}$

$(-1, 2)^\top$ subgradient for g_2 at $\bar{x}$

Proposition

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone \left\{ s^{(i)} : i \in I \right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Example

$$\begin{array}{lrl} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & \\ \text{s.t.} & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 \leq 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 \leq 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} \leq 0 & (3) \end{array}$$

$\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$ feasible

$I = \{1, 2\}$

$(2, -1)^\top$ subgradient for g_1 at $\bar{x}$

$(-1, 2)^\top$ subgradient for g_2 at $\bar{x}$

$$- \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \in cone \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \qquad \Longrightarrow \qquad \bar{x} \text{ optimal.}$$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\min \quad c^\top x \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{aligned}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proposition

$$\begin{array}{|ll|}\hline \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex
$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution
$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$
$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

We proved that the set of solutions to $g_i(x) \le 0$

is contained in the set of solutions to $g_i(\bar{x}) + s^{(i)}(x - \bar{x}) \le 0$.

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in \mathit{cone}\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(\bar{x}) + s^{(i)}(x - \bar{x}) \le 0 \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(\bar{x}) + s^{(i)}(x - \bar{x}) \le 0 \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

$g_i(\bar{x}) + s^{(i)}(x - \bar{x}) \le 0$ can be rewritten as

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in \mathit{cone}\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(\bar{x}) + s^{(i)}(x - \bar{x}) \leq 0 \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

$g_i(\bar{x}) + s^{(i)}(x - \bar{x}) \leq 0$ can be rewritten as

$s^{(i)}x \leq s^{(i)}\bar{x} - g_i(\bar{x})$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \dots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & -c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & s^{(i)} x \le s^{(i)} \bar{x} - g_i(\bar{x}) \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & -c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & s^{(i)}x \leq s^{(i)}\bar{x} - g_i(\bar{x}) \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

Then, $\bar{x}$ is optimal for the relaxation if $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$.

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \dots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & -c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & s^{(i)}x \le s^{(i)}\bar{x} - g_i(\bar{x}) \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

Then, $\bar{x}$ is optimal for the relaxation if $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$.

This means that $\bar{x}$ is also optimal for the NLP.

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} &\min \quad c^\top x \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{aligned}}$$

$g_1, \ldots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{aligned} &\max \quad -c^\top x \\ &\text{s.t.} \\ &\qquad s^{(i)} x \le s^{(i)} \bar{x} - g_i(\bar{x}) \quad (i \in I) \end{aligned}$$

Then, $\bar{x}$ is optimal for the relaxation if $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$.

This means that $\bar{x}$ is also optimal for the NLP.

Question

Is there a converse to this result?

Proposition

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, k) \end{array}}$$

$g_1, \dots, g_k$ all convex

$\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution

$\forall i \in I$, $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$

$\forall i \in I$, $s^{(i)}$ subgradient for g_i at $\bar{x}$

If $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$ then $\bar{x}$ is optimal.

Proof

We have a relaxation

$$\begin{array}{ll} \max & -c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & s^{(i)} x \leq s^{(i)} \bar{x} - g_i(\bar{x}) \quad (i \in I) \end{array}$$

Then, $\bar{x}$ is optimal for the relaxation if $-c \in cone\left\{s^{(i)} : i \in I\right\}$.

This means that $\bar{x}$ is also optimal for the NLP.

Question

Is there a converse to this result? YES

Gradients: A Calculus Detour

Gradients: A Calculus Detour

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and let $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

Gradients: A Calculus Detour

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \rightarrow \Re$ be a convex function and let $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

If the gradient $\nabla f(\bar{x})$ of f exists at $\bar{x}$, then it is a subgradient.

Gradients: A Calculus Detour

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be a convex function and let $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

If the gradient $\nabla f(\bar{x})$ of f exists at $\bar{x}$, then it is a subgradient.

Proposition

Let $f : \Re^n \to \Re$ be function and let $\bar{x} \in \Re^n$.

If the partial derivative $\frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_j}$ exists for f at $\bar{x}$ for all $j = 1, \ldots, n$, then the gradient $\nabla f(\bar{x})$ is obtained by evaluating for $\bar{x}$,

$$\left(\frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_1}, \ldots, \frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_n} \right)^\top .$$

Example

Compute the gradient of the convex function

$$f(x) = -x_2 + x_1^2$$

at $\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$.

Example

Compute the gradient of the convex function

$$f(x) = -x_2 + x_1^2$$

at $\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$.

We have

$$\left(\frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_2} \right)^\top = (2x_1, -1)^\top$$

Example

Compute the gradient of the convex function

$$f(x) = -x_2 + x_1^2$$

at $\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$.

We have

$$\left(\frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_2}\right)^\top = (2x_1, -1)^\top$$

For $\bar{x}$ we get $\nabla f(\bar{x}) = (2, -1)^\top$.

Example

Compute the gradient of the convex function

$$f(x) = -x_2 + x_1^2$$

at $\bar{x} = (1, 1)^\top$.

We have

$$\left(\frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial f(x)}{\partial x_2} \right)^\top = (2x_1, -1)^\top$$

For $\bar{x}$ we get $\nabla f(\bar{x}) = (2, -1)^\top$.

Since $(2, -1)^\top$ is the gradient of f at $\bar{x}$, it is a subgradient as well.

Definition

A feasible solution to $\bar{x}$ is a Slater point of

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

if $g_i(\bar{x}) < 0$ for all $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Definition

A feasible solution to $\bar{x}$ is a Slater point of

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

if $g_i(\bar{x}) < 0$ for all $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Example

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \le & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \le & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \le & 0 & (3) \end{array}}$$

Definition

A feasible solution to $\bar{x}$ is a Slater point of

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

if $g_i(\bar{x}) < 0$ for all $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Example

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \leq & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \leq & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \leq & 0 & (3) \end{array}}$$

$\bar{x} = \left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{3}{4}\right)^\top$ is a Slater point.

Definition

A feasible solution to $\bar{x}$ is a Slater point of

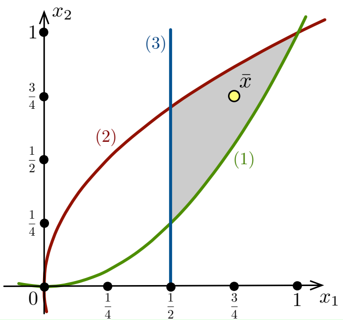
$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

if $g_i(\bar{x}) < 0$ for all $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Example

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{lrcll} \min & -x_1 - x_2 & & & \\ \text{s.t.} & & & & \\ & -x_2 + x_1^2 & \le & 0 & (1) \\ & -x_1 + x_2^2 & \le & 0 & (2) \\ & -x_1 + \frac{1}{2} & \le & 0 & (3) \end{array}}$$

$\bar{x} = \left(\frac{3}{4}, \frac{3}{4}\right)^\top$ is a Slater point.



The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, k) \end{array}}$$

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

1. $g_1, \ldots, g_k$ are all convex,

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \quad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

1. $g_1, \ldots, g_k$ are all convex,
2. there exists a Slater point,

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \min & c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} & \\ & g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

1. $g_1, \ldots, g_k$ are all convex,
2. there exists a Slater point,
3. $\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution,

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

1. $g_1, \ldots, g_k$ are all convex,
2. there exists a Slater point,
3. $\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution,
4. I is the set of indices i for which $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$, and

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \quad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

1. $g_1, \ldots, g_k$ are all convex,
2. there exists a Slater point,
3. $\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution,
4. I is the set of indices i for which $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$, and
5. for all $i \in I$ there exists a gradient $\nabla g_i(\bar{x})$ of g_i at $\bar{x}$.

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \qquad g_i(x) \le 0 \quad (i = 1, \ldots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

1. $g_1, \ldots, g_k$ are all convex,
2. there exists a Slater point,
3. $\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution,
4. I is the set of indices i for which $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$, and
5. for all $i \in I$ there exists a gradient $\nabla g_i(\bar{x})$ of g_i at $\bar{x}$.

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal $\quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad -c \in cone\,\{\nabla g_i(\bar{x}) : i \in I\}$.

The Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Theorem

Consider the following NLP:

$$\boxed{\begin{array}{l} \min \quad c^\top x \\ \text{s.t.} \\ \quad g_i(x) \leq 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, k) \end{array}}$$

Suppose that

1. $g_1, \dots, g_k$ are all convex,
2. there exists a Slater point,
3. $\bar{x}$ is a feasible solution,
4. I is the set of indices i for which $g_i(\bar{x}) = 0$, and
5. for all $i \in I$ there exists a gradient $\nabla g_i(\bar{x})$ of g_i at $\bar{x}$.

Then $\bar{x}$ is optimal $\iff$ $-c \in cone\,\{\nabla g_i(\bar{x}) : i \in I\}$.

Remark

We proved the "easy" direction "$\Longleftarrow$".

Recap

Recap

- We showed how to prove optimality using relaxations.

Recap

- We showed how to prove optimality using relaxations.
- We defined subgradients.

Recap

- We showed how to prove optimality using relaxations.
- We defined subgradients.
- We defined supporting halfspaces.

Recap

- We showed how to prove optimality using relaxations.
- We defined subgradients.
- We defined supporting halfspaces.
- We related subgradients and supporting halfspaces.

Recap

- We showed how to prove optimality using relaxations.
- We defined subgradients.
- We defined supporting halfspaces.
- We related subgradients and supporting halfspaces.
- We showed how to relax convex constraints by a linear constraint.

Recap

- We showed how to prove optimality using relaxations.
- We defined subgradients.
- We defined supporting halfspaces.
- We related subgradients and supporting halfspaces.
- We showed how to relax convex constraints by a linear constraint.
- We gave sufficient conditions for a solution to be optimal.

Recap

- We showed how to prove optimality using relaxations.
- We defined subgradients.
- We defined supporting halfspaces.
- We related subgradients and supporting halfspaces.
- We showed how to relax convex constraints by a linear constraint.
- We gave sufficient conditions for a solution to be optimal.
- We stated the KKT theorem.